DocuPrint CM405 df

User Guide

FUJI XEROX

In this manual, safety instructions are preceded by the symbol ⚠. Always read and follow the instructions before performing the required procedures.

The data saved in the hard disk of the machine may be lost if there is any problem in the hard disk. Fuji Xerox is not responsible for any direct and indirect damages arising from or caused by such data loss.

Fuji Xerox is not responsible for any breakdown of machines due to infection of computer virus or computer hacking.

IMPORTANT:

1. This manual is copyrighted with all rights reserved. Under the copyright laws, this manual may not be copied or modified in whole or part, without the written consent of the publisher.

2. Parts of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

3. We welcome any comments on ambiguities, errors, omissions, or missing pages.

4. Never attempt any procedure on the machine that is not specifically described in this manual. Unauthorized operation can cause faults or accidents. Fuji Xerox is not liable for any problems resulting from unauthorized operation of the equipment.

   An export of this product is strictly controlled in accordance with Laws concerning Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade of Japan and/or the export control regulations of the United States.

Preface

Thank you for purchasing the DocuPrint CM405 df.

This guide is intended for users who use the printer for the first time, and provides all the necessary operating information about the print, copy, scan, and fax functions.

Please read this guide to achieve the best performance from this printer.

This guide assumes you are familiar with computers and the basics of network operation and configuration.

After reading this guide, keep it safe and handy for future reference.

WARNING:

This equipment will be inoperable when mains power fails.

Contents

Types of Manuals

Manuals included with the printer

The following manuals are provided with the DocuPrint CM405 df.

Lifting Your Printer	Describes how to lift and hold your printer.
Safety Guide	Describes the information you need to know before using the printer and to operate the printer safely.
Setup Guide	Provides step-by-step instructions on how to set up your printer.
Operator Panel Guide	Describes the icons assigned to the buttons or indicators on the operator panel.
User Guide (this guide)	Describes how to get ready to print and set various features. It also covers the operator panel menus, troubleshooting tips, and maintenance information. This guide is on the *Driver CD Kit*.
Quick Reference Guide	Describes how to operate the printer and the precautions that must be followed during operation. This guide is on the *Driver CD Kit*.
PostScript User Guide	Describes how to set up your printer as a PostScript® printer and the features that can be configured on your print driver. This guide is on the *PostScript Driver Library CD*.

Manuals included with an optional accessory

The following manual is provided with the optional accessories (sold separately).

Installation Guide	Optional accessories that require an installation at the customer's site are provided with an Installation Guide.

Using This Guide

This section includes:

■ Organization

This guide is organized into the following chapters. The summary of each chapter is as follows:

1 Specifications	Describes the printer specifications.
2 Basic Operation	Describes the main components of the printer, the power saver mode, and the preparation of the printer to use.
3 Printer Management Software	Describes the software available for the printer.
4 Printer Connection and Software Installation	Describes the basic information about how to connect the printer to your computer via the network or USB and how to install the print driver.
5 Printing Basics	Describes the supported paper, how to load paper, and how to print data using various print features.
6 Copying	Describes how to copy documents and the adjustment features.
7 Scanning	Describes how to install a scan driver, and how to set and use the Scan features.
8 Faxing	Describes how to set and use the Fax features.
9 Using the Operator Panel Menus and Keypad	Describes the setting items available on the operator panel, their setup procedures, and how to use the keyboard displayed on the LCD panel and number pad.
10 Troubleshooting	Describes the troubleshooting tips for printer problems such as paper jams.
11 Maintenance	Describes how to clean the printer, how to replace consumables, and how to see the printer status.
12 Contacting Fuji Xerox	Describes support information.

■ Conventions

1 In this guide, personal computers and workstations are collectively called "computers".

2 The following terms are used throughout this guide:

IMPORTANT:
- Important information that must be read and followed.

NOTE:
- Additional information that merits emphasis.

See also:
- References within this guide.

3 Orientation of paper is described in this guide as follows:

▱, ▱, Long Edge Feed (LEF): Loading the paper in landscape orientation.

▯, ▯, Short Edge Feed (SEF): Loading the paper in portrait orientation.
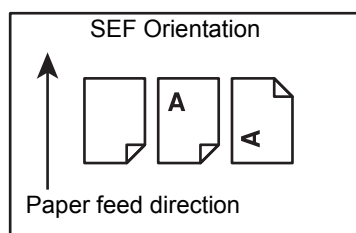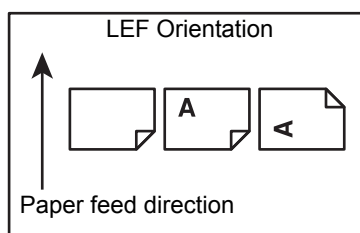
Safety Notes

Before using this product, read "Safety Notes" carefully for safety use.

This product and recommended supplies have been tested and found to comply with strict safety requirements including safety agency approvals and compliance with environmental standards. Follow the following instructions for safety use.

> ⚠ **WARNING:**
>
> • **Any unauthorized alteration including an addition of new functions or connection to external devices may not be covered by the product warranty. Contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for more information.**

Follow all warning instructions marked on this product. The warning marks stand for the followings:

⚠ DANGER	Used for item that if not followed strictly, can lead death or severe or fatal injuries and the possibility to do it is comparatively high.
⚠ WARNING	Used for items that if not followed strictly, can lead to severe or fatal injuries.
⚠ CAUTION	Used for items that if not followed strictly, can cause injuries to user or damages to machine.
	⚠ : A symbol for items to pay attention to when handling machine. Follow instructions carefully to use machine safely.
	Static Sensitive Caution Flammable Explodable Electric shock Heated surface Moving object Pinched fingers
	⊘ : A symbol for prohibited items. Follow instructions carefully to avoid any dangerous acts.
	Prohibited No fire Do not touch Do not use in bathroom Do not tear down Keep away from wet Never touch with wet hand
	● : A symbol for items that must be performed. Follow instructions carefully to carry out these essential tasks.
	Instructions Unplug Ground/Earth

■ Electrical Safety

⚠ WARNING

This product shall be operated by the power source as indicated on the product's data plate. Consult your local power company to check if your power source meets the requirements.

	WARNING: • **Connect this product to a protective earth circuit.** This product is supplied with a plug that has a protective earth pin. The plug fits only into an earthed electrical outlet. This is a safety feature. If the plug doesn't fit to the outlet, contact an electrician to replace the outlet to avoid risk of electric shock. Never use an earthed adapter plug to connect the product to the electrical outlet that has no earth connection terminal. Improper connection of a grounding conductor may cause electric shock.
	Plug the power cord directly into a grounded electrical outlet. To prevent overheat and a fire accident, do not use an extension cord, a multi-plug adaptor or a multiple connector. Consult your local Fuji Xerox representative to check if an outlet is grounded.
	Connect this product to a branch circuit or an outlet that has larger capacity than the rated ampere and voltage of this product. See the data plate on the rear panel of this product for its rated ampere and voltage.
	Never touch the power cord with wet hands. It may cause electric shock.
	Do not put an object on the power cord.
	Always keep the plug connection free of dust. The dusty and damp environment may bring about minute electric current in a connector. It may generate heat and eventually cause a fire accident.
	To avoid the risk of electric shock and a fire accident, only use the power cord supplied with this product or the ones designated by Fuji Xerox. The power cord is exclusive use for this product. Do not use it for any other product. Do not damage or alter the power cord. Damage and alteration may generate heat and eventually cause electric shock or a fire accident. If the power cord is damaged or insulated wires are exposed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its replacement. Do not use a damaged or uninsulated cord to avoid the risk of electric shock and a fire accident.

⚠ CAUTION

	When cleaning this product, always switch off and unplug it. Access to a live machine interior may cause electric shock.
	Do not unplug or re-plug this product with the switch on. Plugging and unplugging a live connector may deform the plug and generate heat, and eventually cause a fire accident.
	Hold the plug not the cord when unplugging this product, or it may damage the cord and cause electric shock or a fire accident.

Switch off and unplug the product when it (i.e., fax function) is not used over weekends or long holidays. Please note that it cannot receive fax message during switch-off.

Once a month, switch off this product and check if
- the power cord is plugged firmly into an electrical outlet;
- the plug is not excessively heated, rusted or bent;
- the plug and electrical outlet are free of dust; and
- the power cord is not cracked or worn down.

Once you notice any unusual condition, switch off and unplug this product first and contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

■ Machine Installation

⚠ WARNING

❗	Do not locate this product where people might step on or trip over the power cord. Friction or excessive pressure may generate heat and eventually cause electric shock or a fire accident.

⚠ CAUTION

🚫	Never locate this product in the following places: • Near radiators or any other heat sources • Near volatile flammable materials such as curtains • In the hot, humid, dusty or poorly ventilated environment • In the place receiving direct sunlight • Near cookers or humidifiers
🚫	Never put this product close to fire such as candles and cigarettes. Otherwise, it may cause a fire accident.
❗	This product weighs 32.0 Kg (the main unit with consumables). When moving it, always carry it by a team of three or more persons to avoid mishandling or injury.
❗	When lifting this product, hold the handholds on both sides and the rear of the product by two people, and the front of the product by a person. Never lift it by gripping any other areas. It will prevent you from dropping the product and getting back ache or injuries.
❗	Locate this product on a level and sturdy surface that can withstand a weight of 47.9 Kg. Otherwise, if tilted, the product may fall over and cause injuries.
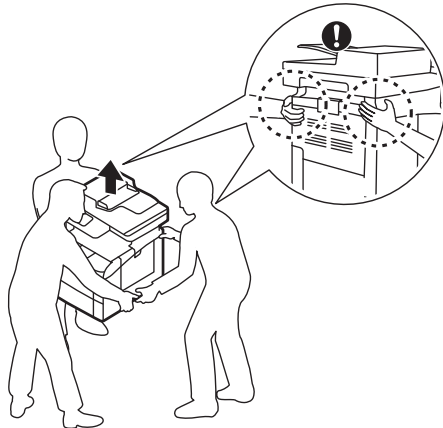
Locate this product in a well-ventilated area. Do not obstruct ventilation openings of the product.

Keep the minimum clearance as follows for ventilation and an access to the power plug. Unplug the product if an abnormal condition is noted.
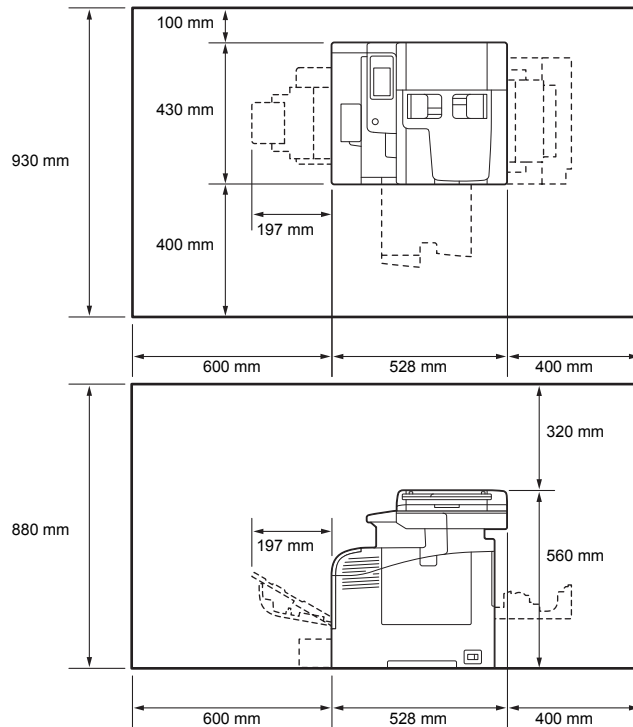
Do not incline the product at more than 10 degree angle. Otherwise, it may fall over and cause injuries.
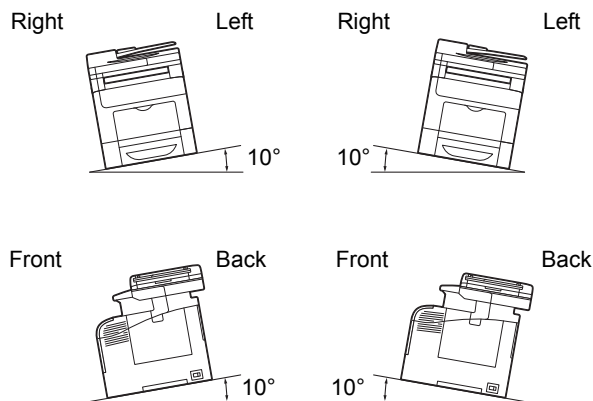
Always lock the wheels of this product after installation. Otherwise, it may fall over or slide and cause injuries.

Always locate the output unit inside the rack under the scanning unit.

Others

To keep this product in a good performance and condition, always use it in the following environment:

- Temperature: 10 – 32 °C
- Humidity: 10 – 85%

When the product is left in a chilly room and the room is rapidly warmed up by heater, dew condensation may form inside the product and cause a partial deletion on printing.

■ Operational Safety

⚠ WARNING

	The operator's product maintenance procedures are described in the customer documentation supplied with this product. Do not carry out any other maintenance procedures not described in the documentation.
	This product features safety design not to allow operators access to hazard areas. The hazard areas are isolated from operators by covers or protectors which require a tool to remove. To prevent electric shock and injuries, never remove those covers and protectors.
	To avoid the risk of electric shock and a fire accident, switch off and unplug the product promptly in the following conditions, then contact your local Fuji Xerox representative. • The product emits smoke or its surface is unusually hot. • The product emits unusual noise or odor. • The power cord is cracked or worn down. • A circuit breaker, fuse or any other safety device becomes activated. • Any liquid is spilled into the product. • The product is soaked in water. • Any part of the product is damaged.
	Do not insert any object into slots or openings of this product. Do not put any of the followings on the product: • Liquid container such as flower vases or coffee cups • Metal parts such as staples or clips • Heavy objects If liquid is spilled over or metal parts are slipped into the product, it may cause electric shock or a fire accident.
	Do not use conductive paper such as origami paper, carbonic paper or conductively-coated paper. When paper jam occurs, it may cause short-circuit and eventually a fire accident.
	When cleaning this product, use the designated cleaning materials exclusive to it. Other cleaning materials may result in poor performance of the product. Never use aerosol cleaners to avoid catching fire and explosion.
	Never play the CD-ROM supplied with the product on an audio player. Always use a CD-ROM player. Otherwise, large sound may damage audio players or your ears.
	Laser Safety **CAUTION:** • **Any operations or adjustments not stated in the operation manual may cause hazardous light exposure and eventually burn injuries or loss of eyesight.** This product has been tested and found to comply with the Class 1 Laser Equipment requirements defined by the international standard IEC60825 and has no light exposure hazard. The product has no hazardous light emission as it features light protection components and covers to shut in all light beam during operation and maintenance.

⚠ CAUTION

	Always follow all warning instructions marked on or supplied with this product. To avoid the risk of burn injuries and electric shock, never touch the area with the "High Temperature" or "High Voltage" marks on.
	Keep electrical and mechanical safety interlocks active. Keep the safety interlocks away from magnetic materials. Magnetic materials may accidentally activate the product and cause injuries or electric shock.
	Do not attempt to remove a paper deeply jammed inside the product, particularly a paper wrapped around the fusing unit or the heat roller. Otherwise, it may cause injuries or burns. Switch off the product immediately and contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

🚫	Do not apply excessive force to hold thick document on the document glass. It may break the glass and cause injuries.
❗	Ventilate well during extended operation or mass copying. It may affect the office air environment due to odor such as ozone in a poorly ventilated room. Provide proper ventilation to ensure the comfortable and safe environment.

■ Consumable

⚠ WARNING

🛈	Store all consumables in accordance with the instructions given on its package or container.
🛈	Use a broom or a wet cloth to wipe off spilled toner. Never use a vacuum cleaner for the spills. It may catch fire by electric sparks inside the vacuum cleaner and cause explosion. If you spill a large volume of toner, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.
🚫	Never throw a toner cartridge into an open flame. Remaining toner in the cartridge may catch fire and cause burn injuries or explosion. If you have a used toner cartridge no longer needed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its disposal.
🚫	Never throw a waste toner bottle into an open flame. Toner may catch fire and cause burn injuries or explosion. If you have a used waste toner bottle no longer needed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its disposal.
🛈	CAUTION: RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

⚠ CAUTION

🛈	Keep drum cartridges and toner cartridges out of the reach of children. If a child accidentally swallows toner, spit it out, rinse mouth with water, drink water and consult a physician immediately.
🛈	When replacing drum cartridges and toner cartridges, be careful not to spill the toner. In case of any toner spills, avoid contact with clothes, skin, eyes and mouth as well as inhalation.
🛈	If toner spills onto your skin or clothing, wash it off with soap and water. If you get toner particles in your eyes, wash it out with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes until irritation is gone. Consult a physician if necessary. If you inhale toner particles, move to a fresh air location and rinse your mouth with water. If you swallow toner, spit it out, rinse your mouth with water, drink plenty of water and consult a physician immediately.

■ Warning and Caution Labels

Be sure to follow the warning and caution labels placed on the machine. Do not touch areas with labels indicating high voltage or temperature. This can cause an electric shock or burn.

> ⚠ **CAUTION:**
>
> • **Always follow all warning instructions marked on or supplied with this product. To avoid the risk of burn injuries and electric shock, never touch the area with the "High Temperature" or "High Voltage" marks on.**
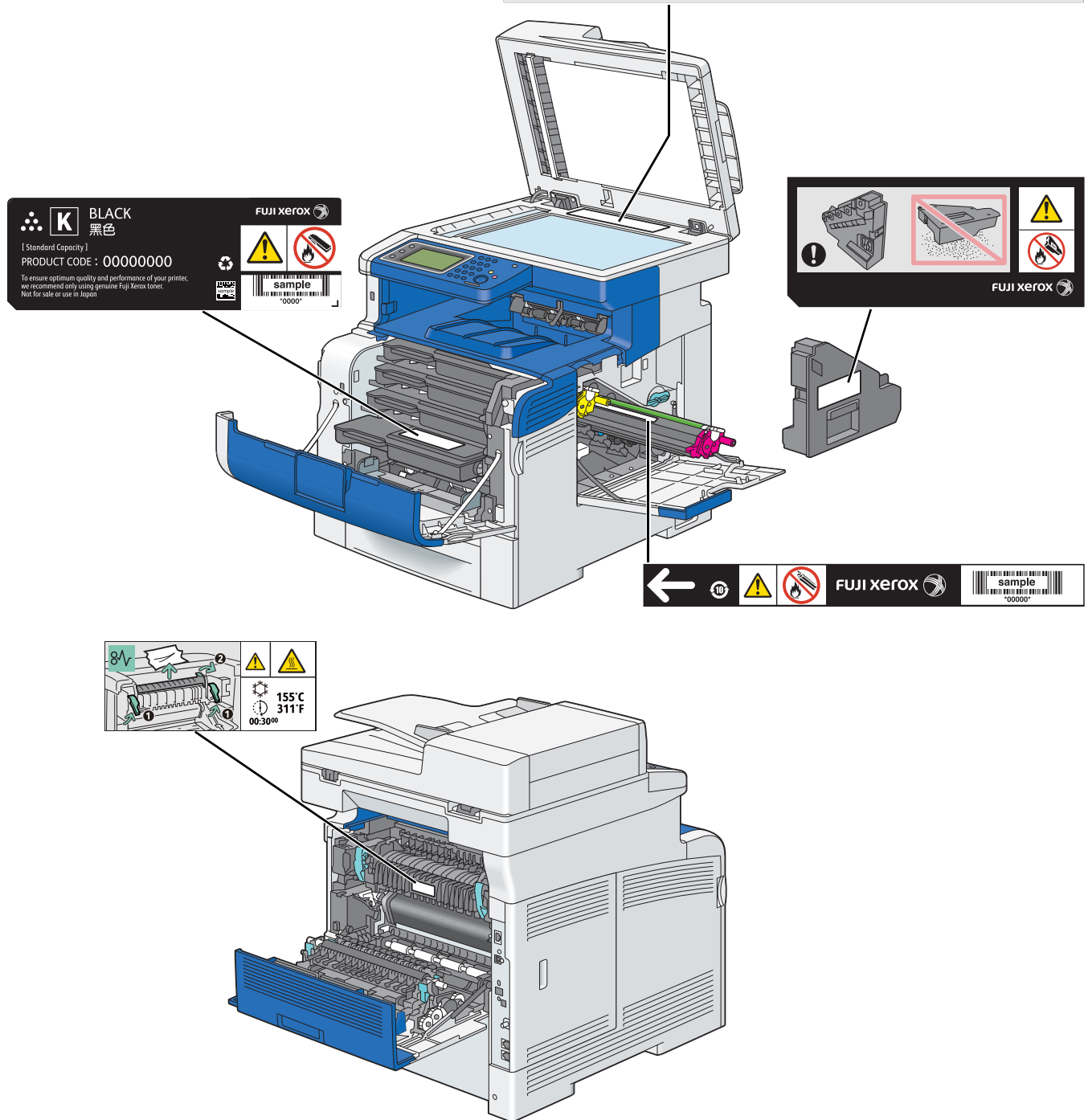
Environment

- For environmental protection and efficient use of resources, Fuji Xerox reuses returned toner cartridges and drums (photoreceptors) to make recycle parts, recycle materials or energy recovery.

- Proper disposal is required for toner cartridges and drums (photoreceptors) no longer needed. Do not open toner cartridges and drums (photoreceptors). Return them to your local Fuji Xerox representative.

Regulation

■Radio Frequency Emissions (Class B)

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to the International Standard for Electromagnetic Interference (CISPR Publ. 22) and Radiocommunications Act 1992 in Australia/New Zealand. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This product generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this product does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning this product off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between this product and the receiver.
- Connect this product into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Changes and modifications to this product not specifically approved by Fuji Xerox may void the user's authority to operate this product.

■Product Safety Certification (UL, CB)

This product is certified by the following agency using the safety standards listed.

Standard
IEC60950-1:ed. 2

■Fax Regulations

General warning

The grant of a Telepermit for any item of terminal equipment indicates only that Telecom has accepted that the item complies with minimum conditions for connection to its network. It indicates no endorsement of the product by Telecom, nor does it provide any sort of warranty. Above all, it provides no assurance that any item will work correctly in all respects with another item of Telepermitted equipment of a different make or model, nor does it imply that any product is compatible with all of Telecom's network services Warnings taken from Specification text

Compliance testing (Functional tests)

"This equipment is not capable, under all operating conditions, of correct operation at the higher speeds for which it is designed. Telecom will accept no responsibility should difficulties arise in such circumstances"

Off-hook line impedance

"This equipment does not fully meet Telecom's impedance requirements. Performance limitations may occur when used in conjunction with some parts of the network. Telecom will accept no responsibility should difficulties arise in such circumstances"

General requirements (automatic dialling devices)

User Instructions (automatic call set-up)

"This equipment shall not be set up to make automatic calls to the Telecom '111' Emergency Service"

User instructions

If a charge for local calls is unacceptable, the 'Dial' button should NOT be used for local calls. Only the 7-digits of the local number should be dialled from your telephone. DO NOT dial the area code digit or the '0' prefix

About License

RSA BSAFE

This product includes RSA BSAFE® Cryptographic software from EMC Corporation.

DES

This product includes software developed by Eric Young.

(eay@mincom.oz.au)

AES

Copyright© 2003, Dr BrianGladman, Worcester, UK. All rights reserved. This product uses published AES software provided by Dr Brian Gladmanunder BSD licensing terms.

TIFF(libtiff)

LibTIFFCopyright© 1988-1997 SamLeffler

Copyright© 1991-1997 Silicon Graphics, Inc.

ICC Profile (Little cms)

LittlecmsCopyright© 1998-2004 Marti Maria

JPEG

Our printer software uses some of the codes defined by the Independent JPEG Group.

Illegal Copies and Printouts

Copying or printing certain documents may be illegal in your country. Penalties of fines or imprisonment may be imposed on those found guilty. The following are examples of items that may be illegal to copy or print in your country.

- Currency
- Banknotes and checks
- Bank and government bonds and securities
- Passports and identification cards
- Copyright material or trademarks without the consent of the owner
- Postage stamps and other negotiable instruments

This list is not inclusive and no liability is assumed for either its completeness or accuracy. In case of doubt, contact your legal counsel.

Product Features

This section describes the product features and indicates their links.

USB Direct Print
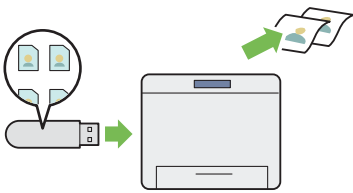
The Print From USB Memory feature allows you to print directly from your USB storage device without requiring you to start your computer and an application.

For more information, see "Direct Print Using the USB Storage Device" on page 157.

Stored Print
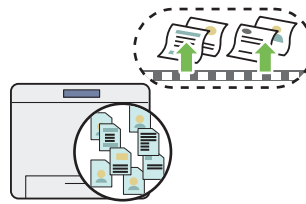
The Stored Print feature allows you to temporarily store your print data in the printer memory and output it later. You can effectively manage your time when you print confidential data or large-volume data at off-peak hours.

For more information, see "Using the Stored Print Feature" on page 154.

Pages Per Sheet (N-Up) Print
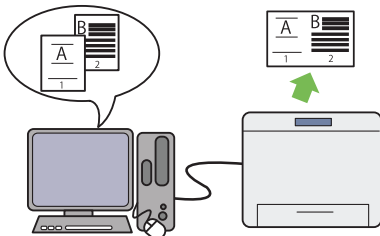
The Pages Per Sheet (N-Up) feature allows you to print multiple pages on a single sheet of paper. This feature helps reduce the paper consumption.

For more information, see the print driver's help.

2-in-1 Copy
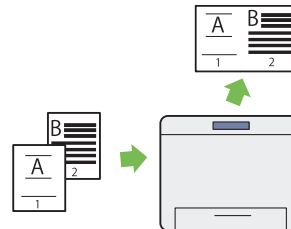
You can copy two original pages onto one sheet of paper by selecting Pages Per Side on the operator panel when you make a copy. This feature helps save paper.

For more information, see "Pages Per Side" on page 200.

ID Card Copy
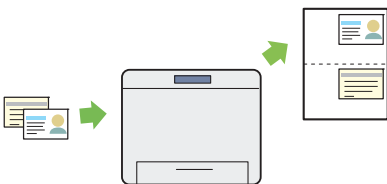
You can copy both sides of an ID card on one side of a single sheet of paper in its original size by selecting ID Card Copy on the operator panel. This feature helps to show both sides of an ID card in one page in its original size.

For more information, see "Using the ID Card Copy" on page 202.

Duplex Copy
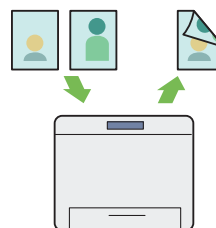
You can copy documents on both sides of a sheet of paper by selecting 2 Sided Copying on the operator panel when you make a copy. This feature helps save paper.

For more information, see "2 Sided Copying" on page 196.

Scan to E-mail
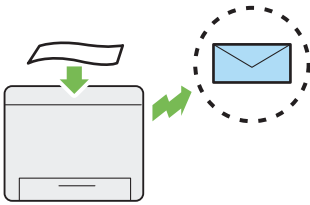
When you want to send scanned data by e-mail, use the Scan to E-mail feature. You can directly send the data scanned as an e-mail attachment. You can choose destination e-mail addresses from the address book on the printer or server. Or, you can enter the address using the keyboard displayed on the LCD panel.

For more information, see "Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image" on page 238.

Scan to SMB/FTP Server
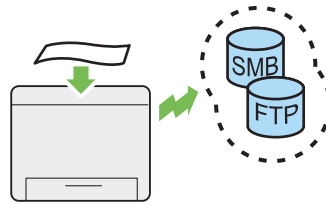
You can transfer data scanned to a computer or a server via SMB or FTP without service software. Although prior registration of the destination FTP server or computer on the address book is required, it helps save your time.

For more information, see "Using a Scanner on the Network" on page 215.

Scanning to USB Storage Device
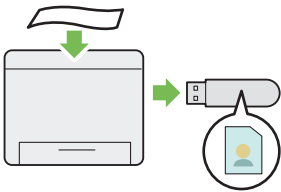
You don't need a computer to connect your USB storage device to save the scanned data. Insert your USB storage device in the port on the printer, and save the scanned data directly to your USB storage device.

For more information, see "Scanning to a USB Storage Device" on page 236.

Scan From Document Glass
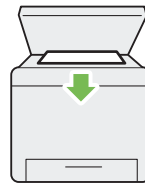
You can scan the pages of a book or a brochure from the document glass. When you scan documents using the document glass, place them face down.

For more information, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 191.

Scan From DADF

You can scan pieces of unbound paper using the duplex automatic document feeder (DADF). When you scan documents using the DADF, load them face up.

For more information, see "Making Copies From the DADF" on page 193.

Direct Fax from Computer
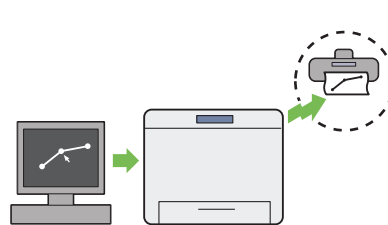
You can directly send faxes from your computer using the fax driver. You can specify the fax settings like the normal fax. Also, you can specify the recipient's fax number using the number pad, or the address book.

For more information, see "Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax)" on page 259.

Address Book
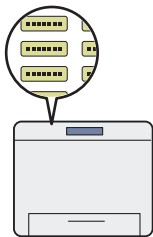
Address Book simplifies the recipient specification. You can use the address book on the printer as well as on the server. Select the desired address or fax number from the address book when using the Scan to E-mail or Scan to Network feature, or sending faxes.

For more information, see "Address Book Editor" on page 85.

Specifications

This chapter lists the main specifications of the printer. Note that the specifications of the product may change without prior notice.

This chapter includes:

Copy Function

Type	Desktop
Memory	512 MB (Maximum 1024 MB) **IMPORTANT:** • Depending on the function, the optional 512 MB memory is required.
HDD	Optional: 160 GB or larger **IMPORTANT:** • Depending on the function, the optional hard disk unit is required.
Color Capability	Full color
Scanning Resolution	600 × 600 dpi
Printing Resolution	600 × 600 dpi, 1,200 × 1,200 dpi (half speed)
Halftone/Printable Colors	256 color gradation for each color (16,700,000 colors)
Warm-up Time	19.9 seconds or less* *: The values are based on a room temperature of 20 °C and on the factory default setting. **IMPORTANT:** • It may take longer due to the image quality adjustment.
Original Paper Size	Books: Maximum 215.9 × 297 mm (A4) Sheets: Maximum 215.9 × 355.6 mm (Legal, when the duplex automatic document feeder (DADF) is used)
Output Paper Size	Maximum: Legal (8.5 × 14"), 215.9 × 355.6 mm Minimum: 3 × 5", 76.2 × 127 mm Image loss width: Top edge, 4 mm or less; bottom edge, 4 mm or less; left and right edges, 4 mm or less
Output Paper Weight	60 – 216 gsm **IMPORTANT:** • Use paper recommended by Fuji Xerox. Copying may not be performed correctly depending on the conditions.
First Copy Output Time	Color: 20 seconds or less (for A4 ⬚/color priority mode) Monochrome: 16 seconds or less (for A4 ⬚/monochrome priority mode)
Reduction/Enlargement	Preset %: 1:0.50, 1:0.70, 1:0.81, 1:1.00, 1:1.22, 1:1.41, 1:2.00 Variable %: 1:0.25 - 1:4.00 (1% increments)

Continuous Copy Speed	Monochrome:
	   A4: 35 or more sheets/minute
	Color:
	   A4: 35 or more sheets/minute
	
	IMPORTANT:
	 • The speed may be reduced due to image quality adjustment.
	 • The performance may be reduced depending on the paper type.

Paper Tray Capacity	Standard:
	   550 sheets (Standard 550 Sheet Tray) + 150 sheets (Bypass Tray)
	Optional:
	   550 sheets (Optional 550 Sheet Feeder)
	Maximum paper capacity:
	   1250 sheets (standard + Optional 550 Sheet Feeder)
	
	IMPORTANT:
	 • When using Fuji Xerox P paper (64 gsm)

Continuous Copy	99 images **NOTE:** • The machine may pause temporarily to perform image quality adjustment.

Output Tray Capacity	Approximately 250 sheets (A4 ⃞) **IMPORTANT:** • When using Fuji Xerox P paper (64 gsm)
Power Supply	AC 110 - 127 V ± 10%; 12 A or less; both 50/60 Hz ± 3% AC 220 - 240 V ± 10%; 6 A or less; both 50/60 Hz ± 3%

Power Consumption	Maximum power consumption:
	  1390 W or less
	 Running mode:
	  750 W (Average)
	 Ready:
	  82 W (Average)
	 Low Power mode:
	  19.5 W or less
	 Sleep mode:
	  6.0 W or less

Dimensions	Width 430 × Depth 528 × Height 560 mm
Machine Weight	32 kg **IMPORTANT:** • The weight of paper is not included. • The weight of the consumables is included.
Space Requirement	Width 930 × Depth 1528 mm

Print Function

Type	Built-in
Continuous Print Speed	Same as the Copy Function **IMPORTANT:** • The speed may be reduced due to image quality adjustment. • The performance may be reduced depending on the paper type.
Print Resolution	Output resolution: 600 × 600 dpi, 1,200 × 1,200 dpi
PDL	PCL 6, PostScript® 3™, FX-PDF, TIFF, JPEG
Protocol	TCP/IP (LPD, Port9100, WSD, HTTP, HTTPS, SMTP, RARP, AutoIP, WINS, FTP, Telnet, DNS, DDNS, IPP, IPPS, SNTP, SMB), SNMP, DHCP, BOOTP, Bonjour® (mDNS) **NOTE:** • To use IPPS protocol, you need to install the optional hard disk unit. • WSD stands for Web Services on Devices. • WSD is available only on Windows Vista®, Windows Server® 2008, Windows® 7 or Windows Server® 2008 R2.
Operating System	Standard: PCL 6 and PostScript® drivers Microsoft® Windows® XP x86, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 x86, Microsoft® Windows Vista® x86, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 x86, Microsoft® Windows® 7 x86, Microsoft® Windows® XP x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 x64, Microsoft® Windows Vista® x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 x64, Microsoft® Windows® 7 x64, Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 R2 x64, Mac OS® X 10.3.9 PPC Mac OS® X 10.4 PPC Mac OS® X 10.5 PPC Mac OS® X 10.4 x86 Mac OS® X 10.5 x86 Mac OS® X 10.6 x86 Mac OS® X 10.7 x86 Mac OS® X 10.6 x64 Mac OS® X 10.7 x64 Red Hat® Enterprise Linux® 5 Desktop x86 Red Hat® Enterprise Linux® 6 Desktop x86 SUSE® Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 x86 SUSE® Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 x86 **IMPORTANT:** • For information about the latest supported OS, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.
Fonts	Built-in fonts PCL 5 and PCL 6 fonts: 81 fonts and 36 symbol sets PostScript® 3™: 136 fonts PDF Font: 14 fonts
Connectivity	Standard: Ethernet (1000BASE-T/100BASE-TX/10BASE-T), USB 2.0 Optional: IEEE802.11 b/g/n

Scan Function

Type	Color scanner
Original Paper Size	Same as the Copy Function
Scanning Resolution	200/300/400/600 dpi TWAIN: 50 to 9600 dpi WIA: 75/100/150/200/300/400/600 dpi
Scanning Halftone	Color: 16 bit × 3 ch (R/G/B) Monochrome: 16 bit × 2 ch (CDD/EVEN)
Scanning Speed	Color: 8 sheets/minute Monochrome: 16 sheets/minute **IMPORTANT:** • The scanning speed varies depending on documents.
Connectivity	Standard: Ethernet (1000BASE-T/100BASE-TX/10BASE-T), USB 2.0 Optional: IEEE802.11 b/g/n
Scan to PC	Protocol: TCP/IP (SMB, FTP) Operating System: Microsoft® Windows® XP x86 Microsoft® Windows Vista® x86 Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 x86 Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 x86 Microsoft® Windows® 7 x86 Microsoft® Windows® XP x64 Microsoft® Windows Vista® x64 Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 x64 Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 x64 Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 R2 x64 Microsoft® Windows® 7 x64 Mac OS® X 10.3.9 PPC Mac OS® X 10.4 PPC Mac OS® X 10.5 PPC Mac OS® X 10.4 x86 Mac OS® X 10.5 x86 Mac OS® X 10.6 x86 Mac OS® X 10.7 x86 Mac OS® X 10.6 x64 Mac OS® X 10.7 x64 **IMPORTANT:** • For information about the latest supported OS, refer to the Fuji Xerox Web site. File Format: PDF / JPEG (JFIF format) / TIFF (multi page 1 file) / TIFF (1 page 1 file) / XDW
Scan to E-mail	Protocol: TCP/IP (SMTP, POP3) File Format: PDF / JPEG (JFIF format) / TIFF (multi page 1 file) / TIFF (1 page 1 file) / XDW

Fax Function

Send Document Size	Maximum: Legal (8.5 × 14"), 215.9 × 355.6 mm
Recording Paper Size	Maximum: Legal Minimum: A5
Transmission Time	2 seconds or less **IMPORTANT:** • When transmitting an A4 size 700-character document in the standard quality (8 x 3.85 lines/mm) and high speed mode (33.6 kbps or above: JBIG). This is only the transmission speed for image information and does not include the controlling time for the communication. Note that the actual transmission time depends on the content of documents, the machine that the recipient uses, and the status of the communication line.
Transmission Mode	ITU-T Super G3, ITU-T G3 ECM, ITU-T G3
Scanning Resolution	Standard: 200 × 100 pixel/25.4 mm (R8 × 3.85 line/mm) Fine/Photo: 200 × 200 pixel/25.4 mm (R8 × 7.7 line/mm) Super Fine: 400 × 400 pixel/25.4 mm (R16 × 15.4 line/mm)
Coding Method	Color: Not supported. Monochrome: 1bit, JBIG, MMR, MR, MH encoding
Transmission Speed	V.34 (33.6/31.2/28.8/26.4/24/21.6/19.2/16.8/14.4/12/9.6/7.2/4.8/2.4 kbps) V.17 (14.4/12/9.6/7.2 kbps) V.29 (9.6/7.2 kbps) V.27ter (4.8/2.4 kbps)
No. of Fax Lines	PSTN, PBX, Leased line (3.4 kHz/2-wire)

Direct Fax Function

Document Size	A4, Letter, Folio (8.5 × 13"), Legal (8.5 × 14")
Scanning Resolution	Same as the Fax Function
Transmission Speed	Same as the Fax Function
Applicable Lines	Same as the Fax Function
Operating System	Microsoft® Windows® XP x86
	Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 x86
	Microsoft® Windows Vista® x86
	Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 x86
	Microsoft® Windows® 7 x86
	Microsoft® Windows® XP x64
	Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 x64
	Microsoft® Windows Vista® x64
	Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 x64
	Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 R2 x64
	Microsoft® Windows® 7 x64
	Mac OS® X 10.3.9 PPC
	Mac OS® X 10.4 PPC
	Mac OS® X 10.5 PPC
	Mac OS® X 10.4 x86
	Mac OS® X 10.5 x86
	Mac OS® X 10.6 x86
	Mac OS® X 10.7 x86
	Mac OS® X 10.6 x64
	Mac OS® X 10.7 x64
	IMPORTANT: • For information about the latest supported OS, refer to the Fuji Xerox Web site.

Duplex Automatic Document Feeder

Type	Duplex automatic document feeder
Original Paper Size	Maximum: Legal (8.5 × 14"), 215.9 × 355.6 mm
	Minimum: 5.5 × 5.5", 139.7 × 139.7 mm
Capacity	50 sheets (A4 ⊡ 1 sided) **IMPORTANT:** • When using Fuji Xerox P paper (64 gsm)

Feeding Speed	When copying multiple sets of copies of single-sheet document:
	    Color: 35 sheets/minute (A4 ⊡ 1 sided)
	    Monochrome: 35 sheets/minute (A4 ⊡ 1 sided)
	When copying one set of copies of multiple-sheet document:
	    Color 1 Sided: 13 sheets/minute; 2 Sided: 4 pages/minute (A4 ⊡)
	    Monochrome 1 Sided: 22 sheets/minute; 2 Sided: 7 pages/minute (A4 ⊡)

Duplex Output Unit

Applicable Paper Size	Maximum: Legal (8.5 × 14"), 215.9 × 355.6 mm
	Minimum: A5, 148 × 210 mm
Paper Weight	64 - 163 gsm

2

Basic Operation

This chapter includes:

Main Components

This section provides an overview of your printer.

This section includes:

■ Front View
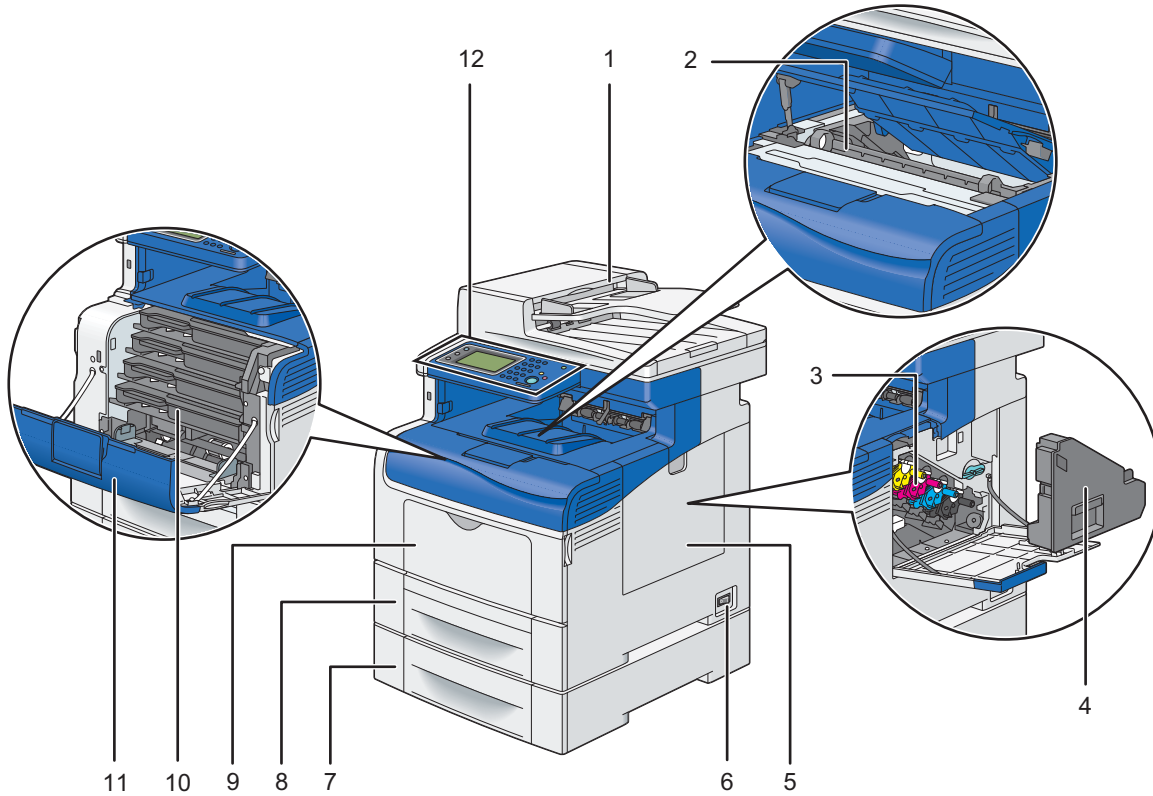
1	Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF)	7	Optional 550 Sheet Feeder (Tray2)
2	Belt Unit	8	Standard 550 Sheet Tray (Tray1)
3	Drum Cartridge	9	Bypass Tray
4	Waste Toner Box	10	Toner Cartridge
5	Side Cover	11	Front Cover
6	Power Switch	12	Operator Panel

IMPORTANT:

- To avoid irregular screen image or malfunctioning of your printer, avoid placing the printer in direct sunlight with the bypass tray opened.

■ Rear View
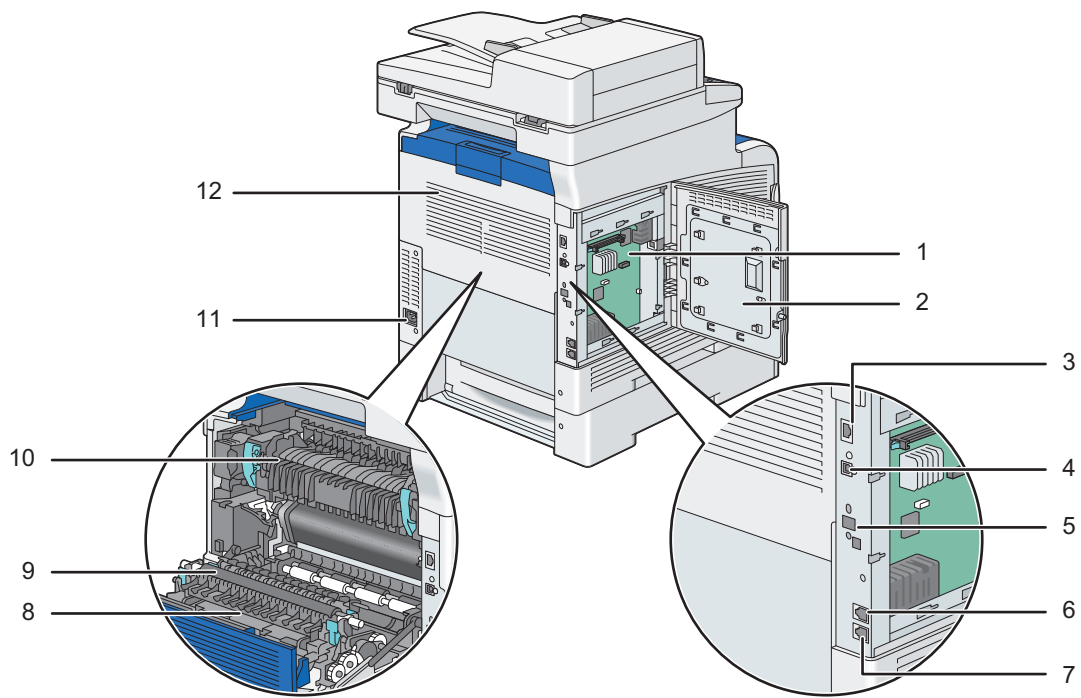
1	Control Board	7	Wall Jack Connector
2	Control Board Cover	8	Duplexer
3	Ethernet Port	9	2nd BTR
4	USB Port	10	Fusing Unit
5	Wireless Adapter Socket	11	Power Connector
6	Phone Connector	12	Rear Cover

■ Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF)
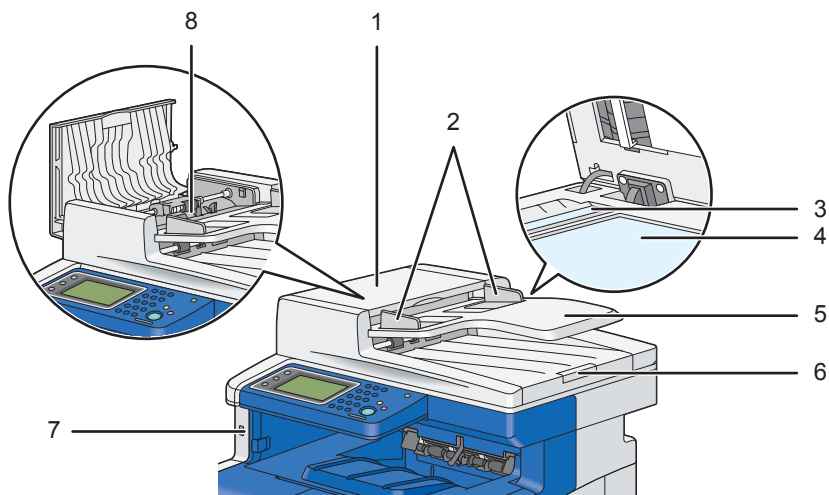
1	DADF Cover	5	Document Feeder Tray
2	Document Guides	6	Document Stopper
3	DADF Glass	7	Front USB Port
4	Document Glass	8	DADF Feed Roller

■ Operator Panel

The operator panel has a LCD panel, light-emitting diodes (LED), control buttons, and number pad, which allow you to control the printer.
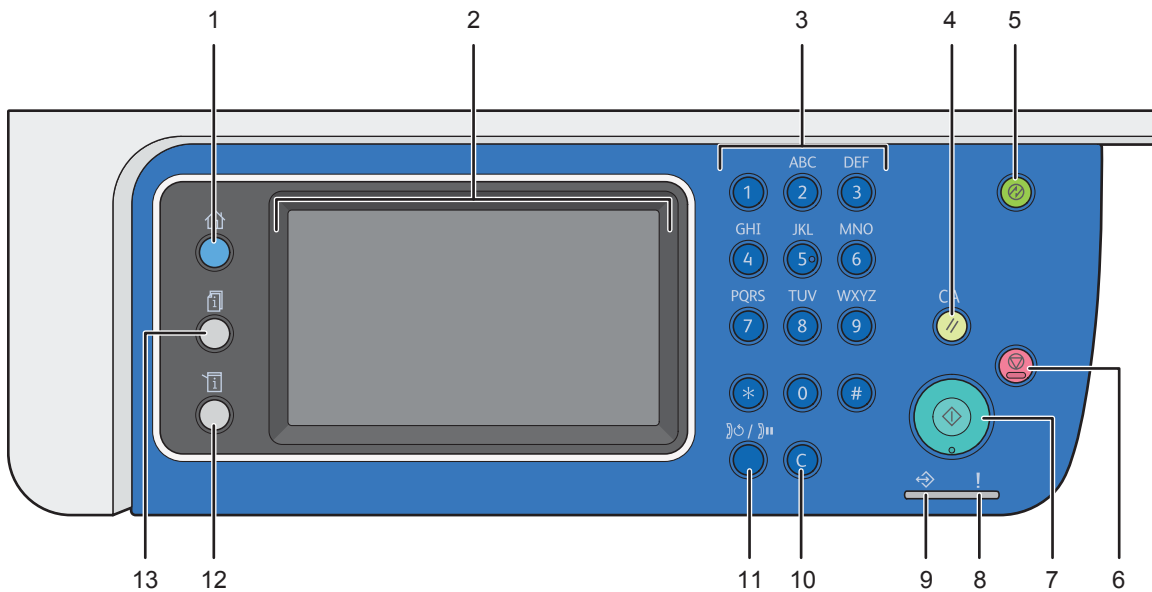
1 ⌂ (**Services**) button
- Moves to the top service screen.

2 LCD Panel
- Specifies the settings by directly touching the screen.
- Displays various settings, instructions, and error messages.

3 Number Pad
- Enters numbers.

4 **CA** (**Clear All**) button
- Resets the current setting, and returns to the top level of each menu.

5 ⊘ (**Wake Up**) button
- Lights up in the Power Saver mode. Press this button to exit the Power Saver mode.

6 ▽ (**Stop**) button
- Cancels the current processing or pending job.

7 ◇ (**Start**) button
- Starts a job.

8 **!** (**Error**) LED
- Lights up when the printer has an error.

9 ⇦ (**Data**) LED
- Flashes when data for Fax, Scan, Print job, or Stored job is being received.

10 **C** (**Clear**) button
- Deletes characters and numbers.

11 ☊ / ॥ (**Redial / Pause**) button
- Re-dials a telephone number.
- Inserts a pause during dialing.

12   🔳 (**System**) button

- Moves to the top level of the System menu.

13   🔳 (**Job Status**) button

- Moves to the top level of the Job Status menu.

NOTE:
- Moving to a different menu or returning to a previous screen cancels the current entry or setting. Make sure to save the current entry or setting.
- For details on how to use the number pad to enter numbers, see "Using the Number Pad" on page 344.

Touch Panel - Top Service Menu Screen

This section describes the fields and buttons on the top service screen which is displayed by pressing the 🏠 (**Services**) button. This is the default screen that appears when the printer is turned on.

Wireless LAN Connection Status Icon

Message Field

Toner Status Icon

Function Buttons
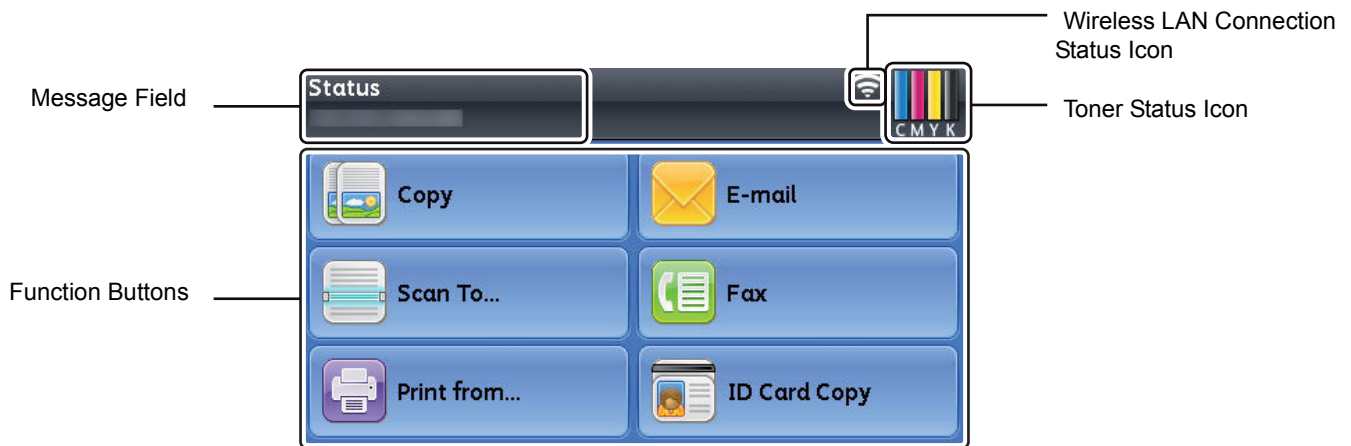
- **Message Field**

  Displays the printer status, error message, and IP address assigned to the printer.

- **Toner Status Icon**

  Displays the condition of toner in 6 levels. (The toner level for each color: `100%, 80%, 60%, 40%, 20%, 0%`) Selecting this icon moves to the `Supplies` tab.

- **Wireless LAN Connection Status Icon**

  Displays the intensity of wireless signal when the wireless printer adapter is connected to the printer.

- **Function Buttons**

  Allows you to set the features for functions such as `Copy`, `E-mail`, `Scan To`, `Fax`, `Print from`, and `ID Card Copy`.

  NOTE:
  - If the `Panel Lock` setting for a function is set to `Enable`, the function is disabled and the menu for the function does not appear on the screen. For details, see "Enabling the Panel Lock" on page 338.

- **Copy**

  You can set the features for the Copy function.

  See also:
  - "Copying" on page 187

- **E-mail**

  You can scan documents and send the scanned data as an e-mail attachment.

  See also:
  - "Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image" on page 238

- **Scan To**

  You can set the features for the Scan To function.

  See also:
  - "Scanning" on page 205

- **Fax**

  You can set the features for the Fax function.

  See also:
  - "Faxing" on page 247

- **Print from**

  You can set the features for the Print from function.

  See also:
  - "Printing" on page 152

- **ID Card Copy**

  You can set the features for the ID Card Copy function.

  See also:
  - "Using the ID Card Copy" on page 202

Installing Optional Accessories

You can make the printer more functional by installing the optional accessories such as the 512MB Memory, the 550 sheet feeder, Cabinet, Wireless Network Kit b/g/n, and the hard disk unit. This section describes how to install these printer's options.

This section includes:

■ Installing the Optional 512MB Memory

NOTE:
- Your printer supports additional 512 MB memory module.

1 Turn off the printer.
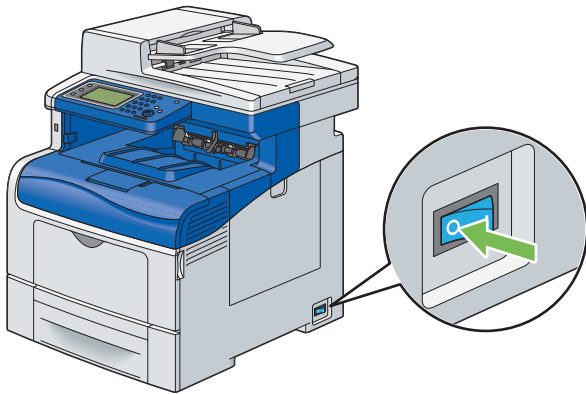
IMPORTANT:
- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

2 Turn the screw on the control board cover counterclockwise.

NOTE:
- Loosen the screw. You do not need to remove the screw.
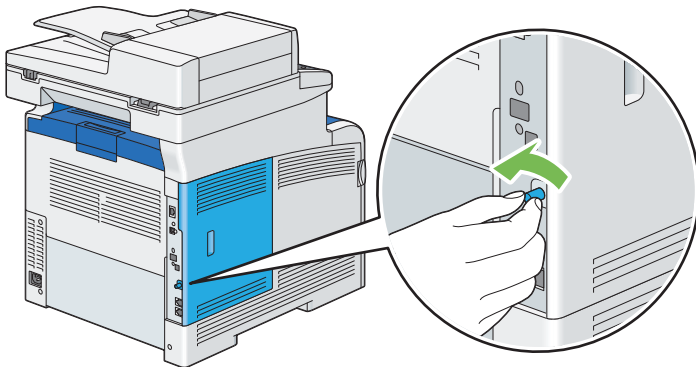
3 Slide the control board cover towards the rear of the printer.
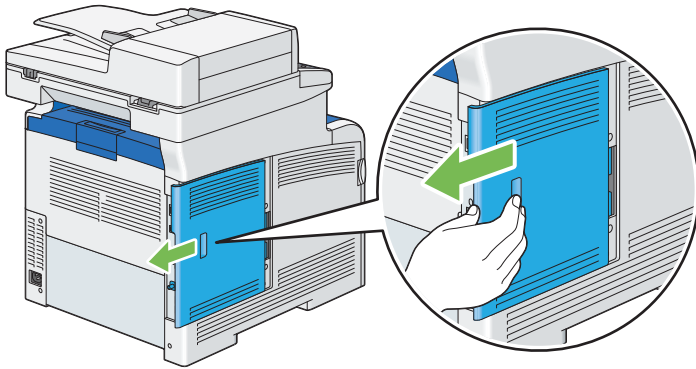
4 Open the control board cover completely.
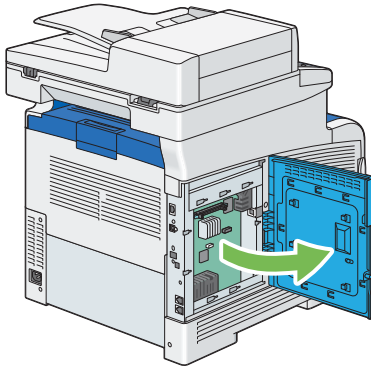
5 Hold the edge of the memory module with the labeled side down and the connector toward the control board, and then insert it into the slot.
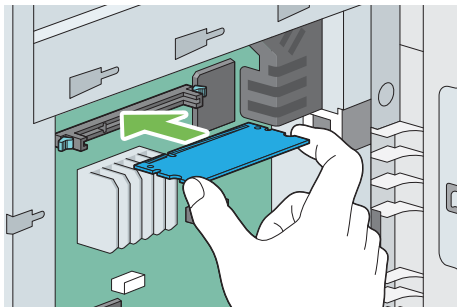
6 Push the memory module firmly into the slot.
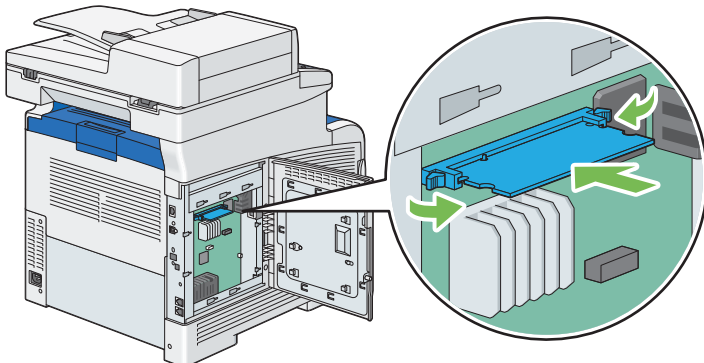
NOTE:
• Ensure that the memory module is firmly fixed in the slot and does not move easily.

7 Close the control board cover, and slide it towards the front of the printer.
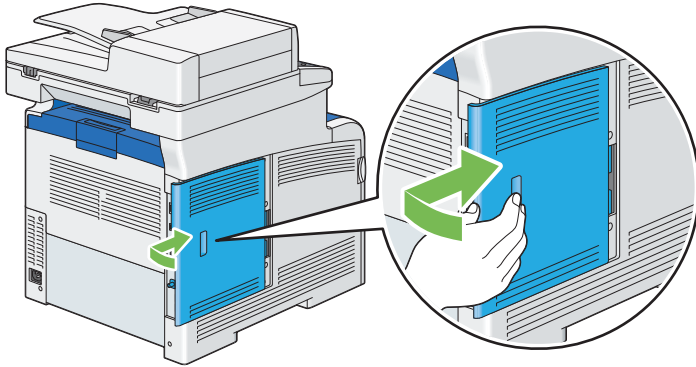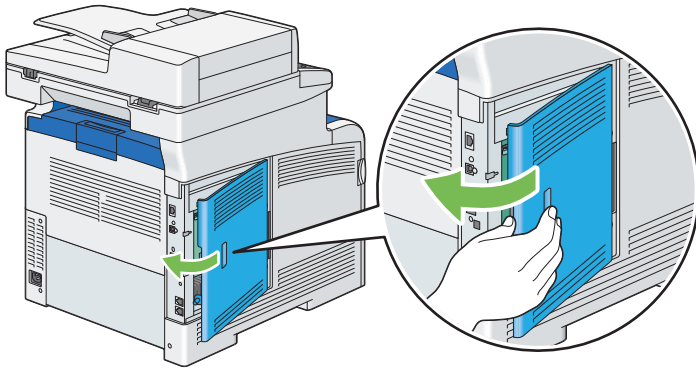
8 Turn the screw clockwise.
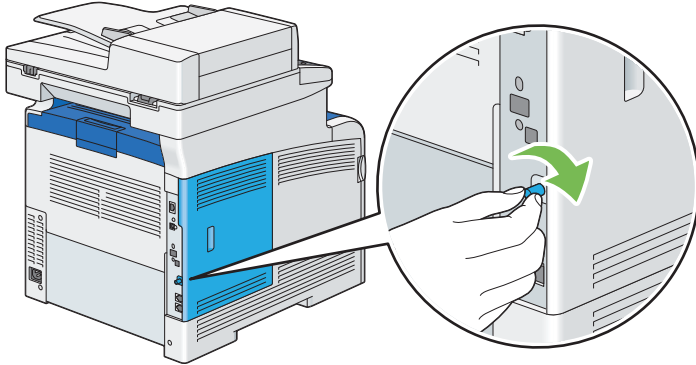
9 Turn on the printer.

10 Print the System Settings page to confirm that the newly installed memory module is detected by the printer.

    a Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

    b Select `Report / List`.

    c Select `System Settings`.

    d Select `Print`.

    The System Settings page is printed.

11 Confirm the amount of **Memory Capacity** listed under **General** in the System Settings page.

If the memory capacity has not increased, turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and re-install the memory module.

12 If you installed the optional 512MB memory after installing the print driver, update your driver by following the instructions for the operating system you are using. If the printer is on a network, update the driver for each client.

Updating Your Driver to Detect Optional 512MB Memory

The following procedure uses Microsoft® Windows® and the PCL 6/PS driver.

NOTE:

• When you use XML Paper Specification (XPS) driver, the following settings are not required.

Windows 7/ Windows 7 x64/ Windows Server® 2008 R2 x64	**1** Click **Start → Devices and Printers**. **2** Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CM405 df and select **Printer properties**. **3** Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi- Directional Setup**. **4** Select **Get Information from Printer** and then select **OK**. **5** Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. **6** Close the **Devices and Printers** dialog box.
Windows Vista®/ Windows Vista x64	**1** Click **Start → Control Panel → Hardware and Sound → Printers**. **2** Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CM405 df and select **Properties**. **3** Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi- Directional Setup**. **4** Select **Get Information from Printer** and then select **OK**. **5** Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. **6** Close the **Printers** dialog box.
Windows Server 2008/ Windows Server 2008 x64	**1** Click **Start → Control Panel → Printers**. **2** Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CM405 df and select **Properties**. **3** Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi- Directional Setup**. **4** Select **Get Information from Printer** and then select **OK**. **5** Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. **6** Close the **Printers** dialog box.
Windows XP/ Windows XP x64/ Windows Server 2003/ Windows Server 2003 x64	**1** Click **Start** (**start** for Windows XP) **→ Printers and Faxes**. **2** Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CM405 df and select **Properties**. **3** Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi- Directional Setup**. **4** Select **Get Information from Printer** and then select **OK**. **5** Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. **6** Close the **Printers and Faxes** dialog box.

If the printer information is not updated automatically after clicking **Get Information from Printer**, follow these steps:

1 Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Installable Options**.

2 Select **RAM Disk** in the **Items** list box.

3 Select **Installed** in the **RAM Disk** drop-down menu under **Setting for**.

4 Select **Memory Capacity** in the **Items** list box.

5 Select the total amount of the installed printer memory in the **Memory Capacity** drop-down menu under **Setting for**.

6 Click **OK**.

7 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

8 Close the **Devices and Printers** (, **Printers**, or **Printers and Faxes**) dialog box.

The following procedure uses Mac OS® X and the PS driver.

Mac OS X 10.7.x	**1** Select the **Print & Scan** in **System Preferences**.
	2 Select the printer in **Printers** list, and click **Options & Supplies**.
	3 Select **Driver**, select the options that have been installed on the printers, and then click **OK**.
Mac OS X 10.5.x/10.6.x	**1** Select the **Print & Fax** in **System Preferences**.
	2 Select the printer in **Printers** list, and click **Options & Supplies**.
	3 Select **Driver**, select the options that have been installed on the printers, and then click **OK**.
Mac OS X 10.3.x/10.4.x	**1** Select the printer from the **Printer List** screen in **Print Center** (or **Printer Setup Utility**).
	2 Click Printers on the **Print Center** (or **Printer Setup Utility**) menu bar, and select **Show Info**.
	3 Select **Installable Options**, and select the options that have been installed on the printer, and then click **Apply Changes**.

■ Installing the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder and the Cabinet

IMPORTANT:

- If you install the optional 550 sheet feeder and the cabinet after setting up the printer, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and disconnect all cables from the rear of the printer before installing the feeder and the cabinet.

1 Lock the two caster stoppers at the front of the cabinet.

> ⚠ **CAUTION:**
> - **Always lock the wheels of this product after installation. Otherwise, it may fall over or slide and cause injuries.**
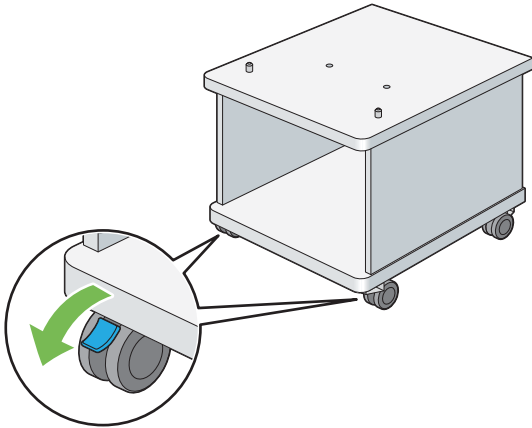
2 Attach the four feet to the cabinet by inserting feet into the slots until they lock into position.

Make sure that all four feet are firmly inserted into the slots, and that they do not fall off. If these feet are not inserted properly, they do not stay inserted firmly, or they do not lock into position.
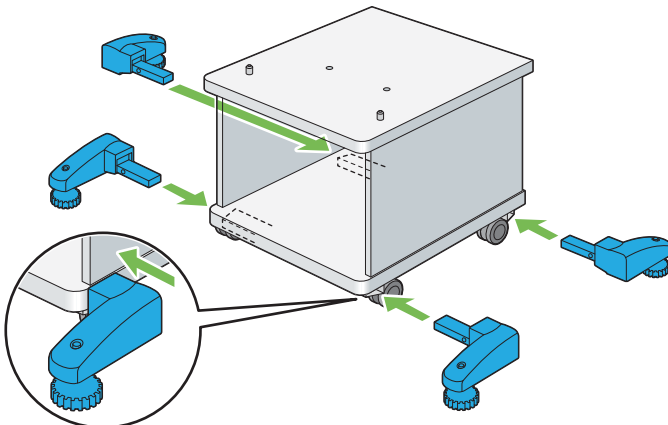
3 Turn the dials of the four feet to the clockwise direction until the bottom of the feet have contact with the floor.
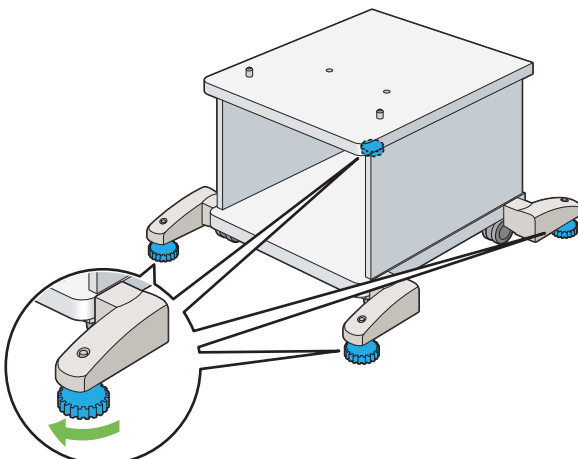
4 Remove the tape and the bag holding the screws on the front of the optional 550 sheet feeder, and then remove the screws from the bag.
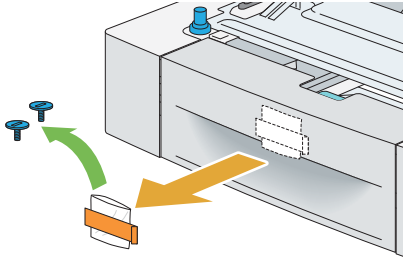
5 Hold the optional 550 sheet feeder with one hand, and remove the tray from the feeder with the other hand.
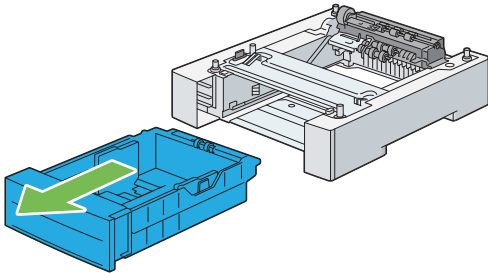
6 Lift the optional 550 sheet feeder and align the two pins of the cabinet with the holes at the bottom of the feeder. Gently lower the optional 550 sheet feeder onto the cabinet.

IMPORTANT:

- Be careful not to pinch your fingers when lowering the optional 550 sheet feeder onto the cabinet.
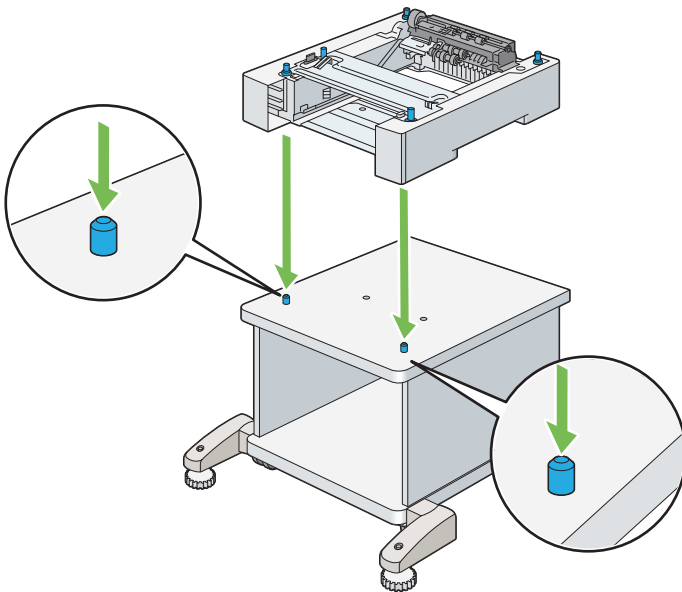
7 Secure the optional 550 sheet feeder to the cabinet by tightening the two screws provided with the cabinet, with a coin or similar object.
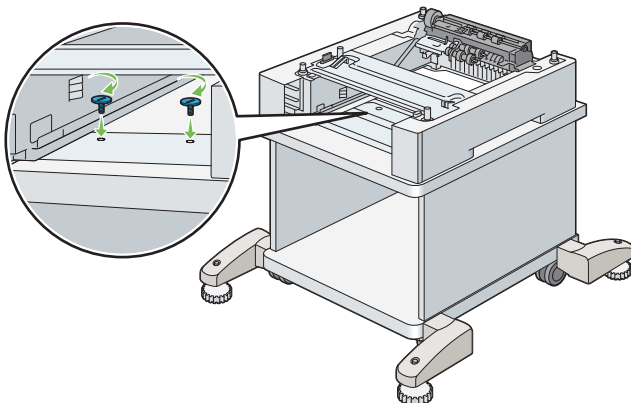
8   Insert the tray into the optional 550 sheet feeder, and push until it stops.
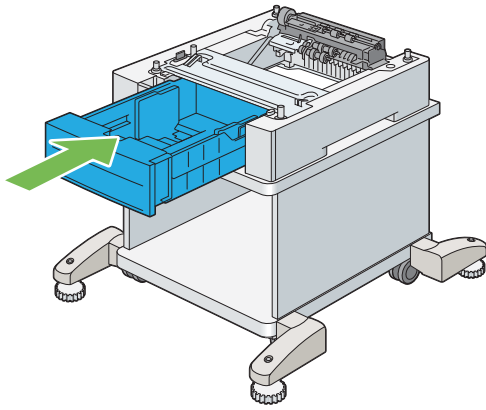
9   Turn off the printer.
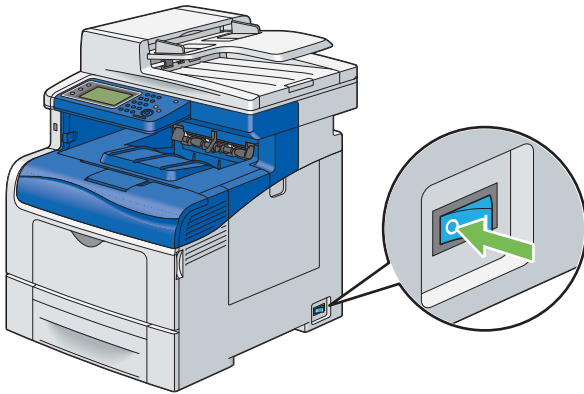
IMPORTANT:
- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

10   Disconnect all cables from the rear of the printer.
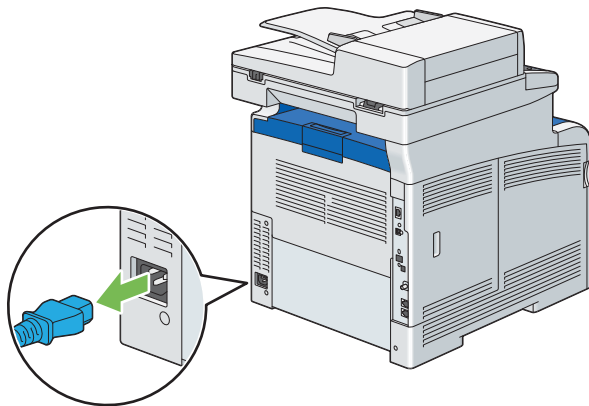
11 Pull the standard 550 sheet tray out of the printer about 200 mm.
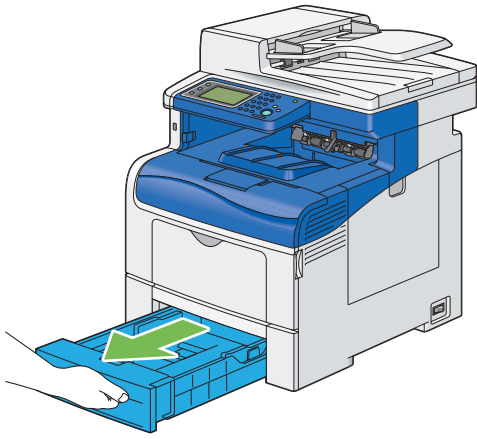
12 Hold the standard 550 sheet tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.
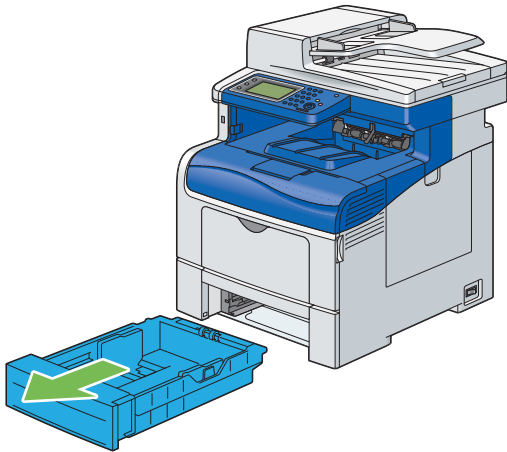
13 Lift the printer and align the five guide pins of the optional 550 sheet feeder with the holes at the bottom of the printer. Gently lower the printer onto the optional 550 sheet feeder.

IMPORTANT:
- When lifting the machine, make sure to follow the precautions stated in "Machine Installation" on page 18.
- Be careful not to pinch your fingers when lowering the printer onto the optional 550 sheet feeder.
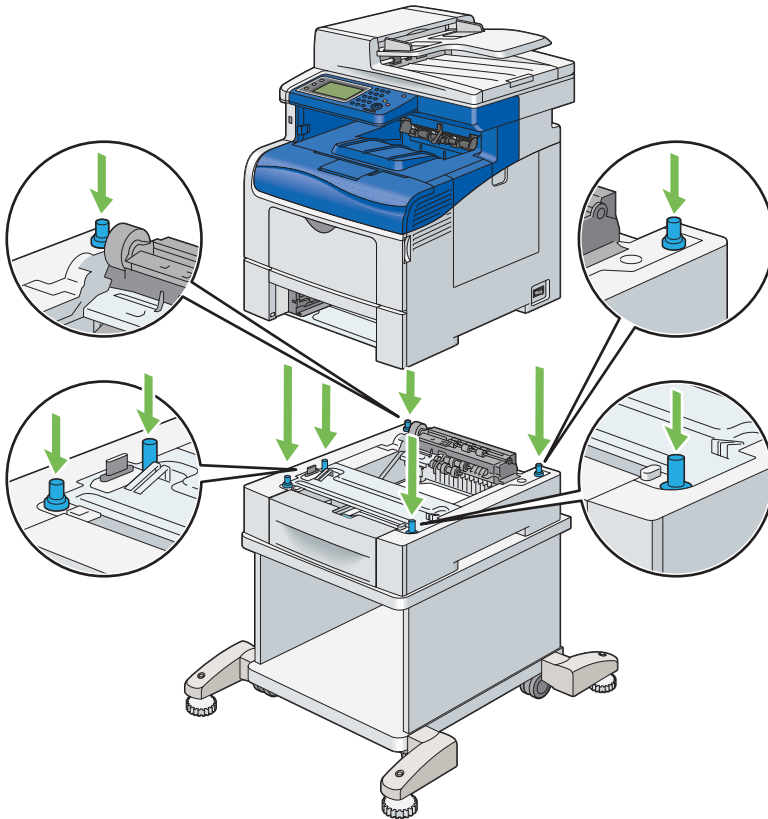
14 Secure the optional 550 sheet feeder to the printer by tightening the two screws provided with the feeder, with a coin or similar object.
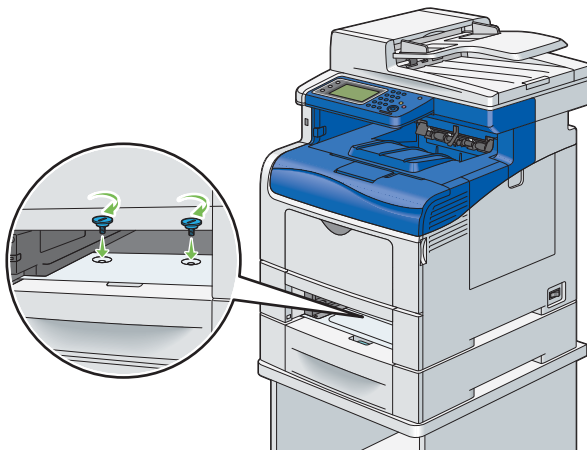
NOTE:
- The screw hole is located in 216 mm recess from the front of the printer.

15 Insert the standard 550 sheet tray into the printer, and push until it stops.
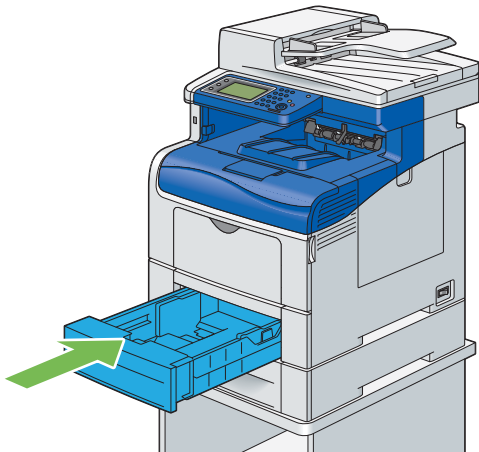
IMPORTANT:

- Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or inside of the printer.

16 Attach the cable hook on the cabinet using the two screws provided with the cabinet.
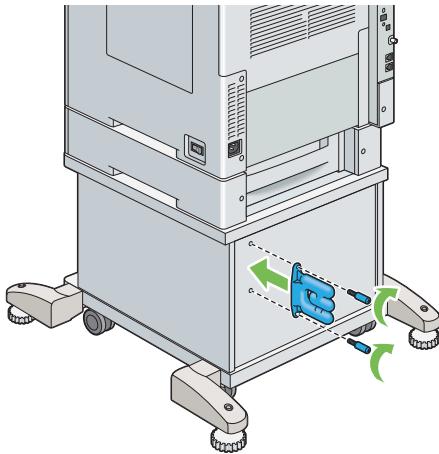
17 Re-connect the power cord to the power connector on the rear of the printer, and wind the power cord onto the cable hook.
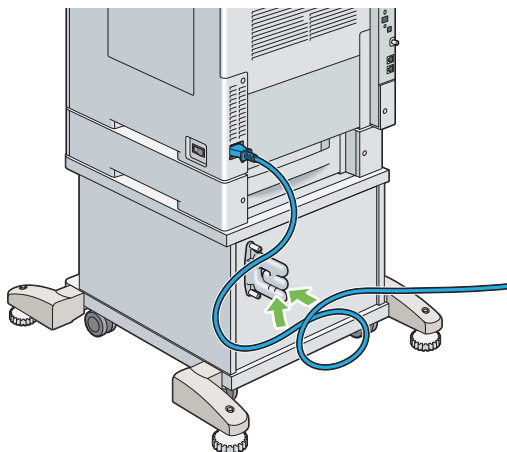
18 Lightly pull the power cord to take up the slack of the cable.
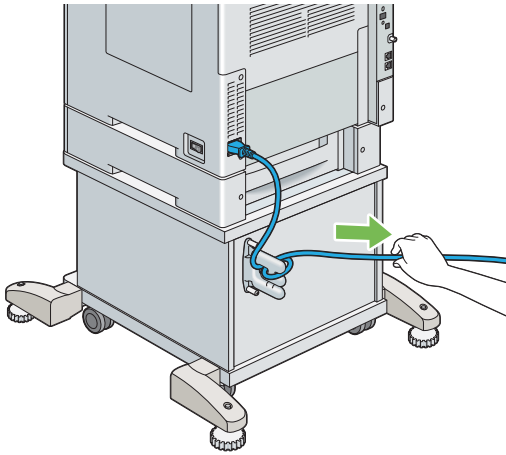
19 Connect the other end of the power cord into the power source.

20 Connect other cables into the rear of the printer and turn on the printer.

NOTE:
- The printer will automatically detect the attached tray but will not detect the paper type.

21 Print the System Settings page to confirm the optional 550 sheet feeder is installed correctly.

   a Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

   b Select `Report / List.`

   c Select `System Settings.`

   d Select `Print.`

   The System Settings page is printed.

22 Confirm **Tray 2 (550 Sheet Feeder)** is listed under **Printer Options** in the System Settings page.

   If the feeder is not listed, turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and re-install the optional 550 sheet feeder.

23 After loading paper in the optional 550 sheet feeder, specify the paper type from the printer operator panel.

   a Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

   b Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Tray Management.`

   c Select `Tray Settings.`

   d Select `Tray 2.`

   e Select `Size.`

   f Select the desired paper size.

   g Select `Type.`

   h Select the desired paper type.

   i Select `OK.`

24 If you installed the optional 550 sheet feeder after installing the print driver, update your driver by following the instructions for each operating system. If the printer is on a network, update the driver for each client.

Updating Your Driver to Detect Optional 550 Sheet Feeder

The following procedure uses Windows and the PCL 6/PS driver.

NOTE:

- When you use XML Paper Specification (XPS) driver, the following settings are not required.

Windows 7/ Windows 7 x64/ Windows Server 2008 R2 x64	**1** Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**. **2** Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CM405 df and select **Printer properties**. **3** Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi- Directional Setup**. **4** Select **Get Information from Printer** and then select **OK**. **5** Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. **6** Close the **Devices and Printers** dialog box.
Windows Vista/ Windows Vista x64	**1** Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**. **2** Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CM405 df and select **Properties**. **3** Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi- Directional Setup**. **4** Select **Get Information from Printer** and then select **OK**. **5** Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. **6** Close the **Printers** dialog box.
Windows Server 2008/ Windows Server 2008 x64	**1** Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Printers**. **2** Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CM405 df and select **Properties**. **3** Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi- Directional Setup**. **4** Select **Get Information from Printer** and then select **OK**. **5** Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. **6** Close the **Printers** dialog box.
Windows XP/ Windows XP x64/ Windows Server 2003/ Windows Server 2003 x64	**1** Click **Start** (**start** for Windows XP) → **Printers and Faxes**. **2** Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CM405 df and select **Properties**. **3** Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi- Directional Setup**. **4** Select **Get Information from Printer** and then select **OK**. **5** Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. **6** Close the **Printers and Faxes** dialog box.

If the printer information is not updated automatically after clicking **Get Information from Printer**, follow these steps:

1 Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Installable Options**.

2 Select **Paper Tray Configuration** in the **Items** list box.

3 Select **2 Trays** in the **Paper Tray Configuration** drop-down menu under **Setting for**.

4 Click **OK**.

5 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

6 Close the **Devices and Printers** (, **Printers**, or **Printers and Faxes**) dialog box.

The following procedure uses Mac OS X and the PS driver.

Mac OS X 10.7.x	**1** Select the **Print & Scan** in **System Preferences**.
	2 Select the printer in **Printers** list, and click **Options & Supplies**.
	3 Select **Driver**, select the options that have been installed on the printers, and then click **OK**.
Mac OS X 10.5.x/10.6.x	**1** Select the **Print & Fax** in **System Preferences**.
	2 Select the printer in **Printers** list, and click **Options & Supplies**.
	3 Select **Driver**, select the options that have been installed on the printers, and then click **OK**.
Mac OS X 10.3.x/10.4.x	**1** Select the printer from the **Printer List** screen in **Print Center** (or **Printer Setup Utility**).
	2 Click Printers on the **Print Center** (or **Printer Setup Utility**) menu bar, and select **Show Info**.
	3 Select **Installable Options**, and select the options that have been installed on the printer, and then click **Apply Changes**.

■ Installing the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder (without the Cabinet)

IMPORTANT:
- If you install the optional 550 sheet feeder after setting up the printer, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and disconnect all cables from the rear of the printer before installing the feeder.

1 Turn off the printer.
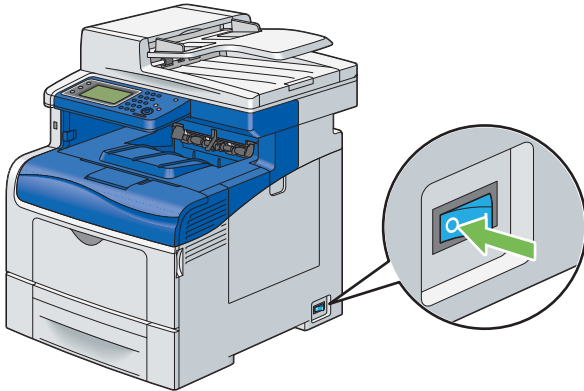
    IMPORTANT:
- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

2 Disconnect all cables from the rear of the printer.
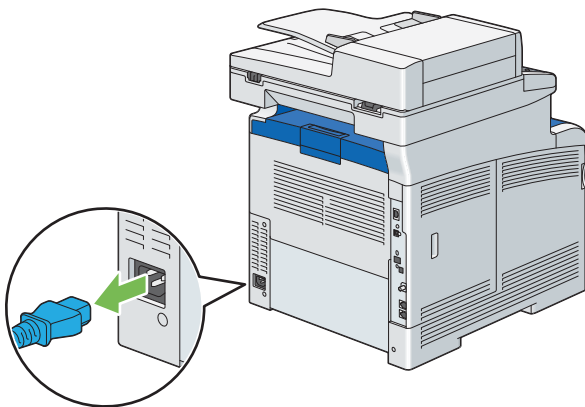
3 Remove the tape and the bag holding the screws on the front of the optional 550 sheet feeder, and then remove the screws from the bag.
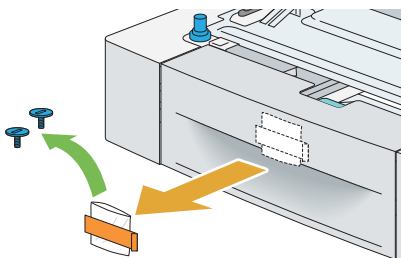
4 Place the optional 550 sheet feeder in the location that the printer is located.

5 Pull the standard 550 sheet tray out of the printer about 200 mm.
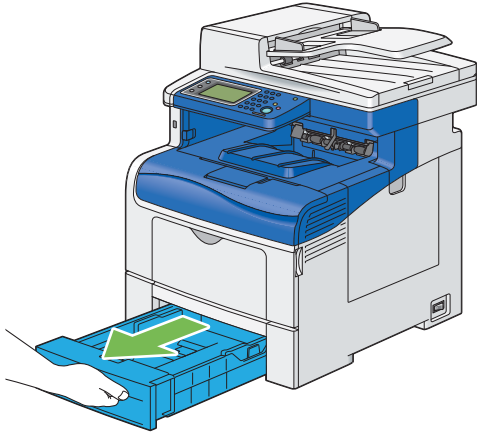
6 Hold the standard 550 sheet tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.
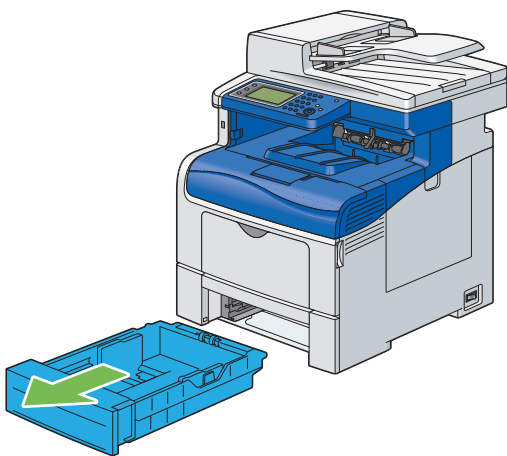
7 Lift the printer and align the five guide pins of the optional 550 sheet feeder with the holes at the bottom of the printer. Gently lower the printer onto the optional 550 sheet feeder.

IMPORTANT:

- When lifting the machine, make sure to follow the precautions stated in "Machine Installation" on page 18.
- Be careful not to pinch your fingers when lowering the printer onto the optional 550 sheet feeder.
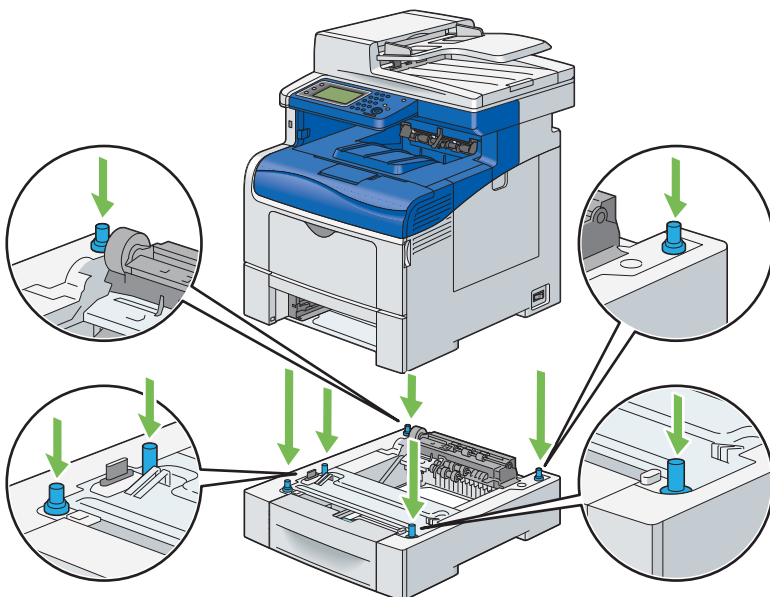
8 Secure the optional 550 sheet feeder to the printer by tightening the two screws provided with the feeder, with a coin or similar object.
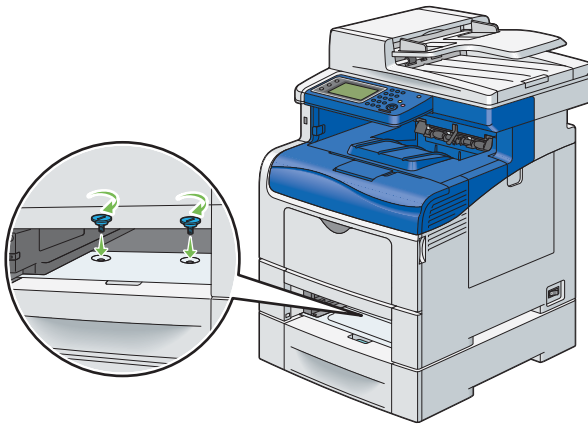
NOTE:
- The screw hole is located in 216 mm recess from the front of the printer.

9 Insert the standard 550 sheet tray into the printer, and push until it stops.
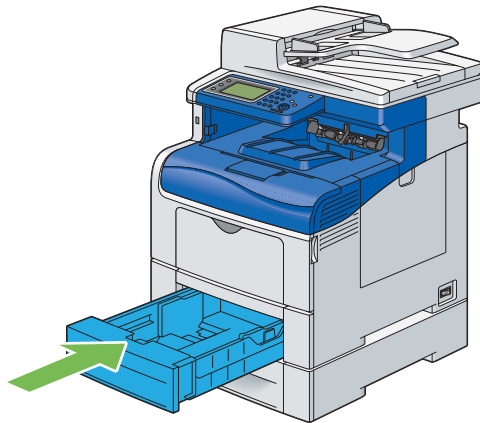
IMPORTANT:
- Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or inside of the printer.

10 Reconnect all cables into the rear of the printer and turn on the printer.

NOTE:
- The printer will automatically detect the attached tray but will not detect the paper type.

11 Print the System Settings page to confirm the optional 550 sheet feeder is installed correctly.
  a Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.
  b Select `Report / List.`
  c Select `System Settings,` and select that report or list.
  d Select `Print.`
  The System Settings page is printed.

12 Confirm **Tray 2 (550 Sheet Feeder)** is listed under **Printer Options** in the System Settings page.
  If the feeder is not listed, turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and re-install the optional 550 sheet feeder.

13 After loading paper in the optional 550 sheet feeder, specify the paper type from the printer operator panel.

  a Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

  b Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Tray Management`.

  c Select `Tray Settings`.

  d Select `Tray 2`.

  e Select `Size`.

  f Select the desired paper size.

  g Select `Type`.

  h Select the desired paper type.

  i Select `OK`.

14 If you installed the optional 550 sheet feeder after installing the print driver, update your driver by following the instructions for each operating system. If the printer is on a network, update the driver for each client.

Updating Your Driver to Detect Optional 550 Sheet Feeder

For details, see .

■ Installing the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter

The wireless printer adapter allows you to use the printer with wireless network connection.

The specifications of the wireless printer adapter are described below.

Item	Specification
Connectivity Technology	Wireless
Compliant Standards	IEEE 802.11b, 802.11g, and 802.11n
Bandwidth	2.4 GHz
Data Transfer Rate	IEEE 802.11n: 65 Mbps
	IEEE 802.11g: 54, 48, 36, 24, 18, 12, 9, and 6 Mbps
	IEEE 802.11b: 11, 5.5, 2, and 1 Mbps
Security	64 (40-bit key)/128 (104-bit key) WEP,
	WPA- PSK (TKIP, AES), WPA2-PSK (AES), WPA-Enterprise (TKIP, AES), WPA2-Enterprise (AES)
Wi-Fi Protected Setup® (WPS)*:	Push-Button Configuration (PBC),
	Personal Identification Number (PIN)

*:WPS 2.0 compliant. WPS 2.0 works on access points with the following encryption types: Mixed mode PSK, WPA-PSK AES, WPA2-PSK AES, WPA-PSK TKIP, Open (No Security)

NOTE:
• WPA-Enterprise (TKIP, AES) and WPA2-Enterprise (AES) are available when the optional hard disk unit is installed.
• When the wireless printer adapter is installed, you cannot use IEEE 802.1x authentication and/or the Ethernet port for a wired connection.

Verifying the Contents of the Box

Wireless Printer Adapter
Installation Guide

Wireless
Printer Adapter
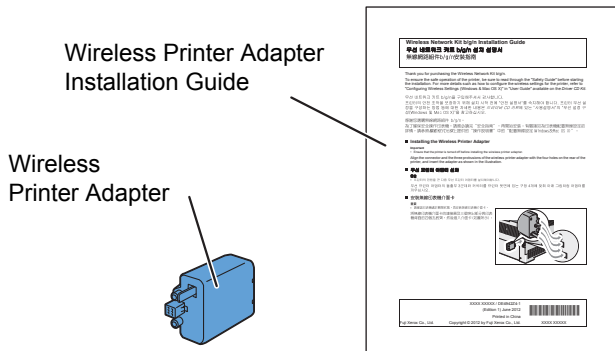
NOTE:
• To complete wireless installation, you require the corresponding *Driver CD Kit* that comes with your printer, which can also be downloaded from http://www.fujixerox.com/support/docuprint/.

Installing the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter Using Video Instructions (Recommended)

To install the wireless printer adapter using the video instructions on the Windows computer perform the following method.

1 Insert the *Driver CD Kit* in your computer. The **Easy Install Navi** file launches automatically.

2 Select **Optional Accessories Setup** on the **Easy Install Navi** window.
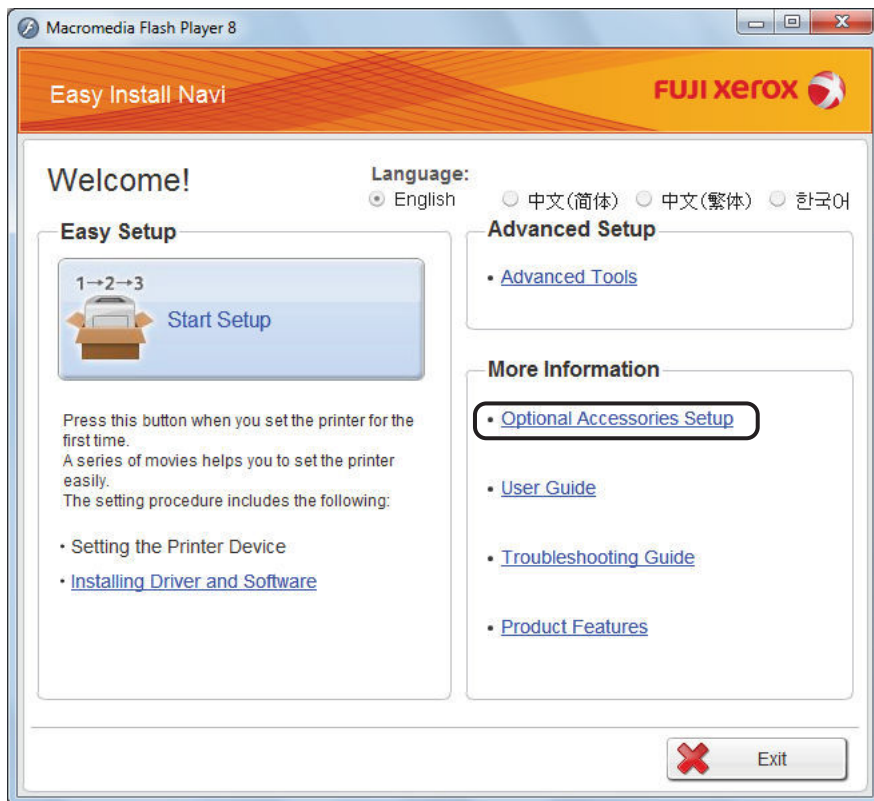
3   Click **Wireless Network Kit b/g/n**.
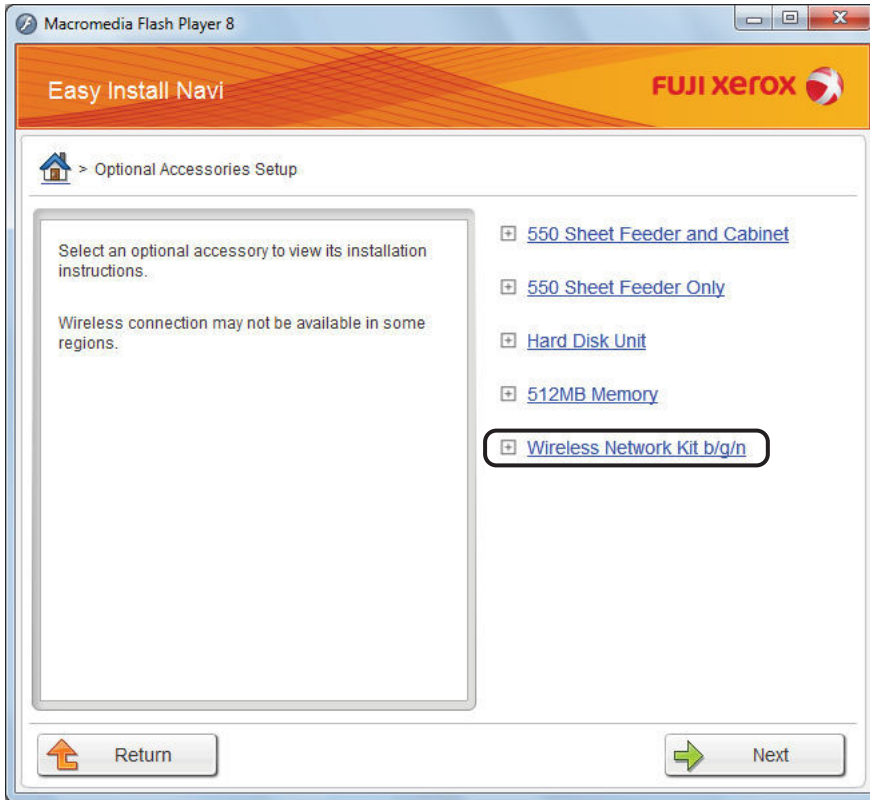
4   Click the procedure you want confirm to start the video instruction.
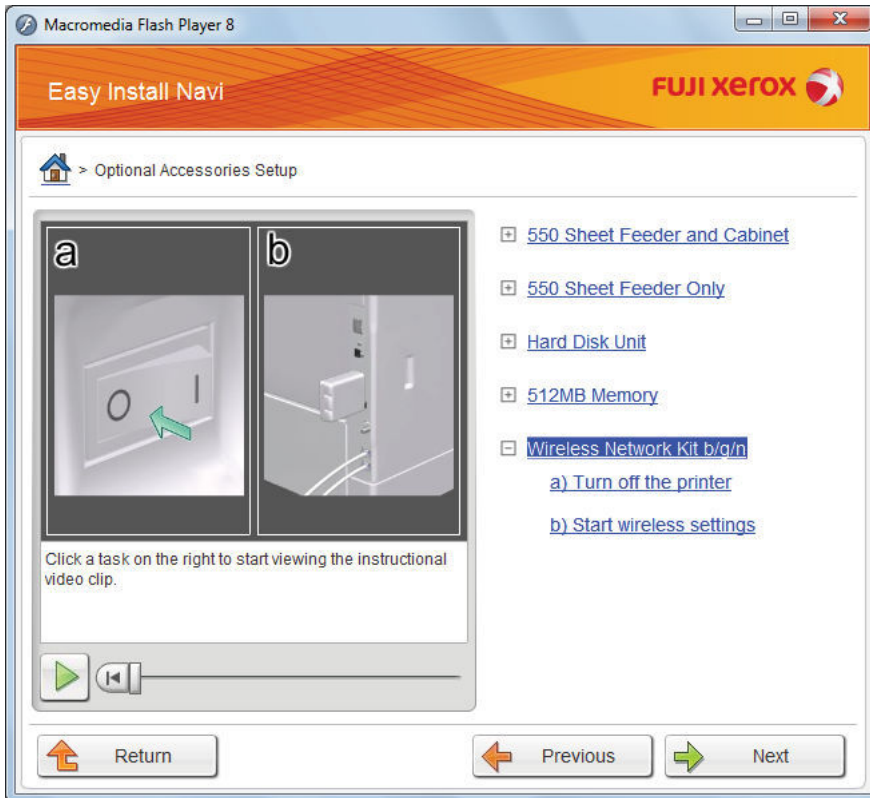
Follow the on-screen instructions to install the wireless printer adapter.

Installing the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter

NOTE:

- You can also install the wireless printer adapter by following the instructions described in Wireless Printer Adapter Installation Guide provided with the wireless printer adapter.

1 Turn off the printer.
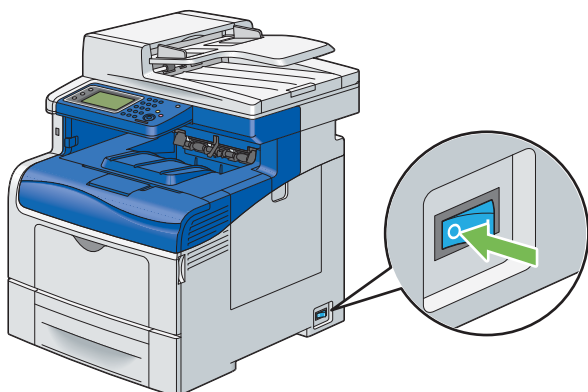
IMPORTANT:

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

2 Align the connector and the three protrusions of the wireless printer adapter with the four holes and insert the adapter.
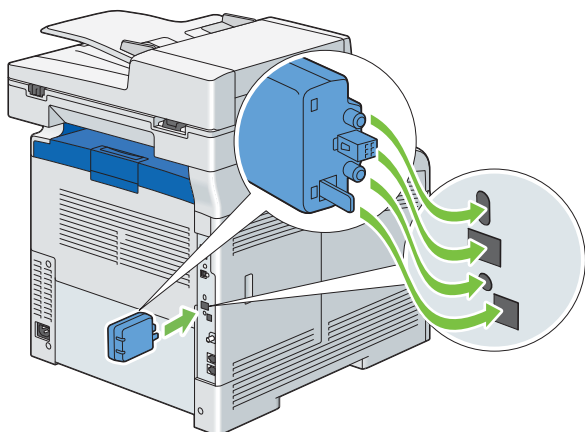
NOTE:

- Ensure that the adapter is fully inserted and secured.

3 Turn on the printer.

If a message displays telling you to make initial setup on the operator panel, always do as instructed.

4 Print the System Settings page to confirm that the wireless printer adapter is installed correctly.
Confirm that the **Network (Wireless)** section exists.
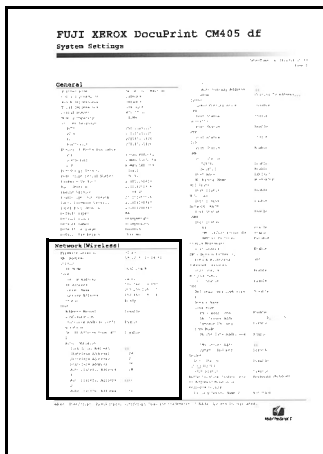
NOTE:

• For more information on configuring the wireless printer adapter, see "Configuring Wireless Settings (Windows & Mac OS X)" on page 124.

■ Installing the Optional Hard Disk Unit

1 Turn off the printer.
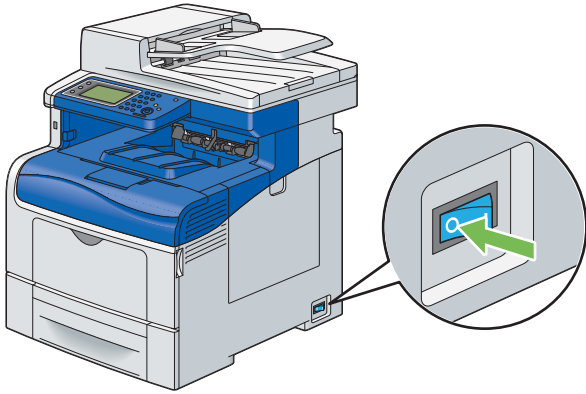
IMPORTANT:
- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

2 Turn the screw on the control board cover counterclockwise.
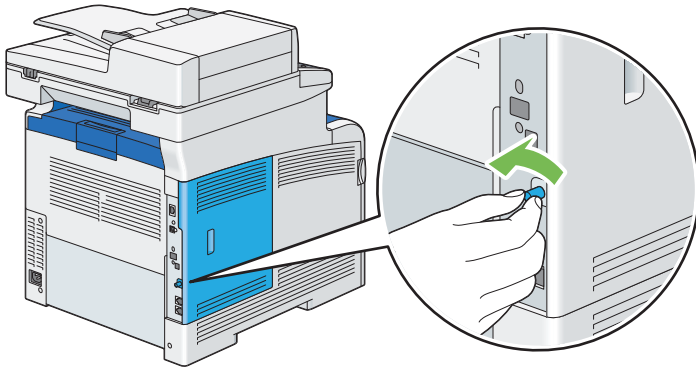
3 Slide the control board cover towards the rear of the printer.
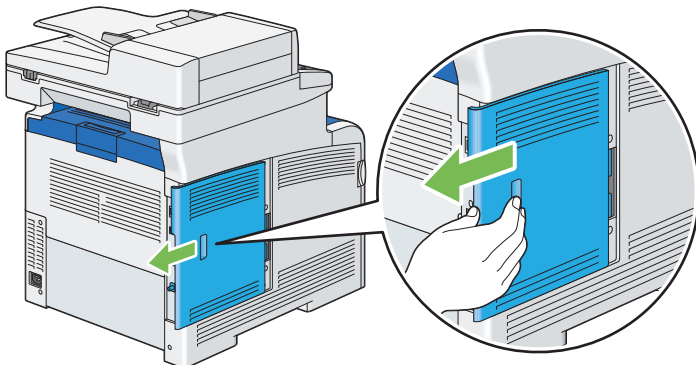
4 Open the control board cover completely.
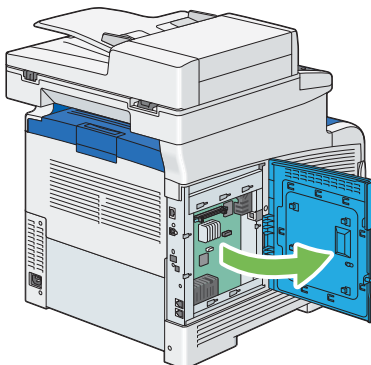
5 Insert the two plastic pins on the hard disk unit into the metal casing holes.
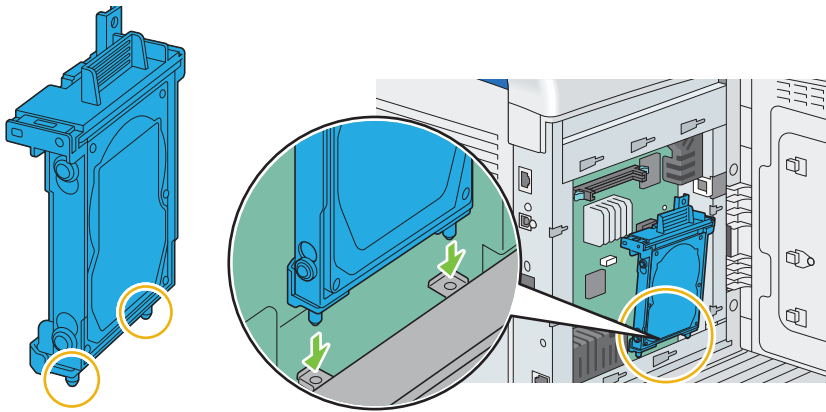
6 Attaching the protrusion and the connector to the control board, push the hard disk unit firmly into place.
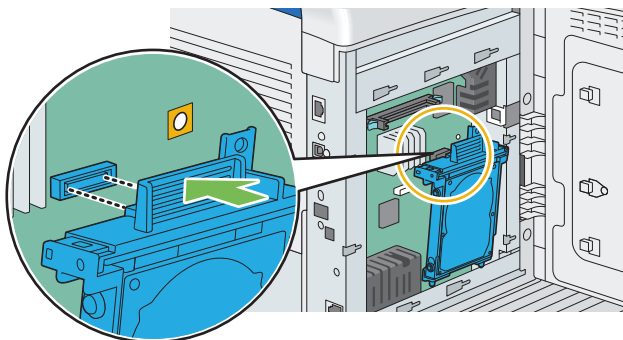
7 Close the control board cover, and then slide it towards the front of the printer.
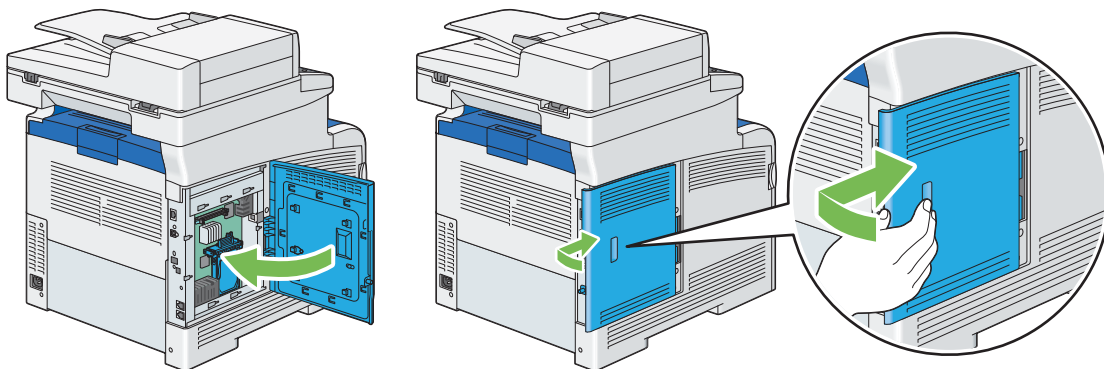
8 Turn the screw clockwise.
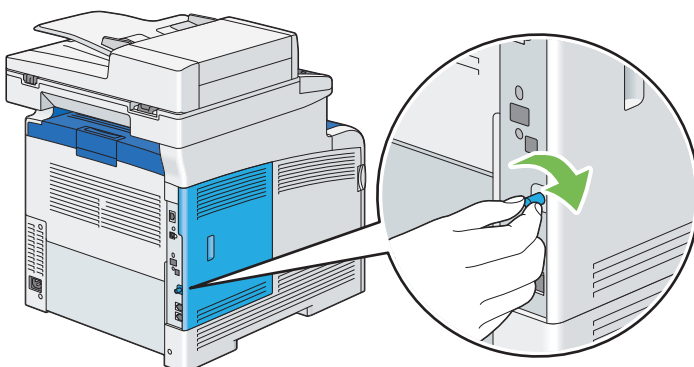
9 Turn on the printer.

10 Print the System Settings page to confirm the optional hard disk unit is installed correctly.

    a Press the [i] (**System**) button.

b Select `Report / List`.

c Select `System Settings`, and select that report or list.

d Select `Print`.

The System Settings page is printed.

11 Confirm the amount of **Hard Disk** listed under **Printer Options** in the System Settings page.

If the **Hard Disk** is not listed, turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and re-install the hard disk unit.

12 If you installed the hard disk unit after installing the print driver, update your driver by following the instructions for the operating system you are using. If the printer is on a network, update the driver for each client.

hard disk unit can be specified on the print driver only when Hard Disk or RAM Disk is available on the print driver.

Updating Your Driver to Detect Optional Hard Disk Unit

The following procedure uses Windows and the PCL 6/PS driver.

NOTE:

- When you use XML Paper Specification (XPS) driver, the following settings are not required.

Windows 7/ Windows 7 x64/ Windows Server 2008 R2 x64	**1** Click **Start → Devices and Printers**. **2** Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CM405 df and select **Printer properties**. **3** Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi- Directional Setup**. **4** Select **Get Information from Printer** and then select **OK**. **5** Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. **6** Close the **Devices and Printers** dialog box.
Windows Vista/ Windows Vista x64	**1** Click **Start → Control Panel → Hardware and Sound → Printers**. **2** Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CM405 df and select **Properties**. **3** Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi- Directional Setup**. **4** Select **Get Information from Printer** and then select **OK**. **5** Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. **6** Close the **Printers** dialog box.
Windows Server 2008/ Windows Server 2008 x64	**1** Click **Start → Control Panel → Printers**. **2** Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CM405 df and select **Properties**. **3** Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi- Directional Setup**. **4** Select **Get Information from Printer** and then select **OK**. **5** Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. **6** Close the **Printers** dialog box.
Windows XP/ Windows XP x64/ Windows Server 2003/ Windows Server 2003 x64	**1** Click **Start** (**start** for Windows XP) → **Printers and Faxes**. **2** Right-click the printer icon of the DocuPrint CM405 df and select **Properties**. **3** Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Bi- Directional Setup**. **4** Select **Get Information from Printer** and then select **OK**. **5** Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. **6** Close the **Printers and Faxes** dialog box.

If the printer information is not updated automatically after clicking **Get Information from Printer**, follow these steps:

1 Click the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Installable Options**.

2 Select **Hard Disk** in the **Items** list box.

3 Select **Installed** in the **Hard Disk** drop-down menu under **Setting for**.

4 Click **OK**.

5 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

6 Close the **Devices and Printers** (, **Printers**, or **Printers and Faxes**) dialog box.

The following procedure uses Mac OS X and the PS driver.

| Mac OS X 10.7.x | **1** Select the **Print & Scan** in **System Preferences**. |
	2 Select the printer in **Printers** list box, and click **Options & Supplies**.
	3 Select **Driver**, select the options that have been installed on the printers, and then click **OK**.
Mac OS X 10.5.x/10.6.x	**1** Select the **Print & Fax** in **System Preferences**.
	2 Select the printer in **Printers** list box, and click **Options & Supplies**.
	3 Select **Driver**, select the options that have been installed on the printers, and then click **OK**.
Mac OS X 10.3.x/10.4.x	**1** Select the printer from the **Printer List** screen in **Print Center** (or **Printer Setup Utility**).
	2 Click Printers on the **Print Center** (or **Printer Setup Utility**) menu bar, and select **Show Info**.
	3 Select **Installable Options**, and select the options that have been installed on the printer, and then click **Apply Changes**.

Turning on the Printer

IMPORTANT:
- Do not use extension cords or power strips.
- The printer should not be connected to an uninterrupted power supply (UPS) system.

1 Connect the power cord to the power connector on the rear of your printer.
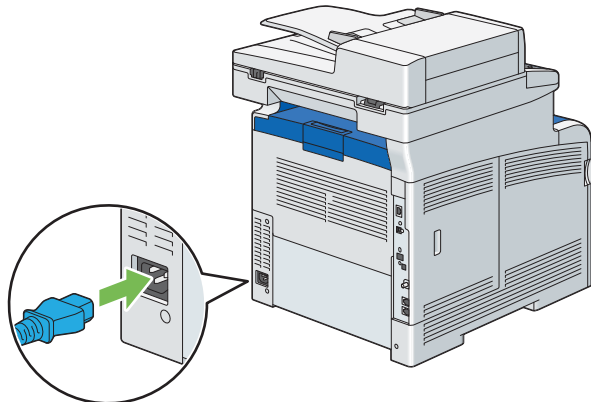
2 Connect the other end of the power cord to the power source.

3 Turn on the printer.
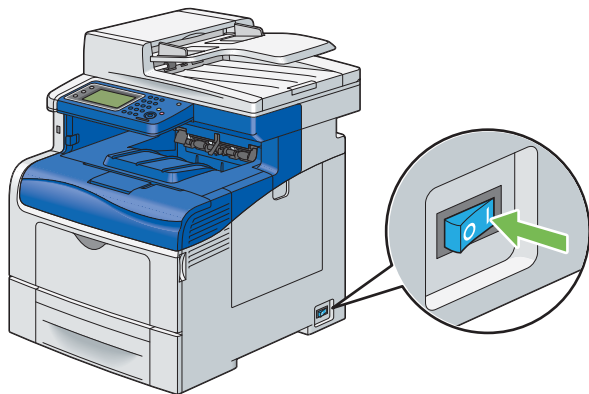
4 Follow the on-screen instructions on the LCD panel to configure the initial settings of your printer.

Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel

You need to set the printer language, region, clock date, and time when you turn on printer for the first time.

When you turn on the printer, a wizard appears on the LCD panel. Follow the steps below to set the initial settings.

1 Turn on the printer.

The `Select Your Language` screen of `Power On Wizard` appears.

> **NOTE:**
> • If you do not start configuring the initial settings, `Ready` appears on the LCD panel in three minutes. After that, you can set the following initial setup by enabling `Power On Wizard` on the LCD panel or CentreWare Internet Services if needed.
> For more information on operator panel, see "Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 280.
> For more information on CentreWare Internet Services, see "CentreWare Internet Services" on page 83.

2 Select the desired language.

English
Simplified Chinese
Traditional Chinese
Korean

3 Select `Next`.

The `Date/Time` screen appears.

4 Select `Time Zone`.

5 Select the desired geographic region.

6 Select the desired time zone, and then select `OK`.

7 Select `Date`.

8 Select a data format from the menu displayed by selecting `Format`.

9 After selecting the box under `Year`, select ⎯ or ＋ , or use the number pad to enter the desired value.
Repeat this step to enter the desired value for `Month` and `Day`.

10 Select `OK`.

11 Select `Time`.

12 Select the time format from `12 Hour` or `24 Hour`. If you select `12 Hour`, select `AM` or `PM`.

13 After selecting the box under `Hour`, use the number pad to enter the desired value.
Repeat this step to enter the desired value for `Minute`.
The `Fax (Do you want to setup Fax Now?)` screen appears.

To set Fax settings, select `Yes, Setup Fax` and follow the procedure below. To end the settings, select `No, I'll Do It Later` and proceed to Step 18.

14 Enter the fax number of the printer using the number pad.

15 Select `Region`.

16 Select the desired region.
The default paper size is automatically set when you select a region.

17 Select `Next`.
The `Setup Complete (Congratulation, setup is complete)` screen appears.

18 Select `Done`.

The printer automatically restarts after selecting `Done`.

Printing a Panel Settings Page

The Panel Settings page shows current settings for the operator panel menus.

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select `Report / List.`

3 Select `Panel Settings.`

4 Select `Print.`
The Panel Settings page is printed.

Power Saver Mode

The printer has an energy saving feature that reduces power consumption during periods of inactivity. This feature operates in two modes: the Low Power mode and Sleep mode. As delivered, the printer switches to the Low Power mode one minute after the last print job is printed. The printer then switches to the Sleep mode after another four minutes of inactivity. When the printer is in the Low Power mode, the LCD backlight turns off. In the Sleep mode, the ⊘ (**Wake Up**) button lights up, and the LCD backlight turns off. In the Sleep mode, the display also goes blank and displays nothing.

The factory default settings are changeable within the range of 1 to 60 minutes (Low Power Timer) and 1 to 6 minutes (Sleep Timer). The printer returns to the ready-to-print state in about 20 seconds when re-activated.

NOTE:

• The functions of Low Power Timer and Sleep Timer cannot be disabled.

See also:

■ Exiting the Power Saver Mode

The printer automatically exits the Power Saver mode when it receives a print job from a computer. To manually exit the Low Power mode, press the ⊘ (**Wake Up**) button on the operator panel. To exit the Sleep mode, press the ⊘ (**Wake Up**) button.

NOTE:

• Opening and closing a cover will cause the printer to exit the Low Power mode and the Sleep mode.

• Opening and closing the DADF cover will cause the printer to exit the Sleep mode.

• When the printer is in the Sleep mode, all buttons on the operator panel except for the ⊘ (**Wake Up**) button do not function. To use the buttons on the operator panel, press the ⊘ (**Wake Up**) button to exit the Sleep mode.

See also:

Printer Management Software

Use the CD-ROMs shipped with your printer to install a combination of software programs, depending on your operating system.

This chapter includes:

Print and Scan Drivers

To access all of your printer's features, install the print and scan drivers from the *Driver CD Kit* or *PostScript Driver Library CD*.

- The print drivers enable your computer and printer to communicate and provide access to your printer features.
- The scan drivers enable you to scan images directly to your personal computer and place scanned images directly into an application via USB or the network.

See also:
- "Installing the Scan Driver" on page 207

CentreWare Internet Services

This section provides information on CentreWare Internet Services, a hyper text transfer protocol (HTTP)-based web page service that is built into the printer.

These pages give you instant access to printer status, and printer configuration options. Anyone on your network can access the printer using their web browser software. In administrative mode you can change the configuration of the printer, set up your fax directories, and manage your printer settings without leaving your computer.

NOTE:
- Users who are not given passwords by the administrator can still view the configuration settings and options in user mode. They will not be able to save or apply any changes to the current configuration.

■ Creating an Administrative Password

1 Launch your web browser.

2 Enter the IP address in the browser's address field, and then press the **Enter** key.

3 Click the **Properties** tab.

4 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **Administrator Settings**.

5 Select **Enabled** for **Administrator Mode**.

6 In the **Administrator Login ID** field, enter a name for the administrator.

   NOTE:
   - The default ID and password are "11111" and "x-admin", respectively.

7 In the **Administrator Password** and **Re-enter Password** fields, enter a password for the administrator.

8 In the **Maximum Login Attempts** field, enter the number of login attempts allowed.

9 Click **Apply**.

   Your new password has been set and anyone with the administrator name and password can log in and change the printer configuration and settings.

SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)

You can check the printer status with SimpleMonitor. Double-click the SimpleMonitor printer icon 🖨 on the taskbar at the bottom right of the screen. The **Select Printer** window appears, which displays the printer name, printer connection ports, and printer status. Check the **Status** column to know the current status of your printer. You can also check the amount of toner remaining.

Status Settings button: Displays the **Status Settings** dialog box and allows you to modify the SimpleMonitor settings.

Click the name of the desired printer listed on the **Select Printer** window. The **Status Monitor** window appears.

The **Status Monitor** window alerts you when there is a warning or when an error occurs, for example, when a paper jam occurs or toner is running low.

By default, the **Status Monitor** window launches when printing and an error occurs. When an error occurs, the error message appears on the **Status Monitor** window. You can specify the conditions for starting the **Status Monitor** window in **Auto start setup**.

To change the pop-up settings for the **Status Monitor** window:

The following procedure uses Microsoft® Windows® 7 as an example.

1 Click **Start → All Programs → Fuji Xerox → SimpleMonitor for Asia-Pacific → Activate SimpleMonitor**.

The **Select Printer** window appears.

2 Click **Status Settings**.

The **Status Settings** dialog box appears.

3 Select the **Pop-up Settings** tab, and then select the type of the pop-up from **Auto start setup**.

SimpleMonitor can be installed from the *Driver CD Kit*. It is available only for Windows.

Address Book Editor

The Address Book Editor provides a convenient interface for modifying the printer's address book entries. With it you can create:

- Fax entries
- Email entries
- Server entries

When you start the software, if the printer is connected to your computer via USB or to a network, the Address Book Editor reads the printer's address book. You can create, edit, and delete entries. After making changes, you can then save the updated address book to the printer or to your computer.

To open the Address Book Editor:

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **DocuPrint CM405 df** → **Address Book Editor**.

The Address Book Editor can be installed from the *Driver CD Kit*. It is available for Windows and Mac OS® X.

Express Scan Manager

The Express Scan Manager handles scan jobs sent from the printer to your computer via USB. When a scan job is sent from the printer to the computer, Express Scan Manager automatically manages the scan job.

Before scanning to your computer, start Express Scan Manager and configure the scan settings. You can specify settings for output destination.

To open the Express Scan Manager:

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **DocuPrint CM405 df** → **Express Scan Manager**.

The Express Scan Manager can be installed from the *Driver CD Kit* It is available for Windows and Mac OS X.

See also:
- "Scanning" on page 205

Setup Disk Creation Tool (Windows Only)

The Setup Disk Creation Tool on the *Driver CD Kit* and the print drivers on the *Driver CD Kit* and *PostScript Driver Library CD* are used to create driver installation packages that contain custom driver settings. A driver installation package can contain a group of saved print driver settings and other data for things such as:

- Print orientation and Multiple Up (document settings)
- Watermarks
- Font references

If you want to install the print driver with the same settings on multiple computers running the same operating system, create a setup disk in a floppy disk or in a server on the network. Using the setup disk that you have created will reduce the amount of work required when installing the print driver.

- Install the print driver in the computer on which the setup disk is to be created.
- The setup disk can only be used on the operating system on which the disk was created or computers running the same operating system. Create a separate setup disk for each of the operating systems.

DocuWorks (Windows Only)

When installing DocuWorks, run the appropriate EXE file in the *DocuWorks CD*.

Windows supports DocuWorks and DocuWorks Viewer Light.

DocuWorks is available only for Windows.

NOTE:

• For more information on DocuWorks, refer to the readme file on the *DocuWorks CD*.

4

Printer Connection and Software Installation

This chapter includes:

Overview of Network Setup and Configuration

To set up and configure the network:

1 Connect the printer to the network using the recommended hardware and cables.

2 Turn on the printer and the computer.

3 Print the System Settings page and keep it for referencing network settings.

4 Install the driver software on the computer from the *Driver CD Kit* or *PostScript Driver Library CD*. For information on driver installation, see the section in this chapter for the specific operating system you are using.

5 Configure the printer's TCP/IP address, which is required to identify the printer on the network.

- Microsoft$^{®}$ Windows$^{®}$ operating systems: Run the IP address setting tool on the *Driver CD Kit* to set the printer's IP address if the printer is connected to an established TCP/IP network. You can also manually set the printer's IP address on the operator panel.
- Mac OS$^{®}$ X and Linux$^{®}$ systems: Manually set the printer's TCP/IP address on the operator panel.

See also:

-

6 Print a System Settings page to verify the new settings.

NOTE:

- If the *Driver CD Kit* or *PostScript Driver Library CD* is not available, you can download the latest driver from the Fuji Xerox Web Site: http://www.fujixeroxprinters.com/

See also:

-

Connecting Your Printer

Your printer interconnection cables must meet the following requirements:

Connection Type	Connection Specifications
USB	USB 2.0
Ethernet	10 Base-T/100 Base-TX/1000 Base-T
Wireless (optional)	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g/802.11n
Wall jack connector	RJ11
Phone connector	RJ11
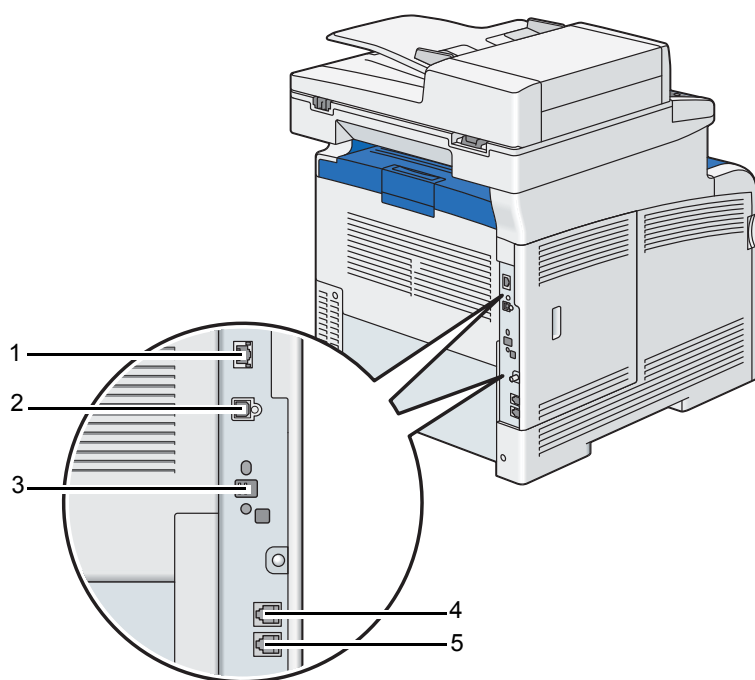
1 Ethernet port	
2 USB port	
3 Wireless adapter socket	
4 Phone connector	PHONE
5 Wall jack connector	LINE

■ Connecting Printer to Computer or Network

Connect the printer via USB, Ethernet or wireless (optional). An USB connection is a direct connection and is not used for networking. An Ethernet and wireless connections are used for networking. Hardware and cabling requirements vary for the different connection methods. Ethernet and USB cables are not included with your printer and must be purchased separately.

The available features for each connection type are shown in the following table.

Connection Type	Available Features
USB	When connected via USB you can: • Send print jobs from a computer. • Scan and print an image into an application. • Scan and print an image to a folder on the computer. • Use the Address Book Editor. • Use the SimpleMonitor to check the printer status. • Use the Express Scan Manager to handle scan jobs sent from the printer to your computer.
Ethernet	When connected via Ethernet you can: • Send print jobs from a computer on the network. • Scan and print an image into an application. • Scan and print an image to a folder on the computer on the network. • Scan to a computer on the network. • Scan to an FTP server. • Scan to email. • Use CentreWare Internet Services. • Use the Address Book Editor to manage address book entries. • Use the SimpleMonitor to check the printer status.
Wireless (optional)	When connected via wireless you can: • Send print jobs from a computer on the network. • Scan and print an image into an application. • Scan and print an image to a folder on the computer on the network. • Scan to a computer on the network. • Scan to an FTP server. • Scan to email. • Use CentreWare Internet Services. • Use the Address Book Editor to manage address book entries. • Use the SimpleMonitor to check the printer status.

USB Connection

A local printer is directly connected to your computer using the USB cable. If your printer is connected to a network instead of your computer, skip this section and go to "Wired Network Connection" on page 93.

To connect the printer to a computer:

1 Connect the smaller USB connector into the USB port on the rear of the printer, and the other end of the cable into a USB port of the computer.
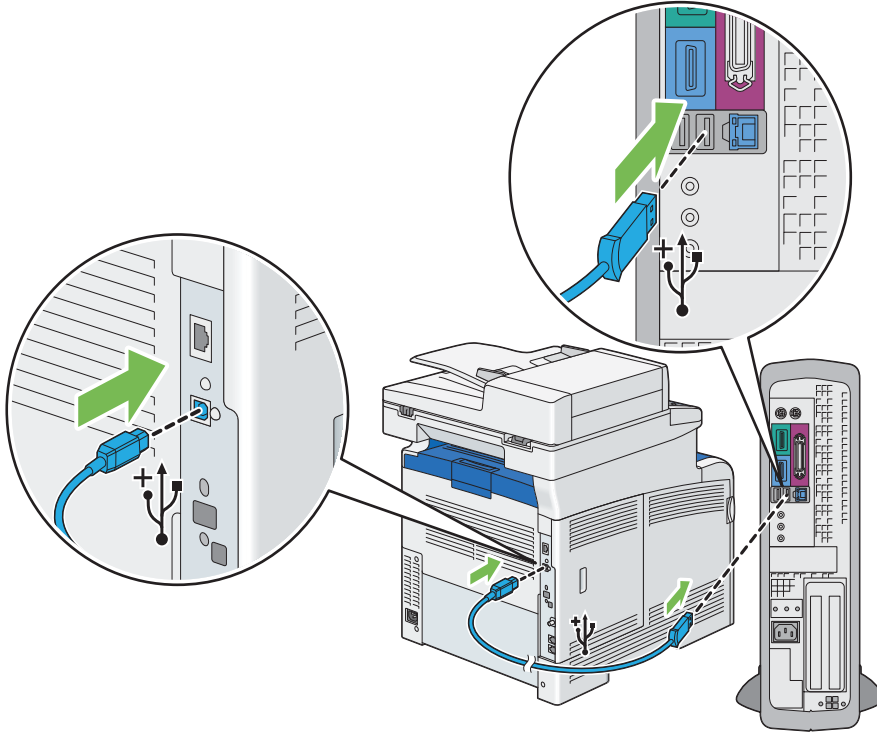
NOTE:
- Ensure that you match the USB symbol on the cable to the USB symbol on the printer.
- Do not connect the printer USB cable to the USB port available on the keyboard.

Wired Network Connection

To connect the printer to a network:

1 Connect one end of the Ethernet cable into the Ethernet port on the rear of the printer, and the other end to a LAN drop or hub.
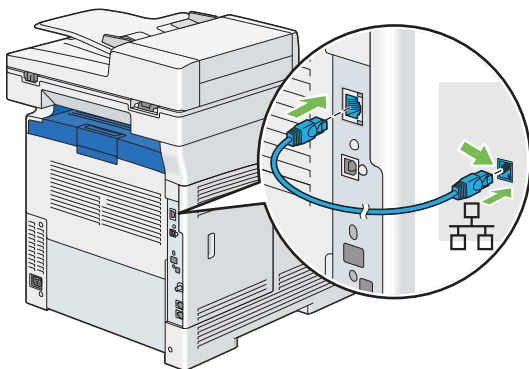
Wireless Network Connection

To set up a wireless connection, insert the optional wireless printer adapter into the wireless adapter socket on the rear of the printer. For details about wireless connection, see "Installing the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter" on page 67.

NOTE:
- To use the wireless printer adapter, be sure to disconnect the Ethernet cable.

Setting the IP Address

This section includes:

■ TCP/IP and IP Addresses

If your computer is on a large network, contact your network administrator for the appropriate TCP/IP addresses and additional system settings information.

If you are creating your own small Local Area Network or connecting the printer directly to your computer using Ethernet, follow the procedure for automatically setting the printer's IP address.

Computers and printers primarily use TCP/IP protocols to communicate over an Ethernet network. With TCP/IP protocols, each printer and computer must have a unique IP address. It is important that the addresses are similar, but not the same; only the last digit needs to be different. For example, your printer can have the address 192.168.1.2 while your computer has the address 192.168.1.3. Another device can have the address 192.168.1.4.

Many networks have a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server. A DHCP server automatically programs an IP address into every computer and printer on the network that is configured to use DHCP. A DHCP server is built into most cable and Digital Subscriber Line (DSL) routers. If you use a cable or DSL router, see your router's documentation for information on IP addressing.

■ Setting the Printer's IP Address through the Driver CD Kit

If the printer is connected to a small established TCP/IP network without a DHCP server, use the IP address setting tool on the *Driver CD Kit* to detect or assign an IP address to your printer. For further instructions, insert the *Driver CD Kit* into your computer's CD-ROM drive. After the IP address setting tool launches, click **Install Driver and Software**. Start IP address setting tool on the **Admin Tools** tab, and follow the displayed instructions.

NOTE:
- For the IP address setting tool to function, the printer must be connected to an established TCP/IP network.

■ Dynamic Methods of Setting the Printer's IP Address

There are two protocols available for dynamically setting the printer's IP address:

- DHCP (enabled by default)
- AutoIP

You can turn on/off both protocols using the operator panel or CentreWare Internet Services.

NOTE:
- You can print a report that includes the printer's IP address. On the operator panel, press the ⓘ (**System**) button, select Report / List, select System Settings, and then select Print. The IP address is listed on the System Settings page.

Using the Operator Panel

To turn on/off either the DHCP or AutoIP protocol:

1 On the operator panel, press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select Tools tab.

3 Select Admin Settings.

4 Select Network.

5 Select Ethernet.

6 Select TCP/IP.

7 Select Get IP Address.

8 Select DHCP / AutoIP, and then select OK.

Using CentreWare Internet Services

To turn on/off either the DHCP or AutoIP protocol:

1 Launch your web browser.

2 Enter the IP address in the browser's address field, and then press the **Enter** key.

3 Select **Properties**.

4 Select the **Protocol Settings** folder on the left navigation panel.

5 Select **TCP/IP**.

6 In the **Get IP Address** field, select the **DHCP / Autonet** option.

7 Click the **Apply** button.

■ Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)

NOTE:

- When you assign an IP address manually in **IPv6** mode, use the CentreWare Internet Services. To display the CentreWare Internet Services, use the link local address. To check a link local address, see "Printing and Checking the System Settings Page" on page 97.
- Assigning an IP address is considered as an advanced function and is normally done by a system administrator.
- Depending on the address class, the range of the IP address assigned may be different. On Class A, for example, an IP address in the range from `0.0.0.0` to `127.255.255.255` will be assigned. For assignment of IP addresses, contact your system administrator.

You can assign the IP address by using the operator panel.

1 Turn on the printer.

2 Ensure that `Ready` message appears on the LCD panel.

3 On the operator panel, press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

4 Select `Tools` tab.

5 Select `Admin Settings`.

6 Select `Network`.

7 Select `Ethernet`.

8 Select `TCP/IP`.

9 Select `Get IP Address`.

10 Select `Panel`, and then select `OK`.

11 Ensure that the message `This Settings Becomes Effective after Restart.` appears, and then select `Close`.

12 Select `IP Address`.

 The cursor is located at the first octet of the IP address.

13 Enter the value of the IP address using the number pad.

14 Select ▷ .

 The cursor moves to the next octet.

15 Repeat steps 13 to 14 to set all of the digits in the IP address, and then select `OK`.

16 Ensure that the message `This Settings Becomes Effective after Restart.` appears, and then select `Close`.

17 Select `Subnet Mask`.

 The cursor is located at the first octet of the subnet mask.

18 Enter the value of the subnet mask using the number pad.

19 Select ▷ .

 The cursor moves to the next octet.

20 Repeat steps 18 to 19 to set the subnet mask, and then select `OK`.

21 Ensure that the message `This Settings Becomes Effective after Restart.` appears, and then select `Close`.

22 Select `Gateway Address`.

 The cursor is located at the first octet of the gateway address.

23 Enter the value of the gateway address using the number pad.

24 Select ▷ .

The cursor moves to the next octet.

25 Repeat steps 23 to 24 to set the gateway address, and then select `OK`.

26 Ensure that the message `This Settings Becomes Effective after Restart.` appears, and then select `Close.`

27 Turn off and turn on the printer.

> **IMPORTANT:**
> • If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

See also:
• "Operator Panel" on page 46

■ Verifying the IP Settings

You can confirm the settings by printing the system settings report or using the ping command.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

1 Print the System Settings page.

2 Look under the **IPv4** heading on the System Settings page to ensure that the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address are appropriate.

To verify if the printer is active on the network, run the ping command in your computer:

1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Accessories** → **Run**.

2 Enter **cmd**, and then click **OK**.

A black window is displayed.

3 Enter **ping xx.xx.xx.xx** (where **xx.xx.xx.xx** is the IP address of your printer), and then press the **Enter** key.

Reply from the IP address denotes printer is active on the network.

See also:
•

■ Printing and Checking the System Settings Page

Print the System Settings page and check your printer's IP address by using the operator panel.

1 On the operator panel, press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select `Report / List.`

3 Select `System Settings,` and then select `Print.`

The System Settings page is printed.

4 Confirm the IP address next to **IP Address** under **Network Setup** on the System Settings page. If the IP address is **0.0.0.0**, wait for a few minutes to resolve the IP address automatically, and then print the System Settings page again.

If the IP address is not resolved automatically, see "Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)" on page 96.

Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Windows

This section includes:

NOTE:
- The fax driver is installed with the PCL 6 driver.

■ Identifying Print Driver Pre-install Status (For Network Connection Setup)

Before installing the print driver on your computer, print the System Settings page to check the IP address of your printer.

This section includes:

The Operator Panel

1 Press the 🔳 (**System**) button.

2 Select `Report / List.`

3 Select `System Settings,` and then select `Print.`

The System Settings page is printed.

4 Find the IP address next to **IP Address** under **Network Setup** on the System Settings page.

If the IP address is **0.0.0.0**, wait for a few minutes to resolve the IP address automatically, and then print the System Settings page again.

If the IP address is not resolved automatically, see "Assigning an IP Address (for IPv4 Mode)" on page 96.

Changing the Firewall Settings Before Installing Your Printer

If you are running one of the following operating systems, you must change the firewall settings before installing the Fuji Xerox printer software:

- Windows 7
- Windows Vista®
- Windows Server® 2008 R2
- Windows Server 2008
- Windows XP

NOTE:

- For Windows XP, Service Pack 2 or 3 must be installed.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

1 Insert the *Driver CD Kit* into your computer.

2 Click **Start → Control Panel**.

3 Click **System and Security**.

4 Click **Windows Firewall**.

5 Click **Allow a program or feature through Windows Firewall**.

6 Click **Change settings**.

7 Click **Allow another program**.

8 Click **Browse**.

9 Click **D:\setup.exe** (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive) in the **File name** text box, and then click **Open**.

10 Click **Add**.

11 Click **OK**.

■ Inserting the CD-ROM

• For Installing PCL 6 and Fax Driver

1 Insert the *Driver CD Kit* into your computer to start Easy Install Navi.

> **NOTE:**
> • If the CD does not automatically launch, click **Start** (**start** for Windows XP) → **All Programs** (for Windows Vista and Windows 7) → **Accessories** (for Windows Vista and Windows 7) → **Run**, and then enter **D:\setup.exe** (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive), and then click **OK**.

• For Installing PS Driver

1 Insert the *PostScript Driver Library CD* into your computer.

• For Installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) Print Driver

1 Extract the following zip file to your desired location.
D:\Eng\XPS (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)

■ USB Connection Setup

NOTE:
A personal printer is a printer attached to your computer or a print server using a USB. If your printer is attached to a network and not your computer, see "Network Connection Setup" on page 103.

• For Installing PCL 6 and Fax Driver

1 On the top screen of Easy Install Navi, click **Installing Driver and Software**.

2 Click **Print/Fax Driver**.

3 Click **Connect via USB**.

4 Follow the procedures described in the Help to install the print driver.

• For Installing PS Driver

For information on how to install the PS driver, refer to the PostScript User Guide.

• For Installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) Print Driver

Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.

2 Click **Add a printer**.

3 Click **Add a local printer**.

4 Select the port connected to your printer, and then click **Next**.

5 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

6 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "For Installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) Print Driver" on page 100.

7 Click **Open**.

8 Click **OK**.

9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box.

   To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box displayed under the **Printer name**.

11 Click **Next**.

   Installation starts.

   If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

   NOTE:
   - If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

12 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

13 Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

NOTE:
- You must log in as an administrator.

1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.

2 Click **Add a printer**.

3 Click **Add a local printer**.

4 Select the port connected to your printer, and then click **Next**.

5 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

6 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "For Installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) Print Driver" on page 100.

7 Click **Open**.

8 Click **OK**.

9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box.

To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.

11 Click **Next**.

Installation starts.

12 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**.

If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.

13 Click **Next**.

14 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

15 Click **Finish**.

Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2008 R2

1 Click **Start → Devices and Printers**.

2 Click **Add a printer**.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.

> **NOTE:**
> - If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

3 Click **Add a local printer**.

4 Select the port connected to your printer, and then click **Next**.

5 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

6 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "For Installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) Print Driver" on page 100.

7 Click **Open**.

8 Click **OK**.

9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.

Installation starts.

11 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**.

If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.

12 Click **Next**.

13 To use this printer as the default printer, select the Set as the default printer check box.

14 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

15 Click **Finish**.

■ Network Connection Setup

NOTE:

- To use this printer in a Linux environment, you need to install a Linux driver. For more information on how to install and use these, see also "Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Linux (CUPS)" on page 118.

Network Printer Setup on a Local Network

• For installing PCL 6 and Fax Driver

1 On the top screen of Easy Install Navi, click **Installing Driver and Software**.

2 Click **Print/Fax Driver**.

3 Select **Standard** or **Custom** setup.

4 Follow the on-screen instructions to install the print driver.

• For Installing PS Driver

For information on how to install the PS driver, refer to the PostScript User Guide.

• For Installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) Print Driver

NOTE:

- XML Paper Specification (XPS) driver is supported on the following operating systems: Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, and Windows 7 64-bit Edition.

Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1   Click **Start → Control Panel → Hardware and Sound → Printers**.

2   Click **Add a printer**.

3   Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

4   Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

    When you select your printer, go to step 7.

    When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 5.

5   Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.

6   Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.

    If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

    NOTE:

    - If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

7   Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

8   Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "For Installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) Print Driver" on page 100.

9   Click **Open**.

10   Click **OK**.

11   Select your printer name and click **Next**.

12   To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box.

    To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.

    Installation starts.

13   Click **Next**.

14   As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

15   Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

NOTE:

- You must log in as an administrator.

1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.

2 Click **Add a printer**.

3 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

4 Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

When you select your printer, go to step 7.

When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 5.

5 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.

6 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

NOTE:

- If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

7 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

8 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "For Installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) Print Driver" on page 100.

9 Click **Open**.

10 Click **OK**.

11 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box.

To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.

13 Click **Next**.

Installation starts.

14 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.

15 Click **Next**.

16 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

17 Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 R2

1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.

2 Click **Add a printer**.

3 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

4 Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

NOTE:
- When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed, Find a printer by name or TCP/IP address** screen appears. Find your printer on the screen.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

NOTE:
- If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

5 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

6 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "For Installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) Print Driver" on page 100.

7 Click **Open**.

8 Click **OK**.

9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.
Installation starts.

11 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.

12 Click **Next**.

13 To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.

14 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

15 Click **Finish**.

Windows 7 and Windows 7 64-bit Edition

1 Click **Start → Devices and Printers**.

2 Click **Add a printer**.

3 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

4 Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

When you select your printer, go to step 7.

When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 5.

5 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.

6 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.

> **NOTE:**
> • If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

7 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.

8 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted setup information (.inf) file in "For Installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) Print Driver" on page 100.

9 Click **Open**.

10 Click **OK**.

11 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

12 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.

Installation starts.

13 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.

14 Click **Next**.

15 To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box, and then click **Next**.

16 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.

17 Click **Finish**.

Use CentreWare Internet Services to monitor the status of your network printer without leaving your desk. You can view and/or change the printer settings, monitor toner level, and acknowledge the timing of ordering replacement consumables. You can click our web site link for ordering supplies.

NOTE:
• CentreWare Internet Services is not available when the printer is directly connected to a computer or a print server.

To launch CentreWare Internet Services, type the printer's IP address in your web browser. The printer configuration appears on the screen.

■ Setting Up for Shared Printing

You can share your new printer on the network using the *Driver CD Kit* that comes with your printer, or using Microsoft peer-to-peer method. However, if you use the Microsoft method, some features, such as the SimpleMonitor and other printer utilities, installed with the *Driver CD Kit*, may not be available.

If you want to use the printer on a network, share the printer and install its drivers on all the computers on the network.

• For Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2003 64-bit Edition

1 Click **Start** (**start** for Windows XP) → **Printers and Faxes**.

2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Properties**.

3 On the **Sharing** tab, select the **Share this printer** radio button, and then enter a name in **Share name** text box.

4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.

5 Click **OK**.
   If you are missing files, you are prompted to insert the server operating system CD.

6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

• For Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.

2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.

3 Click **Change sharing options**.
   The message **Windows needs your permission to continue** appears.

4 Click **Continue**.

5 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in **Share name**.

6 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.

7 Click **OK**.

8 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

• For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Printers**.

2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.

3 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in **Share name**.

4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.

5 Click **OK**.

6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

- **For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2008 R2**

1   Click **Start → Devices and Printers**.

2   Right-click the printer icon and select **Printer properties**.

3   On the **Sharing** tab, select the **Share this printer** check box, and then enter a name in **Share name** text box.

4   Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients that print to the printer.

5   Click **OK**.

6   Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

To confirm that the printer is properly shared:

- Ensure that the printer object in the **Printers**, **Printers and Faxes** or **Devices and Printers** folder is shared. The shared icon is shown under the printer icon.
- Browse **Network** or **My Network Places**. Find the host name of the server and the shared name you assigned to the printer.

Now that the printer is shared, you can install the printer on network clients using the peer-to-peer method.

■ Point and Print

Point and Print is a Microsoft Windows technology that allows you to connect to a remote printer. This feature automatically downloads and installs the print driver.

• For Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2003 64-bit Edition

1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, double-click **My Network Places**.

2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.

3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
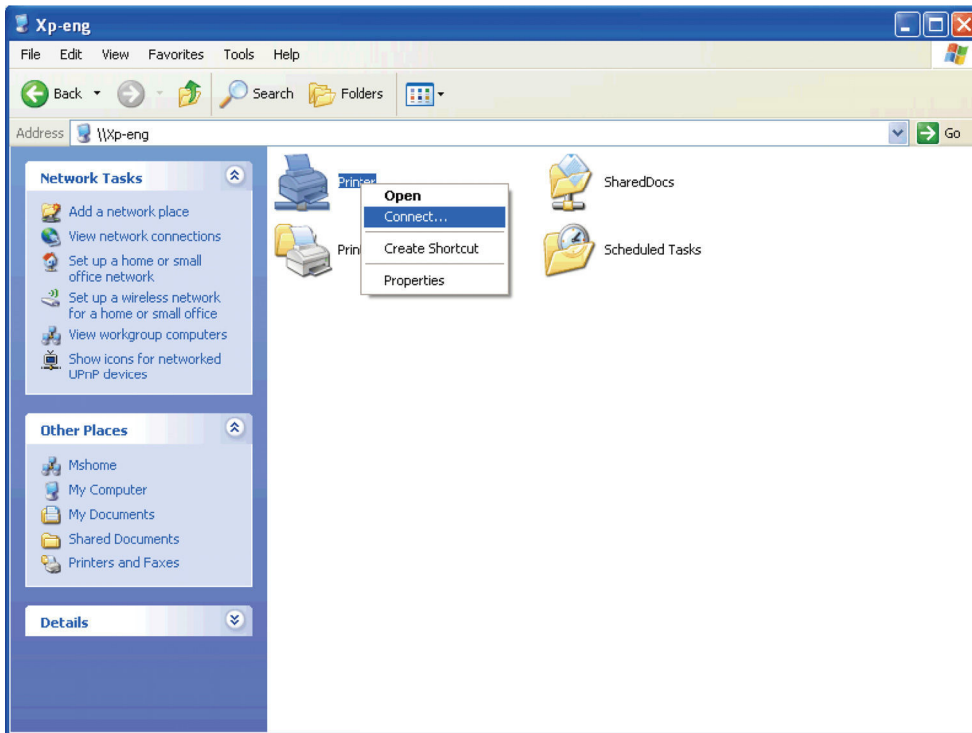
Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Printers and Faxes** folder. The copy time varies, based on network traffic and other factors.

4 Close **My Network Places**.

5 Print a test page to verify installation.

    a Click **start** (**Start** for Windows Server 2003 and Windows Server 2003 64-bit Edition) → **Printers and Faxes**.

    b Select the printer you just created.

    c Click **File** → **Properties**.

    d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

      When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

• For Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, click **Start → Network**.

2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.

3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.

4 Click **Install driver**.

5 Click **Continue** in the **User Account Control** dialog box.

6 Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Printers** folder. The time this takes varies, based on network traffic and other factors.

7 Print a test page to verify installation.
    a Click **Start → Control Panel → Hardware and Sound**.
    b Select **Printers**.
    c Right-click the printer you just created and click **Properties**.
    d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.
       When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

• For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, click **Start → Network**.

2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.

3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.

4 Click **Install driver**.

5 Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Printers** folder. The time this takes varies, based on network traffic and other factors.

6 Print a test page to verify installation.
    a Click **Start → Control Panel**.
    b Select **Printers**.
    c Right-click the printer you just created and select **Properties**.
    d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.
       When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

• **For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2008 R2**

1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, click **Start** → your user name → **Network** (**Start** → **Network** for Windows Server 2008 R2).

2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.

3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
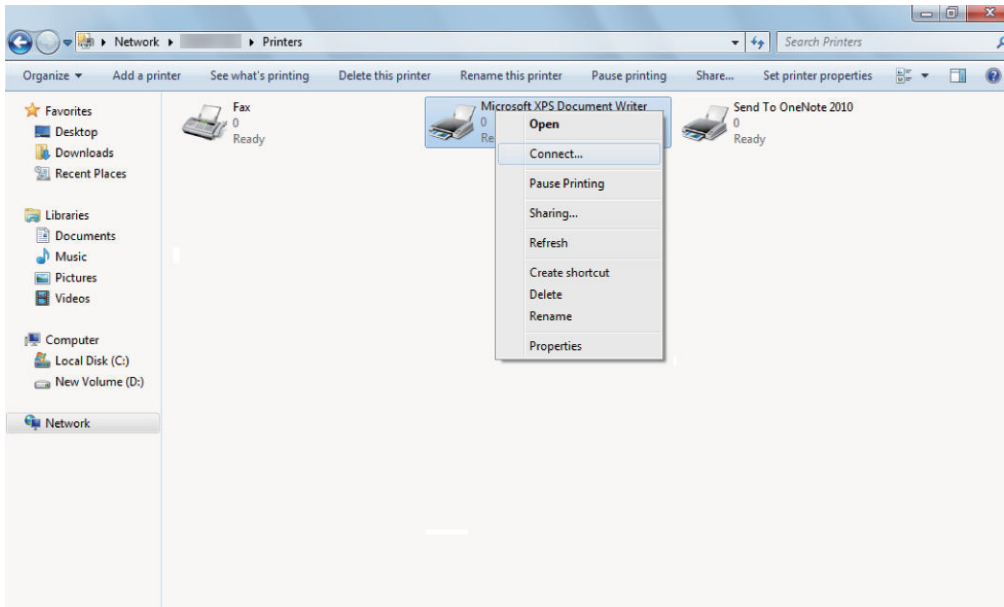
4 Click **Install driver**.

5 Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Devices and Printers** folder. The time this takes varies, based on network traffic and other factors.

6 Print a test page to verify installation.

   a Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.

   b Right-click the printer you just created and select **Printer properties**.

   c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

     When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

■ Peer-to-Peer

If you use the peer-to-peer method, the print driver is fully installed on each client computer. Network clients retain control of driver modifications. The client computer handles the print job processing.

• For Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2003 64-bit Edition

1 Click **start** (**Start** for Windows Server 2003 / Windows Server 2003 64-bit Edition) → **Printers and Faxes**.

2 Click **Add a printer** (**Add Printer** for Windows Server 2003 / Windows Server 2003 64-bit Edition) to launch the **Add Printer Wizard**.

3 Click **Next**.

4 Select **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer**, and then click **Next**.

If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**.

If the printer is not listed, click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

   a Click **Connect to this printer (or to browse for a printer, select this option and click Next)**.

   b Enter the path of the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.
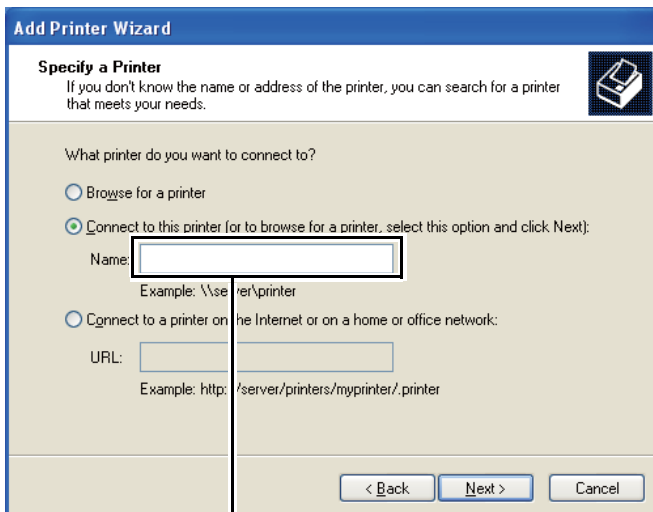
For example:\\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

    The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network.

    The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

5 Click **Browse for a printer**, and then click **Next**.

6 Select the printer, and then click **Next**.

If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver.

If no system driver is available, you need to specify the path to available drivers.

7 Specify the following settings if you want, and then click **Next**.

- Click **Yes** to set this printer as the default printer.
- Click **Yes** to print a test page for verifying installation.

8 Click **Finish**.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

• For Windows Vista and Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

1   Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.

2   Click **Add a Printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.

3   Select **Add a network**, **wireless or Bluetooth printer**, and then click **Next**.

   If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**.

   If the printer is not listed, click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

   a   Click **Select a shared printer by name**.

   b   Enter the path of the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.

   For example:\\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

   The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network.

   The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

   If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, you need to specify the path to available drivers.

4   Specify the following settings if you want, and then click **Next**.

   • Click **Yes** to set this printer as the default printer.

   • Click **Print a test page** to print a test page for verifying installation.

5   Click **Finish**.

   When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

• For Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Printers**.

2 Click **Add a Printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.

3 Select **Add a network**, **wireless or Bluetooth printer**, and then click **Next**.

If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**.

If the printer is not listed, click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

   a Click **Select a shared printer by name**.

   b Enter the path of the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.

For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

   The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

   If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, you will need to provide a path to available drivers.

4 Specify the following settings if you want, and then click **Next**.

   • Click **Yes** to set this printer as the default printer.

   • Click **Print a test page** to print a test page for verifying installation.

5 Click **Finish**.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

- **For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, and Windows Server 2008 R2**

1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.

2 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.

3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**.

If the printer is not listed, click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

   a Click **Select a shared printer by name**.

   b Enter the path of the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.
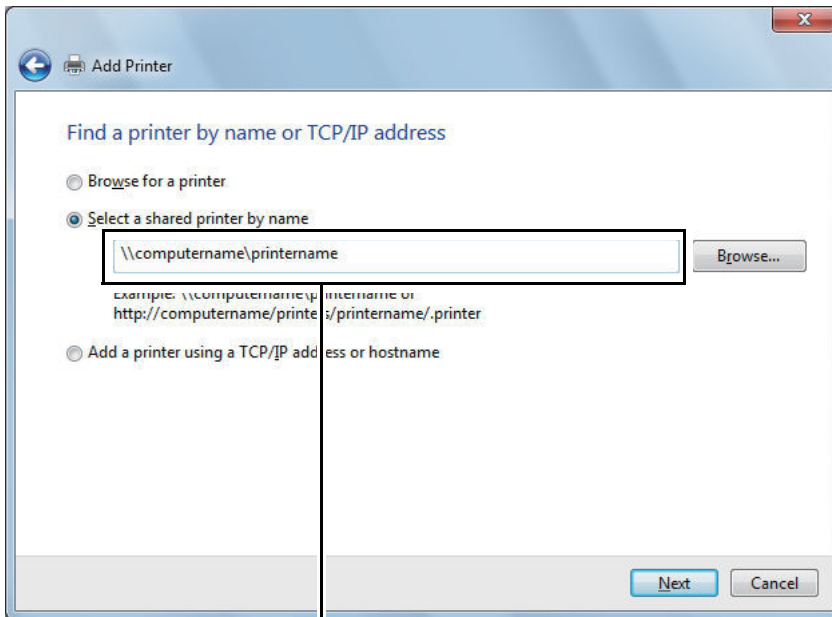
For example:\\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

   The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it to the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

   If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a print driver. If no system driver is available, you will need to provide the path to the available driver.

4 Confirm the printer name, and then click **Next**.

5 Specify the following settings if you want, and then click **Finish**.

   • Click **Set as the default printer** to set this printer as the default printer.

   • Click **Print a test page** to print a test page for verifying installation.

When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Mac OS X

For information on how to install the print driver, refer to the PostScript User Guide.

Installing Print Driver on Computers Running Linux (CUPS)

This section provides information for installing or setting up the print driver with CUPS (Common UNIX Printing System) on Red Hat® Enterprise Linux® 5/6 Desktop (x86) or SUSE® Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86).

NOTE:

• When using a CD drive in a Linux environment, you need to mount the CD according to your system environment. The command strings are mount/media/CD-ROM.

This section includes:

■ Installing the Print Driver

This section includes:

NOTE:

• The print driver **Fuji_Xerox-DocuPrint_CM405-x.x-x.noarch.rpm** is included in the **linux** folder in the **Eng** folder on the *Driver CD Kit*.

• For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5/6 Desktop (x86)

The following procedure uses Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Desktop (x86) as an example:

1 Copy the .rpm file in the following path to your desired location.

D:\Eng\linux (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)

2 Double-click the .rpm file.

3 Click **Install**.

4 Enter the administrator password, and click **Authenticate**.

Installation starts. When the installation is complete, the window is automatically closed.

• For SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86)

The following procedure uses SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 (x86) as an example:

1 Copy the .rpm file in the following path to your desired location.

D:\Eng\linux (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive)

2 Double-click the .rpm file.

3 Click **Install**.

4 Enter the administrator password, and click **Authenticate**.

Installation starts. When the installation is complete, the window is automatically closed.

■ Setting Up the Queue

To execute printing, you must set up the print queue on your workstation.

NOTE:

• When you have finished setting up the queue, you can print jobs from the applications. Start the print job from the application, and specify the queue in the print dialog box.
However, you may be able to print only from the default queue depending on the application. In these cases, before you start printing, set queue you want to print to as the default queue. For information on specifying the default queue, see also "Setting the Default Queue" on page 120.

• For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5/6 Desktop (x86)

The following procedure uses Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Desktop (x86) as an example:

1 Open the URL "**http://localhost:631**" using a web browser.

2 Click **Administration**.

3 Click **Add Printer.**

4 Enter **root** as the user name, and then enter the administrator password.

5 Click **OK**.

6 Select either of the following according to the type of your printer connection.

For network connections:

a Select **LPD/LPR Host or Printer** from the **Other Network Printers** menu, and then click **Continue**.

b Enter the IP address of the printer in **Connection.**

Format: **lpd://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx** (the IP address of the printer)

c Click **Continue**.

d Enter the name of the printer in **Name** in the **Add Printer** window, and then click **Continue**.

You can optionally specify the location and description of the printer for further information.

If you want to share the printer, select the **Share This Printer** check box.

For USB connections:

a Select **FUJI XEROX DocuPrint XXX** from the **Local Printers** menu, and then click **Continue**.

b Enter the name of the printer in **Name** in the **Add Printer** window, and then click **Continue**.

You can optionally specify the location and description of the printer for further information.

If you want to share the printer, select the **Share This Printer** check box.

7 Select **FX** from the **Make** menu, and then click **Continue**.

8 Select **FX DocuPrint XXX** from the **Model** menu, and then click **Add Printer**.

The setup is complete.

You can optionally specify the default options settings of the printer.

• For SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86)

The following procedure uses SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 (x86) as an example:

1 Select **Computer** → **More Applications...**, and select **YaST** on **Application Browser**.

2 **Enter the administrator password.**
   YaST Control Center is activated.

3 Select **Hardware** on **YaST Control Center**, and select **Printer**.
   The **Printer Configurations** dialog box opens.

   For network connections:

   a Click **Add**.
      The **Add New Printer Configuration** dialog box opens.

   b Click **Connection Wizard**.
      The **Connection Wizard** dialog box opens.

   c Select **Line Printer Daemon (LPD) Protocol** from **Access Network Printer or Printserver Box via**.

   d Enter the IP address of the printer in **IP Address or Host Name:**.

   e Select **Fuji Xerox** in **Select the printer manufacturer:**.

   f Click **OK**.
      The **Add New Printer Configuration** dialog box appears.

   g Select **DocuPrint XXX vx.x [FujiXerox/Fuji_Xerox_DocuPrint_XXX.ppd.gz]** from the **Assign Driver** list.

   NOTE:
   • You can specify the printer name in **Set Name:**.

   For USB connections:

   a Click **Add**.
      The **Add New Printer Configuration** dialog box opens.

      The printer name is displayed in the **Determine Connection** list.

   b Select **DocuPrint XXX vx.x. [FujiXerox/Fuji_Xerox_DocuPrint.ppd.gz]** from the **Assign Driver** list.

   NOTE:
   • You can specify the printer name in **Set Name:**.

4 Confirm the settings, and then click **OK**.

■ Setting the Default Queue

• For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5/6 Desktop (x86)

The following procedure uses Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Desktop (x86) as an example:

1 Select **Applications** → **System Tools** → **Terminal**.

2 Enter the following command in the terminal window.

```
su
(Enter the administrator password)
lpadmin -d (Enter the queue name)
```

• For SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86)

The following procedure uses SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 (x86) as an example:

1 Select **Computer** → **More Applications...**, and select **YaST** on **Application Browser**.

2 **Enter the administrator password.**
YaST Control Center is activated.

3 Select **Hardware** on **YaST Control Center**, and select **Printer**.
The **Printer Configurations** dialog box opens.

4 Click **Edit**.
A dialog box to modify the specified queue opens.

5 Confirm that the printer you want to set is selected in the **Connection** list.

6 Select the **Default Printer** check box.

7 Confirm the settings, and click **OK**.

■ Specifying the Printing Options

You can specify the printing options such as the color mode or 2-sided printing.

• For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5/6 Desktop (x86)

The following procedure uses Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Desktop (x86) as an example:

1 Open the URL "**http://localhost:631**" using a web browser.

2 Click **Administration**.

3 Click **Manage Printers**.

4 Click the queue name for which you want to specify the printing options.

5 Enter **root** as the user name, and enter the administrator password.

6 Click the **Administration** drop-down list box, and then select **Modify Printer**.

7 Specify the required settings, and click **Continue** or **Modify Printer**.
The message **Printer xxx has been modified successfully.** appears.
The setting is complete.

• For SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86)

The following procedure uses SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 (x86) as an example:

1 Open a web browser.

2 Enter **http://localhost:631/admin** in the address bar, and press the **Enter** key.

3 Enter **root** as the user name, and enter the administrator password.

The **CUPS** window appears.

> **NOTE:**
> • Set the password for authority as the printer administrator before setting the printer queue. If you have not set it, go to "Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator" on page 122.

4 Click **Manage Printers**.

5 Click **Modify Printer** on the printer.

6 Specify the required settings, and click **Continue**.

7 Enter **root** as the user name, enter administrator password and click **OK**.

The message **Printer xxx has been modified successfully.** appears.

The setting is complete. Execute printing from the application.

■ Setting the Password for Authority as the Printer Administrator

For SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10 and 11, you must set the password for authority as the printer administrator to do operations as the printer administrator.

• For SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86)

The following procedure uses SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 (x86) as an example:

1 Select **Computer** → **More Applications...** and select **GNOME Terminal** on **Application Browser**.

2 Enter the following command in the terminal window.

```
su

(Enter the administrator password)

lppasswd -g sys -a root

(Enter the password for authority as the printer
administrator after the Enter password prompt.)

(Reenter the password for authority as the printer
administrator after the Enter password again prompt.)
```

■ Uninstalling the Print Driver

• For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5/6 Desktop (x86)

The following procedure uses Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Desktop (x86) as an example:

1 Select **Applications** → **System Tools** → **Terminal**.

2 Enter the following command in the terminal window to delete the print queue.

```
su

(Enter the administrator password)

/usr/sbin/lpadmin -x (Enter the print queue name)
```

3 Repeat the command above for all queues for the same model.

4 Enter the following command in the terminal window.

```
rpm -e Fuji_Xerox-DocuPrint_CM405-x.x-x.noarch
```

The print driver is uninstalled.

• For SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10/11 (x86)

The following procedure uses SUSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 11 (x86) as an example:

1 Select **Computer** → **More Applications...** and select **GNOME Terminal** on **Application Browser**.

2 Enter the following command in the terminal window to delete the print queue.

```
su

(Enter the administrator password)

/usr/sbin/lpadmin -x (Enter the print queue name)
```

3 Repeat the command above for all queues for the same model.

4 Enter the following command in the terminal window.

```
rpm -e Fuji_Xerox-DocuPrint_CM405-x.x-x
```

The print driver is uninstalled.

Configuring Wireless Settings (Windows & Mac OS X)

This section includes:

Determining the Wireless Network Settings

You need to know the settings for the wireless network to set up the wireless printer. For details of the settings, contact your network administrator.

Wireless Settings	SSID	Specifies the name that identifies the wireless network with up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
	Network Mode	Specifies the network mode from Ad-hoc or Infrastructure.
Security Settings	Security	Selects the encryption method from No Security, Mixed mode PSK*, WPA-PSK-TKIP, WPA2-PSK-AES, and WEP.
	Transmit Key	Specifies the transmit WEP key from the list.
	WEP Key	Specifies the WEP key used through the wireless network only when WEP is selected as the encryption method.
	Pass Phrase	Specifies the pass phrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63 bytes long only when Mixed mode PSK*, WPA-PSK-TKIP, or WPA2-PSK-AES is selected as the encryption method.

* Mixed mode PSK automatically selects an available encryption method from WPA-PSK-TKIP, WPA-PSK-AES, or WPA2-PSK-AES.

Configuring the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter

This section describes how to configure a wireless printer adapter through Easy Install Navi, operator panel and CentreWare Internet Services.

You can select a method to configure a wireless printer adapter from the following:

Wizard Setup through (Windows only)	USB Cable (recommended)
	WPS-PBC*1
	WPS-PIN*2*3
	Operator Panel*3
	Ethernet Cable
	CentreWare Internet Services
Non-Wizard Setup through	WPS-PBC*3
	WPS-PIN*2*3
	Operator Panel
	CentreWare Internet Services

*1 WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi® Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by pressing the button provided on the access point via wireless routers, and then performing WPS-PBC setting on the operator panel. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS.

*2 WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by entering PIN assignments in the printer and computer. This setting, performed through access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router supports WPS.

*3 WPS 2.0 compliant. WPS 2.0 works on access points with the following encryption types: Mixed mode PSK, WPA-PSK AES, WPA2-PSK-AES, WPA-PSK-TKIP, Open (No Security).

IMPORTANT:
- Ensure that the Ethernet cable has been disconnected from the printer before you configure the wireless settings other than through Ethernet cable and CentreWare Internet Services.

NOTE:
- Before you configure the wireless settings on the operator panel, you need to set up the wireless network settings on your computer. For details, refer to the manuals provided with the wireless LAN access point or if your computer provides a wireless adapter tool, configure the wireless settings using that tool.
- If the `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`, you need to enter the four digit passcode to enter the `Admin Settings` menu.

• Using Wizard Setup to Configure a Wireless Printer Adapter (Windows Only)

You can configure the wireless adapter with the following connection methods:
- USB cable
- WPS-PBC
- WPS-PIN
- Operator Panel
- Ethernet Cable
- CentreWare Internet Services

The following procedure uses USB cable for connection method as an example.

1 Insert the *Driver CD Kit* provided with the printer in your computer. Easy Install Navi launches automatically.

2 Click **Optional Accessories Setup**.
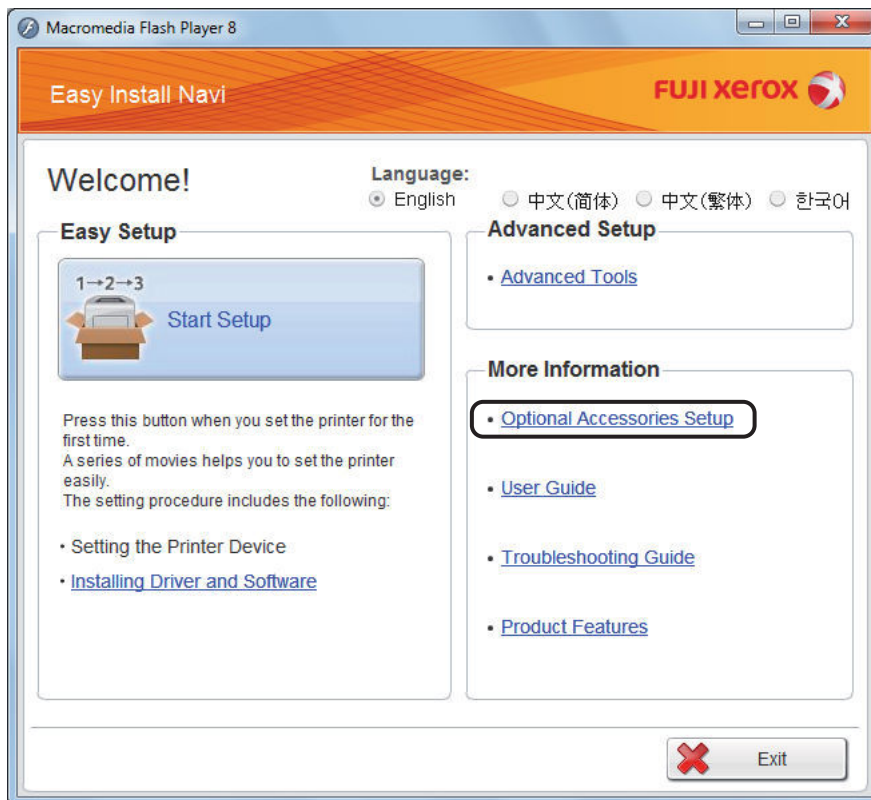
3 Click **Wireless Network Kit b/g/n**.
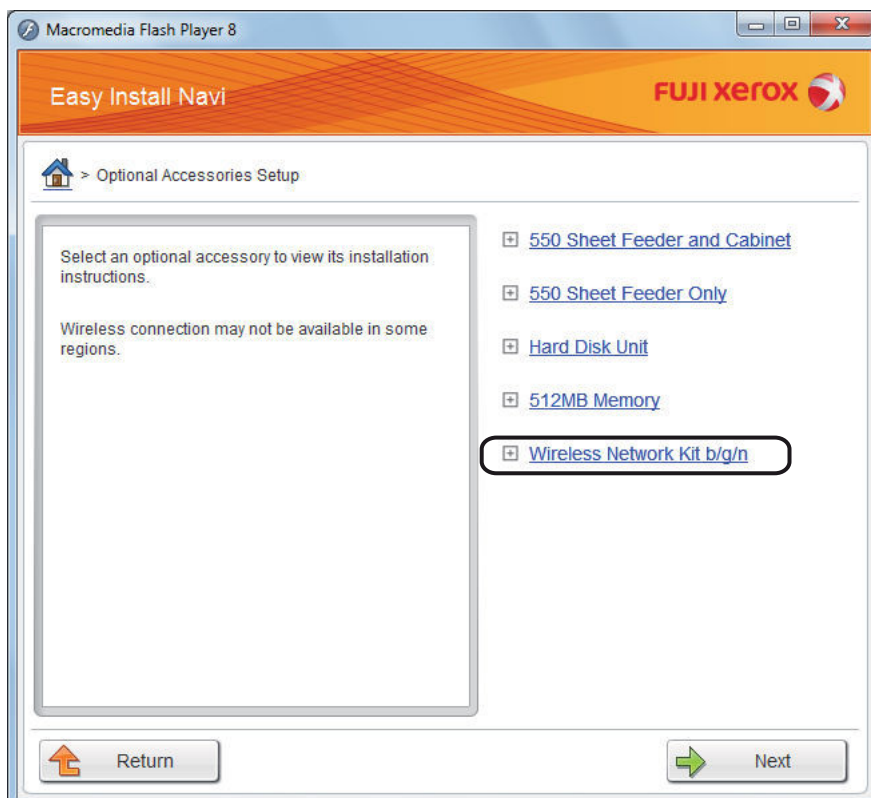
4 Click **Start wireless settings**.
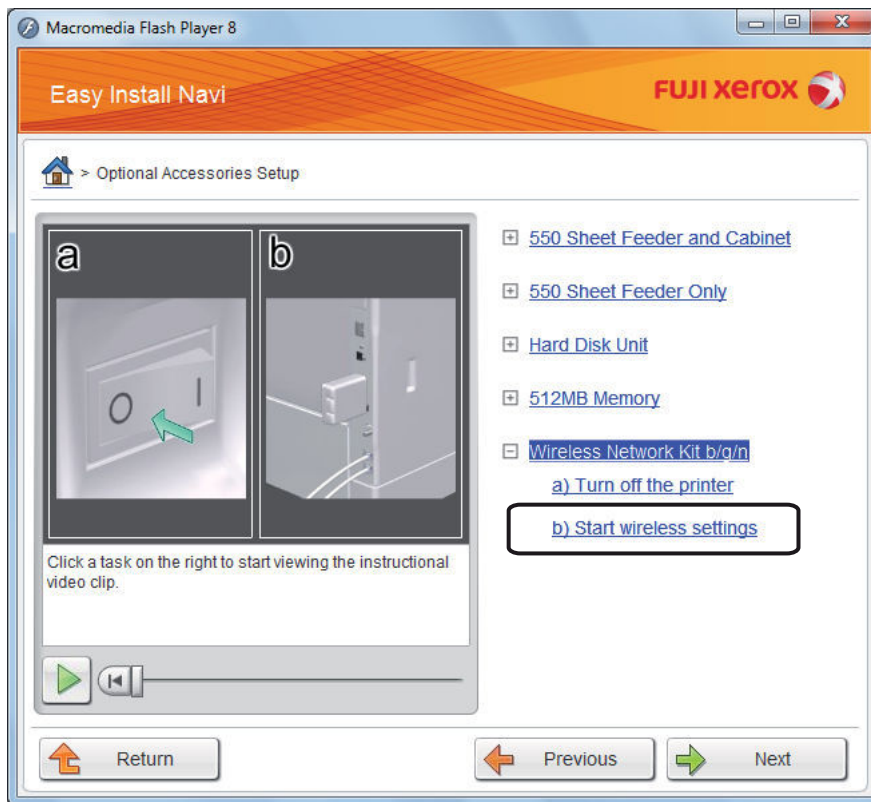
5 Click **Wireless Configuration**.
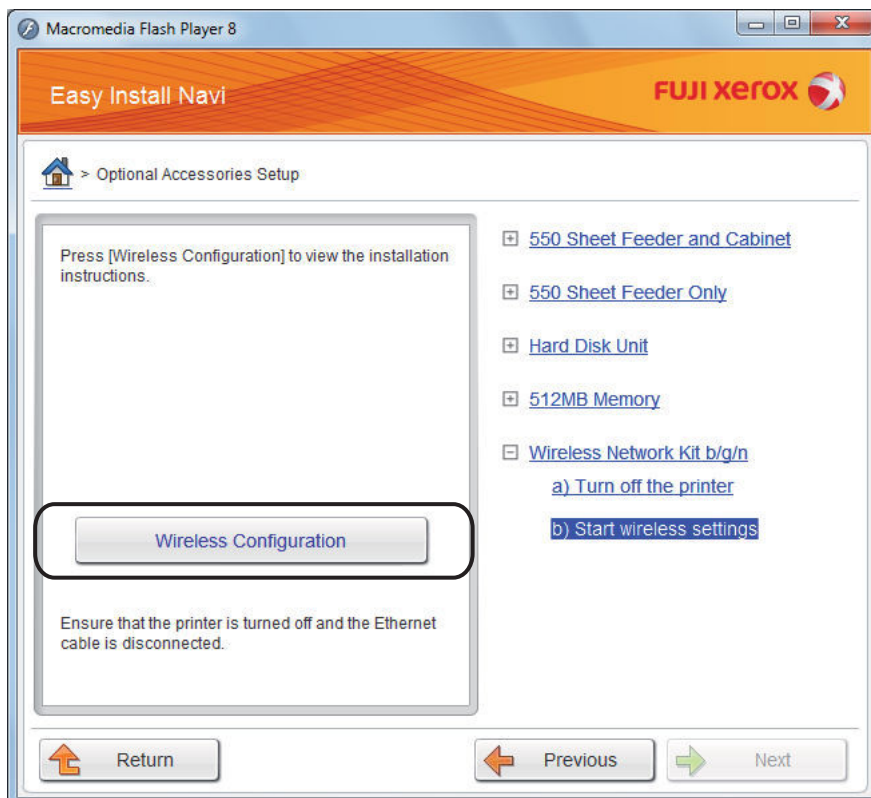
6 Select **Wizard**, and then click **Next**.
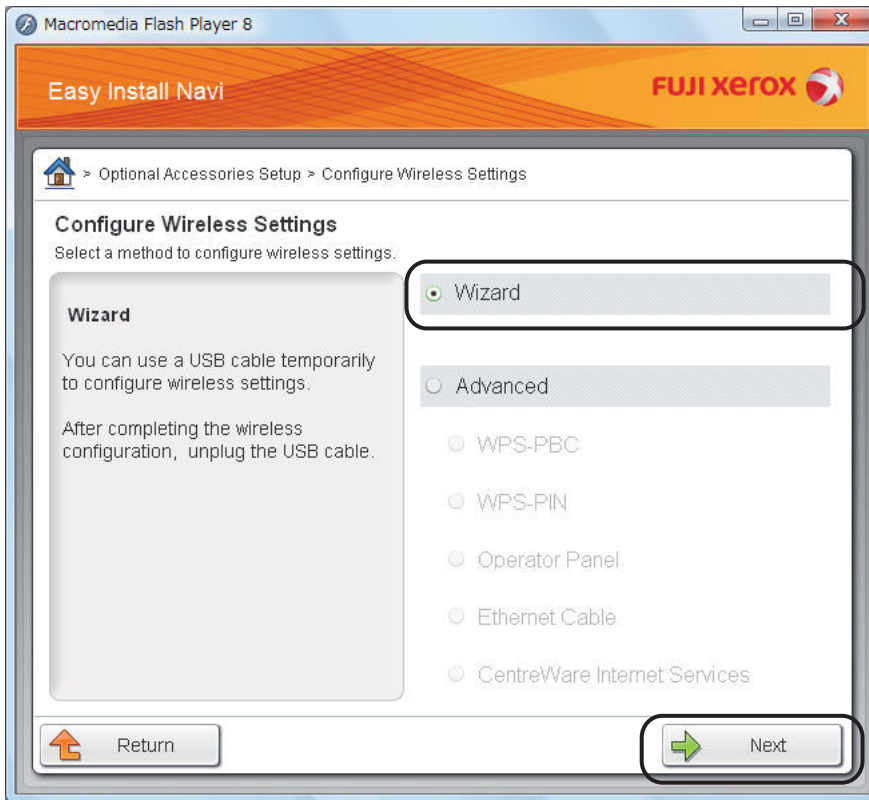
7 Click **Connect the wireless printer adapter**.
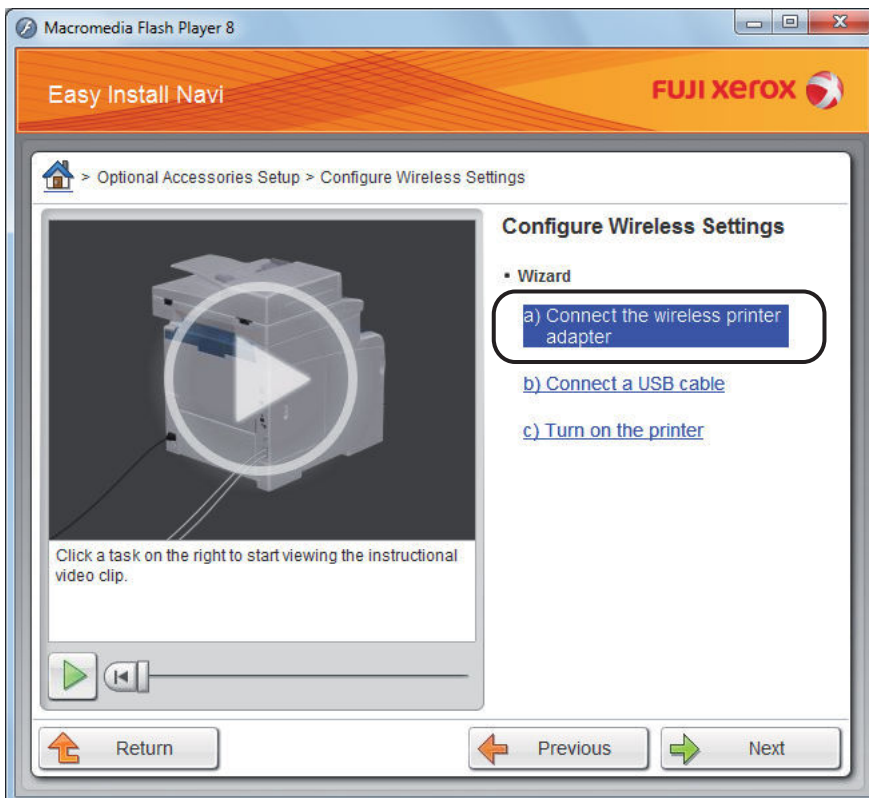
The instruction video starts.

Follow the on-screen instructions to configure wireless settings.

• Using Non-Wizard Setup to Configure a Wireless Printer Adapter

For Mac OS X, you can configure a wireless settings only through non-wizard setup.

NOTE:
- The optional wireless printer adapter must be installed on the printer. For details about installing a wireless printer adapter, see "Installing the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter" on page 67.

You can configure the wireless printer adapter with the following connection methods:

- WPS-PBC
- WPS-PIN
- Operator Panel
- CentreWare Internet Services

WPS-PBC

You can start Push Button Control only from the operator panel.

NOTE:
- WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration by pressing the button provided on the access point via wireless routers, and then performing WPS-PBC setting on the operator panel. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS.

1 Press the 🔢 (**System**) button.

2 Select `Tools` tab.

3 Select `Admin Settings`.

4 Select `Network`.

5 Select `Wireless`.

6 Select `WPS Setup`.

7 Select `Push Button Control`.

8 Select `Start Configuration`.

9 Ensure that the message `Setting WPS` is displayed, and start pressing the button on the wireless LAN access point, within two minutes of the step 8 operation.

> **NOTE:**
> - For details about WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point, refer to the manual supplied with the wireless LAN access point.
>
> When the WPS operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless settings are correctly configured.

WPS-PIN

The PIN code of WPS-PIN can only be configured from the operator panel.

NOTE:

- WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration by entering PIN assignments to a printer and computer. This setting, performed through an access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router supports WPS.
- Before WPS-PIN starts, you will need to enter your PIN code at the web page of the wireless LAN access point. For details, refer to the manuals provided with the wireless LAN access point.

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select `Tools` tab.

3 Select `Admin Settings`.

4 Select `Network`.

5 Select `Wireless`.

6 Select `WPS Setup`.

7 Select `PIN Code`.

8 Write down the displayed 8-digit PIN code or select `Print PIN Code`. The PIN code is printed.

9 Select `Start Configuration`.

10 Ensure that the message `Setting WPS` is displayed, and enter the PIN code displayed on step 8 into the web page of the wireless LAN access point.

> **NOTE:**
>
> - For details about WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point, refer to the manual supplied with the wireless LAN access point.
>
> When the WPS operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless settings are correctly configured.

Operator Panel

Auto SSID Setup

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select `Tools` tab.

3 Select `Admin Settings`.

4 Select `Network`.

5 Select `Wireless`.

6 Select `Wireless Setup Wizard`.

The printer automatically searches the access points on wireless network.

7 Select the desired access point.

If the desired access point does not appear, see "Manual SSID Setup" on page 132.

NOTE:
- Some hidden SSID may not be displayed. If the SSID is not detected turn on SSID broadcast from the router.

8 Select `Next`.

9 Enter the WEP key or pass phrase.

When the encryption method of the selected access point is WEP in step 7:

a Select the `Enter Key` text box, and then enter the WEP key.

b Select `OK`.

When the encryption method of the selected access point is WPA, WPA2 or Mixed in step 7:

a Select the `Enter Password` text box, and then enter the pass phrase.

b Select `OK`.

The `Restart System` message appears.

10 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

Wireless settings are correctly configured.

IMPORTANT:
- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

Manual SSID Setup

1 Press the ⌶ (**System**) button.

2 Select `Tools` tab.

3 Select `Admin Settings`.

4 Select `Network`.

5 Select `Wireless`.

6 Select `Wireless Setup Wizard`.

7 Select the `Manual SSID Setup` check box, and then select `Next`.

8 Enter the SSID, and then select `Next`.

9 Select the network mode from `Infrastructure` or `Ad-hoc` depending on your environment, and then select `Next`.

When you select `Infrastructure`, proceed to step 10.

When you select `Ad-hoc`, proceed to step 11.

10 Select the encryption method from `Mixed mode PSK`, `WPA-PSK-TKIP`, `WPA2-PSK-AES`, or `WEP`.

IMPORTANT:

- Be sure to use one of the supported encryption methods to protect your network traffic.

To use Mixed mode PSK, WPA-PSK-TKIP, or WPA2-PSK-AES encryption:

a Select the desired encryption method.

b Select the `Enter Password` text box, and then enter the pass phrase.

c Select `OK`.

To use WEP encryption:

a Select `WEP`.

b Select the `Enter WEP Key` text box, and then enter the WEP key.

c Select `Transmit Key`, and then select the desired transmit key from `Auto` or `WEP Key 1` to `WEP Key 4`.

d Select `OK` twice.

The `Restart System` message appears.

Proceed to step 12.

11 Select `WEP` for encryption method.

IMPORTANT:

- Be sure to use one of the supported encryption methods to protect your network traffic.

12 Select the `Enter WEP Key` text box, and then enter the WEP key.

13 Select `OK`.

14 Select `Transmit Key`, and then select the desired transmit key from `WEP Key 1` to `WEP Key 4`.

15 Select `OK`.

The `Restart System` message appears.

16 Turn off the printer, and turn it on again to apply the settings.

Wireless settings are correctly configured.

IMPORTANT:

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

CentreWare Internet Services

1 Ensure that the printer is turned off and the wireless printer adapter is connected to the printer.

2 Connect the printer to the network with an Ethernet cable.

For details about connecting the Ethernet cable, see "Connecting Printer to Computer or Network" on page 92.

3 Turn on the printer.

4 Launch the CentreWare Internet Services by entering the IP address of the printer in your web browser.

5 Click the **Properties** tab.

6 Click **Wireless**.

7 Enter the SSID in the **SSID** text box.

8 Select **Ad hoc** or **Infrastructure** in the **Network Type** drop-down menu.

9 Select the encryption method from **WEP 128-bit HEX (26 Bytes)**, **WEP 128-bit ASCII (13 Bytes)**, **WEP 64-bit HEX (10 Bytes)**, **WEP 64-bit ASCII (5 Bytes)**, **WPA-PSK AES/WPA2-PSK AES**, **WPA-PSK TKIP**, and **Mixed Mode PSK** in the **Encryption** drop-down menu, and then set each item for the encryption method selected.

IMPORTANT:

- Be sure to use one of the supported encryption methods to protect your network traffic.

NOTE:

- For details on each item, see the Help on CentreWare Internet Services.

10 Click **Apply** to apply the settings.

11 Turn off the printer, disconnect the Ethernet cable and turn it on again.

Wireless LAN connection setting is complete.

IMPORTANT:

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

Reconfiguring the Wireless Settings

To change the wireless setting through the wireless connection from your computer, perform the following.

NOTE:
- Ensure that the wireless connection setting is completed in "Configuring the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter" on page 125.
- The following settings are available when the network mode is set to infrastructure in "Configuring the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter" on page 125.

1 Check the IP address of the printer.

    a On the operator panel, press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

    b Select `Report / List`.

    c Select `System Settings`, and then select `Print`.

       The System Settings page is printed.

    d Confirm the IP address next to **IP Address** under **Network Setup** on the System Settings page.

2 Launch the CentreWare Internet Services by entering the IP address of the printer in your web browser.
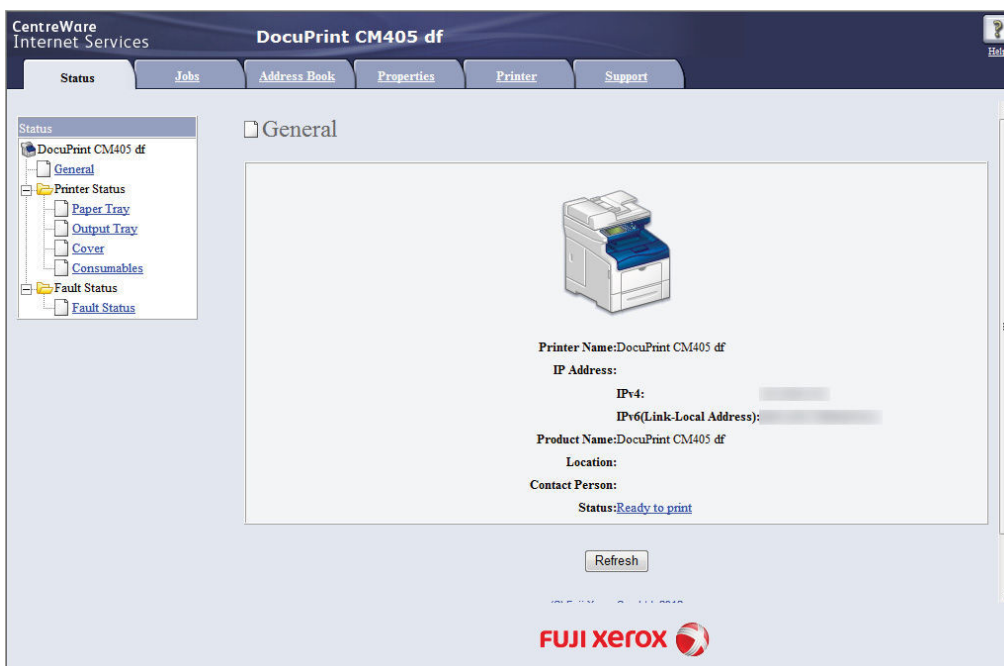
3 Click the **Properties** tab.

4 Click **Wireless**.

5 Change the wireless settings of the printer.

6 Click **Apply** to apply the settings.

7 Reboot the printer.

8 Change the wireless settings on your computer or access point accordingly.

NOTE:
- To change the wireless settings on your computer, refer to the manuals provided with the wireless LAN access point or if your computer provides a wireless adapter tool, change the wireless settings using that tool.

Printing Basics

This chapter includes:

About Print Media

This section includes:

Using paper that is not appropriate for the printer can cause paper jams, image quality problems, or printer failure. To achieve the best performance from your printer, we recommend you to use only the paper described in this section.

When using paper other than that recommended, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Print Media Usage Guidelines

The printer tray accommodates various sizes and types of paper and other specialty media. Follow these guidelines when loading paper and media in the tray:

- Envelopes can be printed from the bypass tray.
- Fan paper or other specialty media before loading in the paper tray.
- Labels can be printed from the bypass tray.
- Do not print on label stock once a label has been removed from a sheet.
- Use only paper envelopes. Do not use envelopes with windows, metal clasps, or adhesives with release strips.
- Print all envelopes single-sided only.
- Some wrinkling and embossing may occur when printing envelopes.
- Do not overload the paper tray. Do not load print media above the fill line on the inside of the width guides.
- Adjust the width guides to fit the paper size.
- If excessive jams or wrinkles occur, use paper or other media from a new package.

> ⚠ **WARNING:**
> - **Do not use conductive paper such as origami paper, carbonic paper or conductively-coated paper. When paper jam occurs, it may cause short-circuit and eventually a fire accident.**

See also:

◼ Print Media That Can Damage Your Printer

The following paper types are not recommended for use with the printer:

- Chemically treated paper used to make copies without carbon paper, also known as carbonless paper, carbonless copy paper (CCP), or no carbon required (NCR) paper.
- Preprinted paper with chemicals that may contaminate the printer.
- Preprinted paper that can be affected by the temperature in the fusing unit.
- Preprinted paper that requires a registration (the precise print location on the page) greater than ±0.09 inches, such as optical character recognition (OCR) forms.
  In some cases, you can adjust registration with your software program to successfully print on these forms.
- Coated paper (erasable bond), synthetic paper, thermal paper, and short grain paper.
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface paper, or curled paper.
- Recycled paper containing more than 25% post-consumer waste that does not meet DIN 19 309.
- Multiple-part forms or documents.
- Print quality may deteriorate (blank spaces or blotches may appear in the text) when you print on talc or acid paper.

> ⚠️ **WARNING:**
> - **Do not use conductive paper such as origami paper, carbonic paper or conductively-coated paper. When paper jam occurs, it may cause short-circuit and eventually a fire accident.**

◼ Print Media Storage Guidelines

For proper print media storage, the following guidelines will help to avoid media feeding problems and uneven print quality.

- Store print media in an environment where the temperature is approximately 70 °F/21 °C and the relative humidity is 40%.
- Store print media in dark, cool, relatively dry locations. Most paper items are susceptible to damage from ultraviolet (UV) and visible light. UV radiation, which is emitted by the sun and fluorescent bulbs, is particularly damaging to paper items. The intensity and length of exposure to visible light on paper items should be reduced as much as possible.
- Maintain constant temperature and relative humidity.
- Avoid attics, kitchens, garages, and basements for storing print media.
- Store print media flat. Print media should be stored on pallets, cartons, shelves, or in cabinets.
- Avoid having food or drinks in the area where print media is stored or handled.
- Do not open sealed packages of paper until you are ready to load them into the printer. Leave paper in the original packaging. For most commercial cut-size grades, the ream wrapper contains an inner lining that protects the paper from moisture loss or gain.
- Leave the media inside the bag until you are ready to use it; reinsert unused media in the bag and reseal it for protection. Some specialty media is packaged inside resealable plastic bags.
- Do not place anything on top of the print media packages.

■ Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF) Guidelines

The DADF accommodates the following original sizes:

- Width: 139.7–215.9 mm (5.5–8.5 inches)
- Length: 139.7–355.6 mm (5.5–14 inches)

The weight range includes 60–125 gsm.

Follow these guidelines when loading original documents into the DADF:

- Load documents face up so that the top of the document enters the printer first.
- Place only loose sheets of paper in the DADF.
- Adjust the document guides so that they fit against the documents.
- Insert paper in the document feeder tray only when the ink on the paper is completely dry.
- Do not load documents above the MAX fill line. You can load up to 50 sheets of 75 gsm (20 lb) documents.

NOTE:
- You cannot load the following documents in the DADF. Be sure to place them on the document glass.

	Curled originals		Pre-punched paper
	Lightweight originals		Folded, creased or torn originals
	Cut and paste originals		Carbon paper

Supported Print Media

Using unsuitable print media may lead to paper jams, poor print quality, breakdown and damage to your printer. To use the features of this printer effectively, use the suggested print media that is recommended here.

IMPORTANT:
- The toner may come off the print media, if it gets wet by water, rain, steam and so on. For details, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Usable Print Media

The types of print media that can be used on this printer are as follows:

Bypass Tray

Paper Size	A4 SEF (210 × 297 mm)
	B5 SEF (182 × 257 mm)
	A5 SEF (148 × 210 mm)
	Letter SEF (8.5 × 11 inches)
	Executive SEF (7.25 × 10.5 inches)
	Folio SEF (8.5 × 13 inches)
	Legal SEF (8.5 × 14 inches)
	Com 10 Envelope SEF (4.125 × 9.5 inches)
	Monarch Envelope SEF (3.875 × 7.5 inches)
	DL Envelope SEF (110 × 220 mm)
	C5 Envelope SEF (162 × 229 mm)
	Custom size[*]:
	Width: 76.2–215.9 mm (3–8.5 inches)
	Length: 127–355.6 mm (5 –14 inches)
Paper Type	Plain (Lightweight)
	Plain (Heavyweight)
	Other Type
	Lightweight Cardstock
	Heavyweight Cardstock
	Light Glossy Cardstock
	Heavy Glossy Cardstock
	Labels (Lightweight)
	Labels (Heavyweight)
	Envelope
	Letterhead
	Hole Punched
	Colored
Loading Capacity	150 sheets of standard paper

*:XML Paper Specification (XPS) driver does not support custom size paper.

Standard 550 Sheet Tray and Optional 550 Sheet Feeder

Paper Size	A4 SEF (210 × 297 mm)
	B5 SEF (182 × 257 mm)
	A5 SEF (148 × 210 mm)
	Letter SEF (8.5 × 11 inches)
	Executive SEF (7.25 × 10.5 inches)
	Folio SEF (8.5 × 13 inches)
	Legal SEF (8.5 × 14 inches)
	Custom size[*]:
	Width: 148–215.9 mm (5.83–8.5 inches)
	Length: 210–355.6 mm (8.27 –14 inches)
Paper Type	Plain (Lightweight)
	Plain (Heavyweight)
	Other Type
	Lightweight Cardstock
	Heavyweight Cardstock
	Light Glossy Cardstock
	Heavy Glossy Cardstock
	Letterhead
	Hole Punched
	Colored
Loading Capacity	550 sheets of standard paper

*:XML Paper Specification (XPS) driver does not support custom size paper.

NOTE:
- SEF indicates the paper feed direction; SEF stands for short-edge feed.
- For Plain and Label paper, you can set the paper density by selecting `Adjust Paper Type` (`Lightweight` or `Heavyweight`) under `Maintenance` from the operator panel. Once you set the `Adjust Paper Type` settings, the printer uses the settings for Plain and Label paper.

See also:
- "Loading Print Media in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray and the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder" on page 144
- "Loading Letterhead in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray and the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder" on page 146
- "Loading Print Media in the Bypass Tray" on page 147
- "Loading Envelope in the Bypass Tray" on page 148
- "Loading Letterhead in the Bypass Tray" on page 149

Printing on print media that differs from the paper size or paper type selected on the print driver, or loading print media into an unsuitable paper tray for printing, may lead to paper jams. To ensure that printing is correctly done, select the correct paper size, paper type, and paper tray.

■ Standard Paper and Tested Paper

The following paper and media are standard or usable for the printer.

When you print a generally used paper (which called general paper), please use a paper that suits the standard. To print clearly, Fuji Xerox recommends the standard paper shown in the following table. For information about the other paper and media, contact Fuji Xerox Customer Support Center.

	Paper Name	Size	Weight	Paper Type	Notes
Standard Paper	Fuji Xerox P	A4	64 gsm	Plain (Lightweight)	Medium-thickness paper for in-house documents and general office use.
	Fuji Xerox C2	A4	70 gsm	Plain (Lightweight)	Paper for general office use with minimum see-through.
	XeroxBusiness4200	Letter	20 lb	Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Xerox Color Xpressions Select	Letter	24 lb	Plain (Heavyweight)	
Supported Paper	XeroxBusiness4200	Legal	20 lb	Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Hammermill Tidal MP 20lb 8.5 x 11	Letter		Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Cascade X-9000	Folio		Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Cascade X-9000	Letter		Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Xerox Color Xpressions Select	Legal	24 lb	Plain (Heavyweight)	
	XeroxBusiness4200	Letter		Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Hammermill Writing Bond	Letter		Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Hammermill Laser Print	Letter		Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Weyerhaeuser First Choice (No. 1 bond acid free)	Letter		Plain (Heavyweight)	
	GP Laser1000	Executive		Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Xerox Color Xpressions Elite	Letter	28 lb	Plain (Heavyweight)	
	XeroxBusiness4200	Letter		Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Fuji Xerox P	B5	64 gsm	Plain (Lightweight)	Medium-thickness paper for in-house documents and general office use.
	Fuji Xerox P	A5		Plain (Lightweight)	
	Fuji Xerox FR	A4	64 gsm	Plain (Lightweight)	Environmentally-conscious paper (50% of pulp sourced from plantation-grown trees + 50% of recycled pulp).
	Fuji Xerox G70	A4	67 gsm	Plain (Lightweight)	Recycled copy/printer paper compounded 70% of recycled pulp.
	Fuji Xerox C2R	A4	70 gsm	Plain (Lightweight)	70% recycled pulp paper.
	Xerox Premier 80	A4	80 gsm	Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Xerox Business 80			Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Data Copy			Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Steinbeis Recycling Copy			Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Yes Bronze			Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Xerox Premier	A5		Plain (Heavyweight)	

	Paper Name	Size	Weight	Paper Type	Notes
Supported Paper	Fuji Xerox J	A4	82 gsm	Plain (Heavyweight)	Hi-quality paper suitable for a variety of uses, including project proposals and color samples.
	Fuji Xerox J	B5		Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Xerox Premier 90	A4	90 gsm	Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Xerox-90 Colotech	A4		Plain (Heavyweight)	
	Fuji Xerox J coat	A4	95 gsm	Lightweight Glossy Cardstock	Print one sheet at a time using the bypass tray.
	Fuji Xerox JD	A4	98 gsm		Double-sided paper suitable for a variety of uses, including brochures and booklet.
	Fuji Xerox JD	B5			
	JD coat 104.7	A4	105 gsm	Lightweight Glossy Cardstock	Print one sheet at a time using the bypass tray.
	Chuan Mei 70 gsm	A4	70 gsm	Plain (Lightweight)	
	EXCEL A4	A4	80 gsm	Plain (Heavyweight)	
Special Paper	Label No cut	A4	Label	Labels (Lightweight)	
	Label No cut	A4		Labels (Lightweight)	
	Avery Labels 5165	Letter		Labels (Lightweight)	
	Columbia C0131/C0125	Com-10	Envelope	Envelope	
	Monroe Brand	Monarch (98.4 × 190.5)		Envelope	
	River Series	DL (110 × 220)		Envelope	
	River Series	C5 (162 × 229)		Envelope	
	Colorpaper Cream	A4	64 gsm	Plain (Lightweight)	
	Colorpaper Light Blue			Plain (Lightweight)	
	Colorpaper Pink			Plain (Lightweight)	
	Colorpaper Light Green			Plain (Lightweight)	
	Premier TFC 160	A4	160 gsm	Lightweight Cardstock	
	Xerox Color Xpression Planet 20	Letter	65 lb	Heavyweight Cardtstock	
	Recycled Business Card White	A4	190 gsm	Heavyweight Cardtstock	
	Classic Crest Super Smooth Cover 80lb	Letter	216 gsm	Heavyweight Cardtstock	

Loading Print Media

Loading print media properly helps prevent jams and ensures trouble-free printing.

Before loading any print media, identify the recommended print side of the print media. This information is usually indicated on the print media package.

■ Capacity

The standard 550 sheet tray and the optional 550 sheet feeder can hold:

- 550 sheets of the standard paper.

The bypass tray can hold:

- 150 sheets of the standard paper.

■ Print Media Dimensions

The maximum dimensions of print media that the standard 550 sheet tray and the optional 550 sheet feeder can handle are:

- Width: 148 mm (5.83 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
- Length: 210 mm (8.27 inches) to 355.6 mm (14 inches)

The maximum dimensions of print media that the bypass tray can handle are:

- Width: 76.2 mm (3 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
- Length: 127 mm (5 inches) to 355.6 mm (14 inches)

■ Loading Print Media in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray and the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder

NOTE:
- To avoid paper jams, do not remove the tray while printing is in progress.
- Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet print media in your printer.

1 Pull the tray out of the printer about 200 mm.
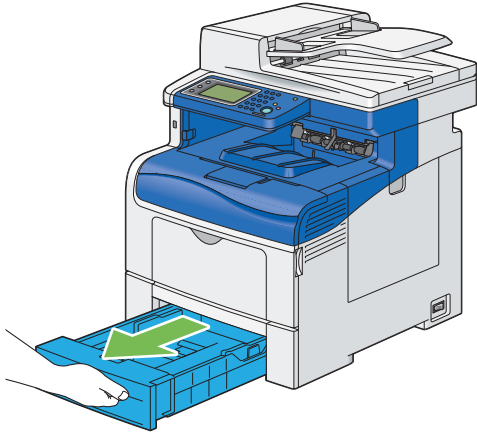
2 Hold the tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.
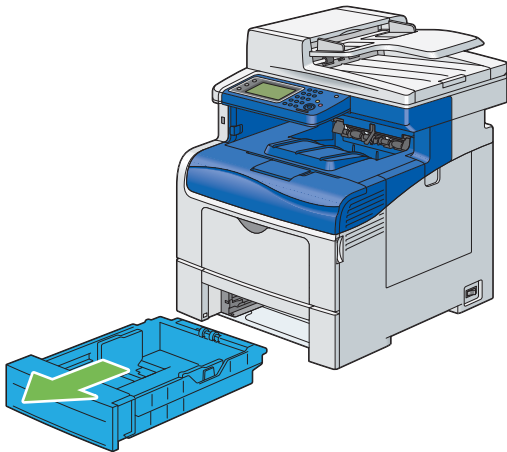
3 Adjust the paper guides.
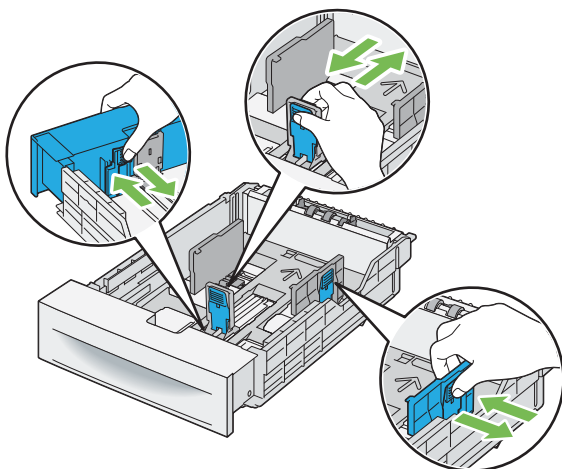
NOTE:
- When loading Legal size or user-specified print media, slide the extendable part of the tray while pinching the lever.

4 Before loading the print media, flex the sheets and fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.
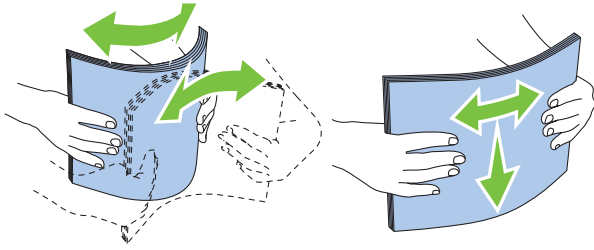
5 Load the print media into the tray with the recommended print side facing up.

NOTE:
- Do not exceed the maximum fill line in the tray. Overfilling the tray may cause paper jams.
- When loading coated paper, load coated paper one sheet at a time.

6 Align the width guides and length guide against the edges of the print media.
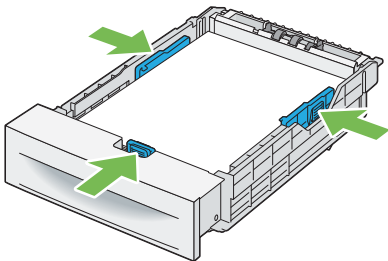
7 After confirming that the guides are securely adjusted, insert the tray into the printer.
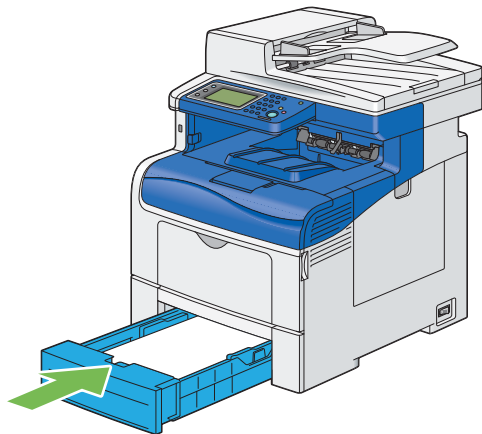
NOTE:
- If the front side of the tray is extended, the tray protrudes when it is inserted into the printer.
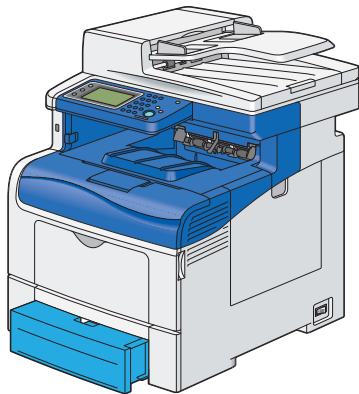
8 On the prompt screen displayed on the LCD panel, select Size.

9 Select the appropriate paper size.

10 Select `Type`.

11 Select the appropriate paper type.

12 Select `OK`.

Loading Letterhead in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray and the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder

When you use the standard 550 sheet tray and the optional 550 sheet feeder, letterhead and hole punched paper must be inserted top edge first with the print side facing up.
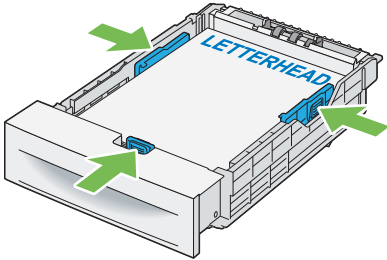
■ Loading Print Media in the Bypass Tray

1 Gently pull open the bypass tray cover.
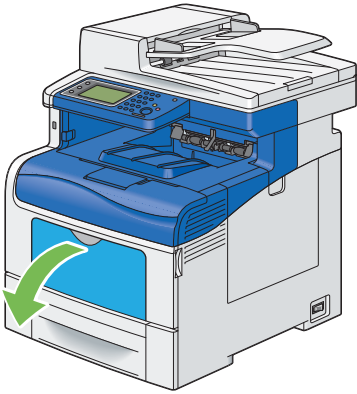
2 Extend the extension tray as necessary.
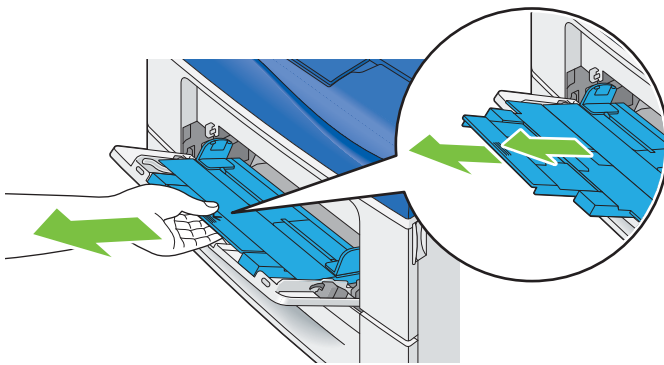
3 Slide the width guides to the edge of the tray. The width guides should be fully extended.
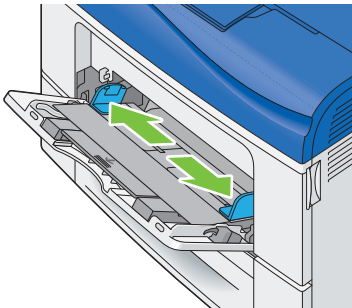
4 Insert all media face up and top edge first into the bypass tray.

NOTE:
• Do not force the print media into the bypass tray.
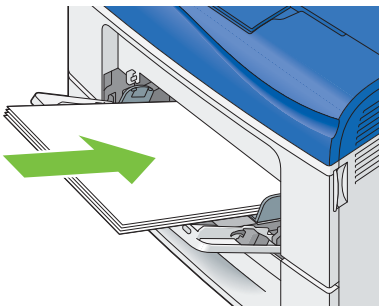
5 Slide both width guides until they rest lightly against the edge of the print media stack.

> **NOTE:**
> • Do not force the print media into the bypass tray.
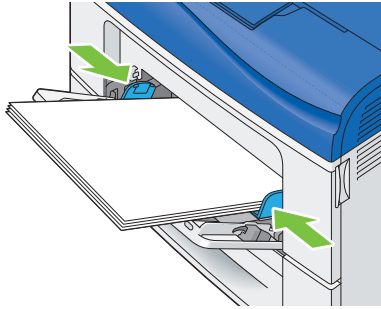
6 On the prompt screen displayed on the LCD panel, specify whether to use the driver setting for the paper size and type.

To use the driver setting, ensure that the `Use Driver Settings for Print Job` check box is selected and go to step 11.

To specify the setting on the operator panel, clear the `Use Driver Settings for Print Job` check box and go to step 7.

7 Select `Size`.

8 Select the appropriate paper size.

9 Select `Type`.

10 Select the appropriate paper type.

11 Select `OK`.

Loading Envelope in the Bypass Tray

Use the following guidelines when loading envelopes in the bypass tray:

> **IMPORTANT:**
> • Never use envelopes with windows, coated linings, or self-stick adhesives. These lead to paper jams and can cause damage to the printer.

> **NOTE:**
> • The maximum height (quantity) of envelopes that can be loaded in the bypass tray is approximately 15 mm (0.59 inches) (15 envelopes).
> • If you do not load envelopes in the bypass tray right after they have been removed from the packaging, they may bulge. To avoid jams, press firmly across the whole envelopes to flatten them as shown below before loading the envelopes in the bypass tray.
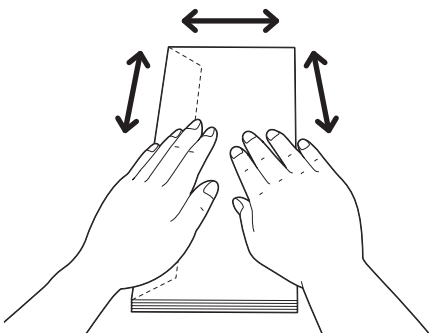
• Com 10, Monarch, or DL

Load the envelopes short edge feed with the flaps closed and the print side up. Ensure that the flaps come at the left when you face towards the printer.
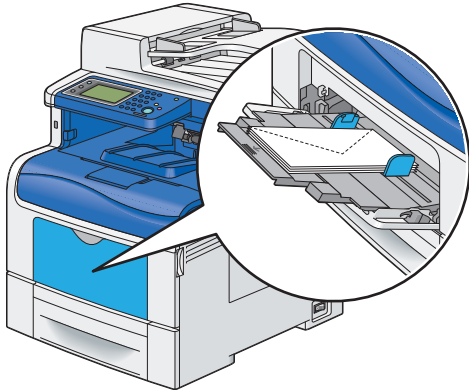
• C5

Load the envelopes short edge feed with the flaps open or closed and the print side up.

Ensure that the flaps come at the bottom with the flaps open or at the top with the flaps closed when you face towards the printer.
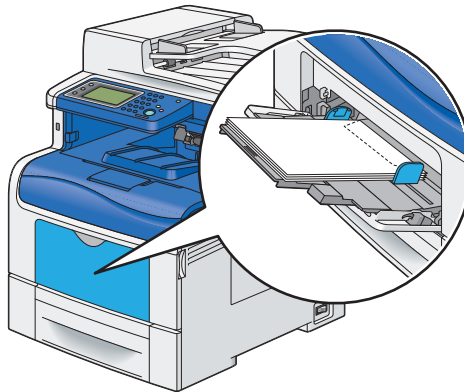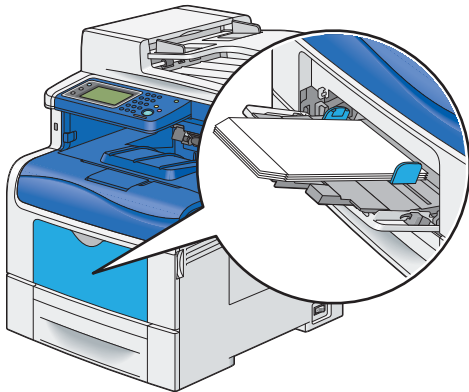
Loading Letterhead in the Bypass Tray

When you use the bypass tray, letterhead and hole punched paper must be inserted top edge first with the print side facing up.
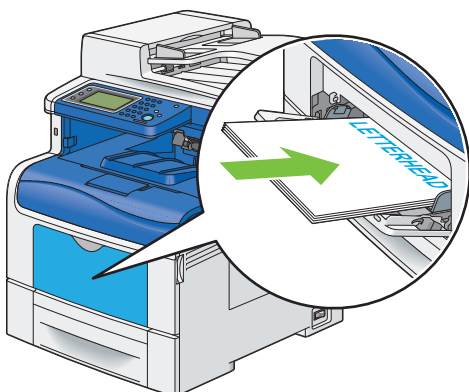
Using the Bypass Tray

• Load only one size and type of print media during a single print job.

• To achieve the best possible print quality, use only high-quality print media that is designed for use in laser printer. For more guidelines on print media, see "Print Media Usage Guidelines" on page 136.

• Do not add or remove print media when there is still print media in the bypass tray or when the printer is printing from the bypass tray. This may result in a paper jam.

• Print media should be loaded with the recommended print side up and the top of the print media going into the bypass tray first.

• Do not place objects on the bypass tray. Also, avoid pressing down or applying excessive force on it.

• The icons on the bypass tray show how to load the bypass tray with print media, and how to turn an envelope for printing.

Linking Trays

When the optional 550 sheet feeder is installed on the printer, the printer automatically links the trays when you load the same size and type of print media in them. The first tray will be utilized until the media runs out after which the next tray will be used.

NOTE:

• The print media should be the same size and type in each tray.

• The bypass tray cannot be linked to any of the tray.

After loading the selected trays with the same size and type of print media, select the `Type` setting in the `Tray Settings` menu for each tray.

To disable tray linking change the paper type in one of the trays to a unique value.

NOTE:

• If different types of print media of the same size are loaded in each tray, the printer will automatically link them if the paper type is not specified in the print driver properties/preferences.

Setting Paper Sizes and Types

When loading print media in the tray, set the paper size and type on the operator panel before printing.

See also:
- "Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 280

This section includes:
- "Setting Paper Sizes" on page 151
- "Setting Paper Types" on page 151

■ Setting Paper Sizes

1 On the operator panel, press the `i` (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Tray Management`.

3 Select `Tray Settings`.

4 Select the desired tray.

> **NOTE:**
> - When you select `Bypass Tray`, the `Use Driver Settings for Print Job` check box is selected by default. To change the setting, clear the check box.

5 Select `Size`.

6 Select the desired paper size.

7 Select `OK`.

■ Setting Paper Types

IMPORTANT:
- Paper type settings must match those of the actual print media loaded in the tray or the feeder. Otherwise, print-quality problems can occur.

1 On the operator panel, press the `i` (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Tray Management`.

3 Select `Tray Settings`.

4 Select the desired tray.

> **NOTE:**
> - When you select `Bypass Tray`, the `Use Driver Settings for Print Job` check box is selected by default. To change the setting, clear the check box.

5 Select `Type`.

6 Select the desired paper type.

7 Select `OK`.

Printing

This section covers how to print certain information from your printer and how to cancel a job.

This section includes:

■ Sending a Job to Print

To support all of the printer features, use the print driver. When you choose **Print** from a software program, a window representing the print driver opens. Select the appropriate settings for the specific job that you are sending to print. Print settings selected from the driver override the default menu settings selected from the operator panel.

You may need to click **Preferences** from the initial **Print** box to see all of the available system settings you can change. If you are not familiar with a feature in the print driver window, open the Help for more information.

To print a job from a typical Microsoft® Windows® application:

1 Open the file you want to print.

2 From the application menu, select **Print**.

3 Verify that the correct printer is selected in the dialog box. Modify the system settings as appropriate (such as the pages you want to print or the number of copies).

4 Click **Preferences** to adjust system settings that are not available from the first screen, and then click **OK**.

5 Click **Print** to send the job to the selected printer.

NOTE:
- When you print on a small size medium such as an envelope, lift the operator panel so that you can easily remove the printed media from the output tray.

■ Canceling a Print Job

There are several methods for canceling a job.

This section includes:

Canceling a Job From the Operator Panel

To cancel a job after it has started printing:

1 Press the ⊘ (**Stop**) button or select `Delete`.

Printing is canceled only for the current job. All the following jobs will continue to print.

To cancel a job before it has started printing:

1 Press the ⧉ (**Job Status**) button.

A list of print job appears.

2 Select the desired job to cancel.

3 Select `Delete`.

4 Select `Delete Job`.

Canceling a Job From a Computer Running Windows

• Canceling a Job From the Taskbar

When you send a job to print, a small printer icon appears in the bottom right corner of the taskbar.

1 Double-click the printer icon.

A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.

2 Select the job you want to cancel.

3 Press **Delete** key on the keyboard.

4 Click **Yes** on the **Printers** dialog box to cancel a print job.

• Canceling a Job From the Desktop

1 Click **start** → **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows XP).

Click **Start** → **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows Server® 2003).

Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers** (for Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2).

Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers** (for Windows Vista®).

Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Printers** (for Windows Server 2008).

A list of available printers appears.

2 Double-click the printer that you selected when you sent the job for print.

A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.

3 Select the job you want to cancel.

4 Press **Delete** key on the keyboard.

5 Click **Yes** on the **Printers** dialog box to cancel a print job.

■ Using the Stored Print Feature

When you send a job to the printer, you can specify in the print driver to store the job in the memory or hard disk. When you are ready to print the job, go to the printer and use the operator panel menus to identify which job in the memory or hard disk you want to print.

NOTE:

- The Stored Print feature is available when:
  - The optional 512MB memory is installed.
  - The RAM disk is enabled in the operator panel menu.
  - **RAM Disk** is set to **Installed** in the print driver.

    OR

  - The optional hard disk unit is installed.
  - **Hard Disk** is set to **Installed** in the print driver.
- The data in memory is cleared when the printer is turned off. The data on the optional hard disk unit is not cleared even when the printer is turned off.

The stored print feature includes the following job types:

Secure Print

You can store print jobs secured with a passcode in the memory or hard disk. Users with the passcode can print them from the operator panel. This feature can be used to print confidential documents. You can select whether to delete the stored job after printing. Otherwise, the stored jobs remain in the memory until you delete them from the operator panel or turn off the printer, or in the hard disk until you delete them from the operator panel.

NOTE:

- Secure Print is available when you use the PCL 6 or PS driver.

Sample Print

The collated print job is stored in the memory or hard disk, but a single copy is printed automatically so you can check the print result. If you do not have problems with the print result, you can choose to print more copies. This prevents large number of misprinted copies from being printed at one time.
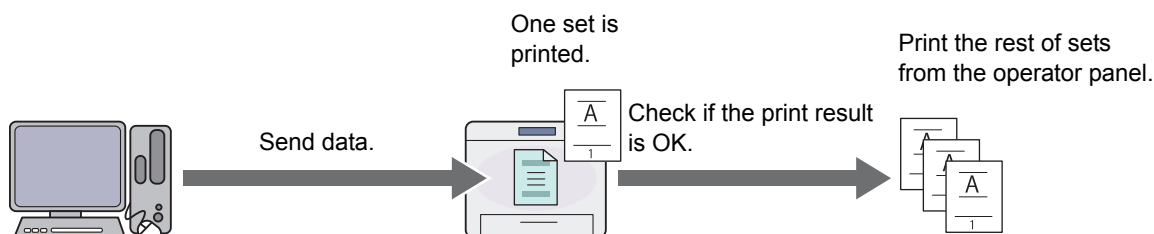
NOTE:

- Sample Print is available when you use the PCL 6 or PS driver.

Procedures for Printing Stored Print

The following are procedures for storing and printing jobs.

• Storing Print Jobs

For Secure Print, select **Secure Print** for **Job Type** and specify the user ID, passcode and job name by clicking **Setup** in the **Paper/Output** tab of the print driver. When you send the job to the printer, the job will be stored in the memory until you request to print from the operator panel or turn off the printer, or in the hard disk until you request to print it from the operator panel.

For Sample Print, select **Sample Set** for **Job Type** and specify the user ID and job name by clicking **Setup** in the **Paper/Output** tab of the print driver. When you send the job to the printer, the first set is printed. The remaining copies will be stored in the memory until you select to print them on the operator panel or turn off the printer, or in the hard disk until you select to print them on the operator panel.

NOTE:
- If a print job is too large for the memory or hard disk available, the printer may display error messages.
- If a document name is not assigned to your print job in the print driver, the job's name will be identified using the printer's time and date of submission to distinguish it from other jobs you have stored under your name.

• Printing the Stored Jobs

Once jobs are stored, you can use the operator panel to specify printing.

Printing the Secure Print Job

Secure Print requires the passcode you specified in the driver when you sent the job.

To print the Secure Print jobs, use the procedure below.

1 Press the ▯ (**Job Status**) button.

2 Select Secure Print.

3 Select a user ID you specified in the print driver.

4 Enter the passcode you specified in the print driver using the number pad, and select OK.

For details about specifying the passcode, see .

5 Select the document you want to print.

> **NOTE:**
> - By default, the driver setting is used for the number of copies to print. You can select Quantity to change the setting.

6 Select Print.

> **NOTE:**
> - If you want to delete the data in the memory or hard disk after printing, select the Print and Delete check box.

7 Select OK.

The stored document will be printed.

Printing the Sample Print Job

To print the Sample Print jobs, use the procedure below.

1 Press the ⌂ (**Services**) button.

2   Select `Print from`.

3   Select a user ID you specified in the print driver.

4   Select the document you want to print.

> **NOTE:**
> • By default, the driver setting is used for the number of copies to print. You can select `Quantity` to change the setting.

5   Select `Print`.

> **NOTE:**
> • If you want to delete the data in the memory or hard disk after printing, select the `Print and Delete` check box.

6   Select `OK`.

The stored document will be printed.

• Specifying Your Passcode on the Operator Panel (Secure Print)

When you select your user ID for Secure Print, a screen to enter the passcode appears.

Use the number pad to enter the numeric passcode you specified in the print driver. The passcode you entered will be displayed as asterisks (*******) to ensure confidentiality.

If you enter an invalid passcode, the message `Invalid Passcode Please re-enter 4 digit PIN` appears. Wait three seconds, or select `Close` to return to the screen to enter the passcode.

When you enter a valid passcode, you have access to all print jobs matching the user name and passcode you entered. The print jobs matching the passcode you entered appear on the screen. You can then choose to print or to delete jobs matching the passcode you entered. (See "Printing the Stored Jobs" on page 155 for more information.)

• Deleting Stored Jobs

A job that has been stored will be deleted after printing if selected to do so on the operator panel. Otherwise, the job remains stored until you delete them on the operator panel.

NOTE:
• The data in the memory is cleared when the printer is turned off. The data on the optional hard disk unit is not cleared even when the printer is turned off.

■ Direct Print Using the USB Storage Device

The Print from USB Memory feature allows you to print files stored in a USB storage device by operating from the operator panel.

IMPORTANT:

- To prevent damage to your printer, DO NOT connect any device other than USB storage device to the front USB port of the printer.
- DO NOT remove the USB storage device from the front USB port until the printer has finished printing.

NOTE:

- If the `Service Lock` setting for `Print from USB` is set to `Password Locked` or `Color Password Locked`, you need to enter the four digit passcode to use the Print from USB Memory feature. If the `Service Lock` setting for `Print from USB` is set to `Disabled`, the Print from USB Memory feature is disabled and the menu is not displayed on the screen. For details, "Service Lock" on page 317.

The front USB port of the printer is designed for USB 2.0 devices. You must use only an authorised USB storage device with an A plug type connector. Use only a metal shielded USB storage device.

A plug type
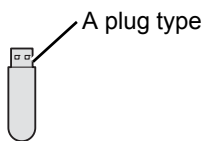
To print a file in a USB storage device:

1 Press the ⌂ (**Services**) button.

2 Insert a USB storage device to the front USB port of the printer.
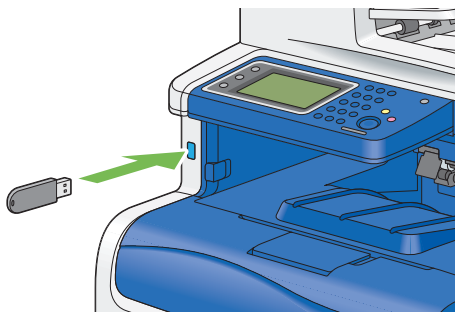
3 Select `Print a File`.

4 Select the desired file, and then select `OK`.

> **NOTE:**
>
> - Only the following characters are displayed on the operator panel:
>   a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
>   0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 $ % ' ` - @ {} ~ ! # ( ) & _ ^

5 Select printing options as required.

6 Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin printing.

> **NOTE:**
>
> - Color printing is secured with a passcode if the `Service Lock` setting for `Print from USB` is set to `Color Password Locked`. If you set `Output Color` to `Full Color` and the `Service Lock` setting for `Print from USB` to `Color Password Locked`, you will need to enter the four digit passcode after pressing the ◇ (**Start**) button.
> - You can print files scanned and stored using the Scan to USB Memory feature. Files saved without using the feature such as files created by user may not be printed properly.

IMPORTANT:

- Before removing the USB storage device, ensure that the printer is not accessing the USB storage device. If you remove the USB storage device while the printer is accessing, the data in the USB storage device or the USB storage device itself may be destroyed.

Supported File Formats

Files in the following file formats can be printed directly from a USB storage device. (About what you saved in Scan to USB function of this printer. Other than that is not guaranteed.)

- PDF
- TIFF
- JPEG

■ Printing PDF Files Using PDF Bridge (Windows Only)

The printer has the PDF Bridge feature, which enables you to print PDF files directly without a print driver. Printing PDF files without a print driver is much easier and faster when compared to printing with a print driver. This section describes how to print PDF files using PDF Bridge.

This section includes:

Supported PDF Files

PDF files created on the following versions of Adobe® Acrobat® can be printed using PDF Bridge.

- Adobe Acrobat 5.X (excluding some of the features added to PDF1.4)
- Adobe Acrobat 6.X (excluding some of the features added to PDF1.5)
- Adobe Acrobat 7.X (excluding some of the features added to PDF1.6)

NOTE:
- Some PDF files cannot be printed depending on how they are created. In such case, open the files and print them using a print driver.

Using the ContentsBridge Utility

The ContentsBridge Utility is software that enables direct printing of PDF files by simply dragging and dropping files onto the icon. To use the ContentsBridge Utility, refer to the manual included on the *Driver CD Kit*.

Using the Commands

You can also print PDF files using the lpr or ftp command. When you print using these commands, the following PDF settings on the operator panel become effective.

- Quantity
- 2 Sided Print
- Print Mode
- PDF Password
- Collation
- Output Size
- Layout
- Output Color

NOTE:
- When you print using the lpr command, the print quantity must be set also using lpr command. In such case, the Quantity setting on the operator panel becomes invalid. If you do not specify the quantity using the lpr command, the printer recognizes the quantity as "1 set".
- To print PDF files using the lpr or ftp command, you must enable the printer's LPD or FTP port using the operator panel or CentreWare Internet Services (default: Enable).

Using the lpr command

- For Windows Vista or later, enable the lpr command first. The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

  a Click **Start → Control Panel → Programs → Turn Windows features on or off**.

  b In the **Windows Features** dialog box, select the **LPR Port Monitor** check box under **Print and Document Services**.

In the command prompt, enter the lpr command as described in the following example:

Example: Printing "event.pdf" when the printer's IP address is 192.168.1.100.

```
C:\> lpr -S 192.168.1.100 -P lp event.pdf
```

Using the ftp command

In the command prompt, enter the ftp command as described in the following example:

Example: Printing "event.pdf" when the printer's IP address is 192.168.1.100.

```
C:\> ftp 192.168.1.100

Connected to 192.168.1.100.

220 FUJI XEROX DocuPrint XXXX

User (192.168.1.100:(none)):

331 Password required

Password:

230 Logged in

ftp> bin

200 Command successful

ftp> put event.pdf

200 Command successful

150 Opening data connection

226 Transfer complete

ftp: xxxxx bytes sent in xxxSeconds xxxxxkbytes/sec.

ftp>
```

■ Duplex Printing

Duplex printing (or 2-sided printing) allows you to print on both sides of a sheet of paper. A4, A5, B5, Letter, Folio, Legal and Executive paper sizes are acceptable.

This section includes:

Using 2-Sided Print

The following procedure uses the PCL 6 driver as an example.

1 Click **start** → **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows XP).

Click **Start** → **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows Server 2003).

Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers** (for Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2).

Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers** (for Windows Vista).

Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Printers** (for Windows Server 2008).

A list of available printers appears.

2 Right-click the printer and select **Printing preferences**.

The **Paper/Output** tab appears.

3 From the drop-down menu of **Paper**, select **Select By Tray** and then select **Automatically Select**, **Tray 1**, **Tray 2**, or **Bypass Tray**.

4 From **2-Sided Print**, select **2-Sided Print** or **2-Sided Print, Flip on Short Edge**.

2-Sided Print	Assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait orientation and top edge for landscape orientation). The following illustration shows long-edge binding for portrait and landscape pages:

Portrait   Landscape
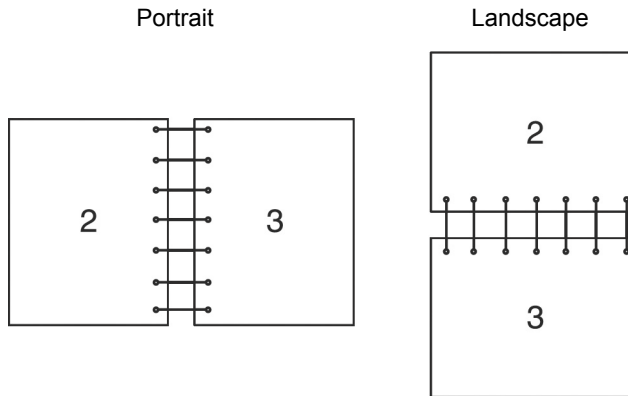
2-Sided Print, Flip on Short Edge	Assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait orientation and left edge for landscape orientation). The following illustration shows short-edge binding for portrait and landscape pages:

Portrait   Landscape
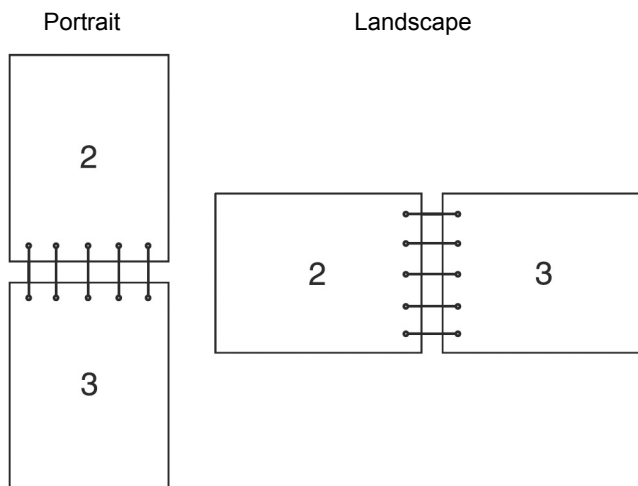
5 Click **OK**.

Using Booklet Print

To use the Booklet Print feature, select the **Booklet Layout** check box in the **Layout/Watermark** tab of the printer's **Printing Preferences** dialog box. Click **Booklet Creation** for detailed settings. The binding position is automatically set to **2-Sided Print** for the **2-Sided Print** in the **Paper/Output** tab.

NOTE:
- When the XML Paper Specification (XPS) driver or PS driver is used, the Booklet Print feature is not available.
- For details on the **2-Sided Print** option, see "2-Sided Print" on page 161.

■ Selecting Printing Options

This section includes:

Selecting Printing Preferences (Windows)

Printing Preferences control all of your print jobs, unless you override them specifically for a job. For example, if you want to use duplex printing for most jobs, set this option in Printing Preferences.

To select Printing Preferences:

1 Click **start** → **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows XP).

Click **Start** → **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows Server 2003).

Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers** (for Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2).

Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers** (for Windows Vista).

Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Printers** (for Windows Server 2008).

A list of available printers appears.

2 Right-click the icon for your printer, and then select **Printing preferences**.

The printer's **Printing Preferences** screen appears.

3 Make selections on the driver tabs, and then click **OK** to save your selections.

NOTE:
- For more information about Windows print driver options, click **Help** on the print driver tab to view the help.

Selecting Options for an Individual Job (Windows)

If you want to use special printing options for a particular job, change the driver settings before sending the job to the printer. For example, if you want to use Photo print-quality mode for a particular graphic, select this setting in the driver before printing that job.

1 With the desired document or graphic open in your application, access the **Print** dialog box.

2 Select your printer and click **Preferences** to open the print driver.

3 Make selections on the driver tabs.

> **NOTE:**
> - When using the PCL 6 or PS driver, you can save current printing options with a distinctive name and apply them to other print jobs. Select either the **Paper/Output**, **Image Options**, **Color Options**, **Layout/Watermark**, or **Advanced** tab, and then click **Save** under **Saved Settings** on the **Paper/Output** tab. Click **Help** for more information.

4 Click **OK** to save your selections.

5 Print the job.

See the following table for specific printing options:

The table shown below uses the PCL 6 driver as an example.

Printing Options for Windows

Driver Tab	Printing Options

Paper/Output tab	• Job Type
	• 2-Sided Print
	• Paper
	  – Size
	  – Type
	  – Select By Tray
	  – Advanced Paper Selection
	  – Covers/Separators
	• Output
	• Output Color
	• Saved Settings
	• Envelope/Paper Setup Wizard
	• Status
	• Defaults
	• Default All

Image Options tab	• Toner Saver • Application Reduce/Enlarge • Image Shift Summary • Defaults
Color Options tab	• Output Color • Output Recognition • Image Quality • Image Adjustment Mode • Image Types • Image Auto Correction • Image Settings • Color Balance • Profile Settings • Defaults

Layout/Watermark tab	• Page Layout
	  – Pages Per Sheet (N-Up)
	  – Poster
	  – Booklet Layout
	• Page Layout Options
	• Background Form
	• Watermark
	• Annotation
	• Defaults

Advanced tab	• Advanced Settings
	  • Document Options
	  – Specify Font
	  – Paper/Output
	  – Image Options
	  – Layout/Watermark
	  – Others
	• About
	• Defaults

Selecting Options for an Individual Job (Mac OS X)

To select print settings for a particular job, change the driver settings before sending the job to the printer.

1 With the document open in your application, click **File**, and then click **Print**.

2 Select your printer from **Printer**.

3 Select the desired printing options from the menus and drop-down list boxes that are displayed.

> **NOTE:**
> - In Mac OS® X, click **Save As** on the **Presets** menu to save the current printer settings. You can create multiple presets and save each with its own distinctive name and printer settings. To print jobs using specific printer settings, click the applicable saved preset in the **Presets** menu.

4 Click **Print** to print the job.

Mac OS X Print Driver Printing Options:

The table shown below uses Mac OS X 10.6 TextEdit as an example.

Printing options for Mac OS X

Item	Printing Options
	• Copies • Collated • Two-Sided • Pages • Paper Size • Orientation
Layout	• Pages per Sheet • Layout Direction • Border • Two-Sided • Reverse page orientation • Flip horizontally
Color Matching	• ColorSync – Profile • In printer
Paper Handling	• Pages to Print • Page Order • Scale to fit paper size • Destination Paper Size • Scale down only
Paper Feed	• All pages From • First Page From • Remaining From
Cover Page	• Print Cover Page • Cover Page Type • Billing Info
Scheduler	• Print Document • Priority
Job Accounting	• Account Mode • User Details Setup
Job Type	• Job Type • Setup • Defaults

Item	Printing Options
Image Options	• Output Color • Image Quality • Brightness • Basic Features/Advanced Features • Image Type • Image Adjustment • Screen • Color Balance • Defaults
Watermark	• Watermark – Edit – Delete – New • Print on Page 1 only • Defaults
Printer Features	• Feature Sets: General – Gray Guaranteed – Feed Orientation – Paper Type – Substitute Tray – Custom Paper Auto Orientation – Image Enhancement – Draft Mode – Skip Blank Pages – Halftone Screen Lock – High speed for monochrome documents – Trapping – Letterhead Duplex Mode
Summary	

■ Printing Custom Size Paper

This section explains how to print on custom size paper using the print driver.

The way to load custom size paper is the same as the one to load standard size paper.

NOTE:
- You can use custom size paper between the following ranges:
  - For the standard 550 sheet tray and the optional 550 sheet feeder
    - Width: 148 mm (5.83 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
    - Length: 127 mm (5 inches) to 355.6 mm (14 inches)
  - For the bypass tray
    - Width: 76.2 mm (3 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
    - Length: 210 mm (8.27 inches) to 355.6 mm (14 inches)
- XML Paper Specification (XPS) driver does not support custom size paper.

See also:

Defining Custom Paper Sizes

Before printing, set the custom size on the print driver.

NOTE:

- When setting the paper size on the print driver and the operator panel, be sure to specify the same size as the actual print media used. Setting the wrong size for printing can cause printer failure. This is especially true if you configure a bigger size when using a narrow width paper.

• Using the Windows Print Driver

On the Windows print driver, set the custom size in the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box. This section explains the procedure using Windows 7 and the PCL 6 driver as an example.

An administrator's password only allows users with administrator rights to change the settings. Users without the rights of administrator can only view the contents.

1 Click **Start → Devices and Printers**.

2 Right-click the printer, and then select **Printer properties**.

3 Select the **Device Settings** tab.

4 Select **Custom Paper Size** and click **Setup**.

5 Select the **Create a New Form** check box.

6 Enter a name for the custom paper size in **Name**. Up to 31 characters can be used for the paper name.

7 Specify the values for **Width** and **Length** either by entering the number directly or using the up arrow and down arrow buttons.
The value for **Width** cannot be greater than that of **Length**, even if it is within the specified range.

   NOTE:

   - You can switch the units by selecting either **Millimeters** or **Inches** under **Units**.
   - If you do not want to share the custom paper size with other users, clear the **Share it with Other Users** check box.

8 Click **Save**.

9 If necessary, repeat steps 5 to 8 to define another custom size.

10 Click **Close**.

11 Click **OK**.

Printing on Custom Size Paper

Use the following procedures to print using either the Windows or Mac OS X print drivers.

• Using the Windows Print Driver

To print on custom size paper using the PCL 6 driver as an example:

NOTE:
- The way to display the printer **Properties**/**Printing Preferences** dialog box differs according to the application software. Refer to the manual of each application software.

1 From the application menu, select **Print**.

2 Select your printer and click **Preferences**.

3 Select the **Paper/Output** tab.

4 From the drop-down menu of **Paper**, select **Advanced Paper Selection**.

5 Select the desired paper tray from **Paper Tray**.

   NOTE:
   - If you select **Bypass Tray**, **Bypass Feed Orientation** appears. Specify the orientation of the paper set on the bypass tray.

6 Select the size of the original document from **Original Document Size**.

7 Specify **Scale Options**.

   If you select the custom paper size from **Original Document Size** in step 6, select **No Scaling** and go to step 9.

   If you select the standard paper size from **Original Document Size** in step 6, select **Automatically Scale** and go to step 8.

8 Select the custom paper size from **Output Paper Size**.

9 Select the appropriate paper type from **Paper Type**.

10 Click **OK** twice.

11 Click **Print** in the **Print** dialog box to start printing.

• Using the Mac OS X Print Driver

This section explains the procedure using Mac OS X 10.6 TextEdit as an example.

1 From the **File** menu, select **Page Setup**.

2 Select your printer from **Format For**.

3 From **Paper Size**, select **Manage Custom Sizes**.

4 In the **Custom Paper Sizes** window, click **+**.
A newly created setting "Untitled" is displayed in the list.

5 Double-click "Untitled" and enter the name for the setting.

6 Enter the size of the original document in the **Width** and **Height** boxes of **Paper Size**.

7 Specify **Non-Printable Area** if necessary.

8 Click **OK**.

9 Make sure that the newly created paper size is chosen in **Paper Size**, and then click **OK**.

10 From the **File** menu, select **Print**.

11 Make sure that your printer is selected in **Printer**.

12 Click **Print** to start printing.

■ Auditron

Auditron contains an authentication function that can set limits on what processes can be used, as well as an account management that can be used to control usage based on authentication.

The following illustration shows how the printer works with Auditron.

Registered user A

Registered user B

Can print up to 10,000 pages in black and white

Can print up to 9,000 pages in color or black and white

Cannot print if not a registered user, or if the printed pages exceeds the limit

Print account report

Reference account report for each registered user

Normal user D

System administrator C
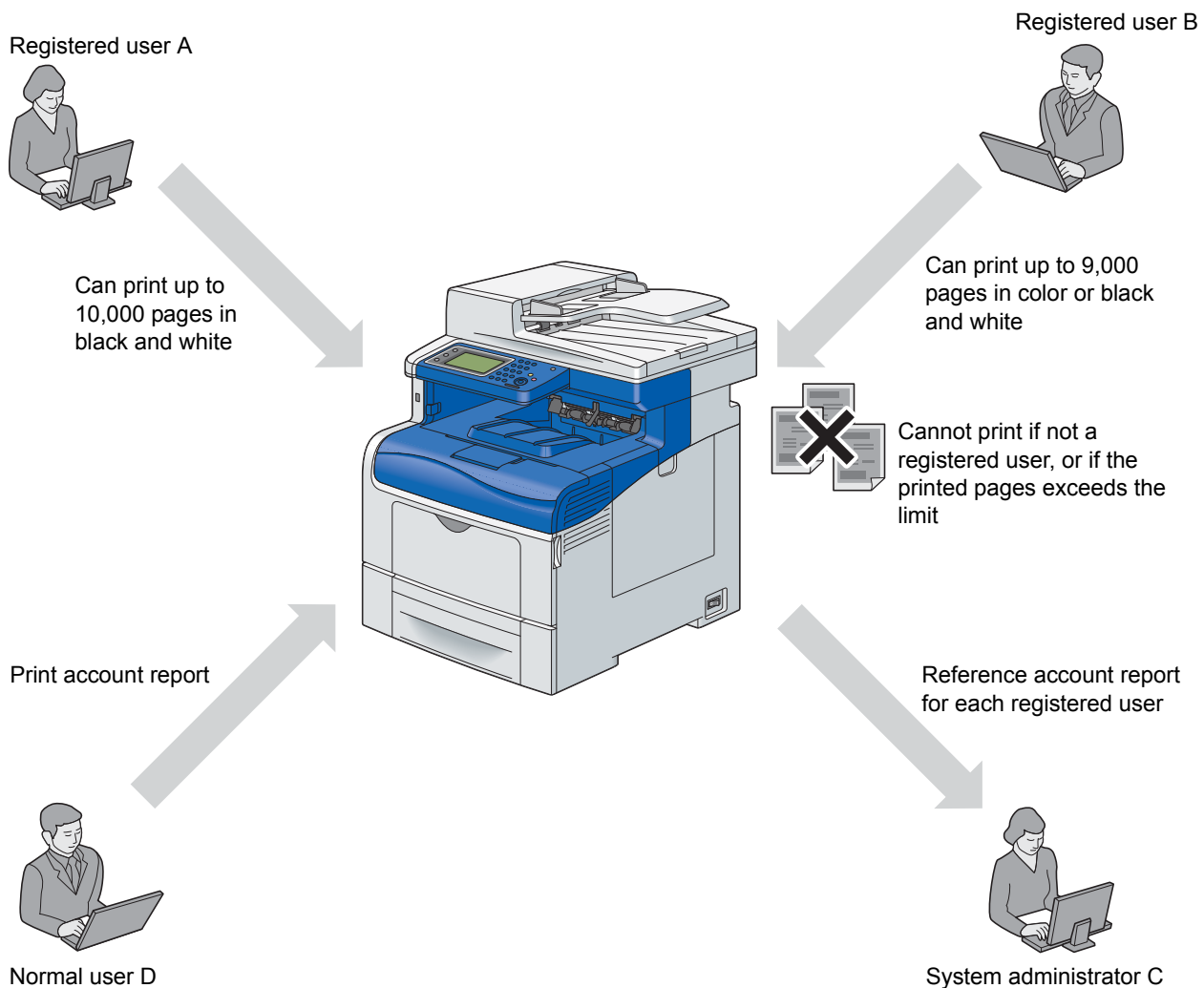
NOTE:

- You can configure the printer's Auditron settings with CentreWare Internet Services. For more information, refer to the online Help of CentreWare Internet Services.
- To print using Auditron, you need to set the print driver. For more information, refer to the Help of the driver.

■ Checking Status of Print Data

This section includes:

-
-

Checking Status (Windows Only)

Printer information and status can be checked with SimpleMonitor. By default, the **Status Monitor** window launches when printing and an error occurs. To display the **Status Monitor** window manually, double-click the SimpleMonitor printer icon ▤ on the taskbar at the bottom right of the screen. From the displayed window, click the name of the desired printer listed.

For more information about SimpleMonitor, see Help: The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example:

1   Click **Start → All Programs**.

2   Select **Fuji Xerox**.

3   Select **SimpleMonitor for Asia-Pacific**.

4   Select **SimpleMonitor Help**.

See also:
-

Checking Status in CentreWare Internet Services (Windows & Mac OS X)

You can check the status of the print job sent to the printer at the **Jobs** tab of CentreWare Internet Services.

See also:
-

■ Printing a Report Page

You can print a various types of reports and lists. For details on each report and list, see .

Taking the System Settings page as an example, this section describes how to print a report page.

Printing a System Settings Page

To verify detailed printer settings, print a System Settings page. A printed System Settings page also allows you to verify whether or not options have been installed properly.

See also:
-

1   Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2   Select `Report / List`.

3   Select `System Settings`.

4   Select `Print`.

5   The System Settings page is printed.

■ Printer Settings

You can select menu items and corresponding values from the operator panel.

When you first browse through the menus from the operator panel, you see a list of menu items. The values displayed on the right of each menu item are the factory default and original system settings.

NOTE:
• Factory defaults may vary for different regions.

When you select a new value from the operator panel, the value selected is highlighted and is displayed on the right of the menu item in the previous screen to identify it as the current user setting.

These settings are active until new ones are selected or the factory defaults are restored.

To select a new value as a setting:

1   Press the 🛈 (**System**) button.

2   Select the `Tools` tab, and then select the desired menu.

3   Select the desired menu and menu item.
   • If the selection is a menu, the menu is opened and the list of menu items appears.
   • If the selection is a menu item, the list of setting values appears. (The current user setting is highlighted.)
   A value can be:
   • A phrase or word to describe a setting
   • A numerical value that can be changed
   • An On or Off setting

4   Select the desired value.
   The selected value is highlighted.

   NOTE:
   • Some menu items require you to use the screen keyboard or the number pad to enter the value.

5   Select `OK`.

6   Select the ⬅ button to return to the previous menu.
   To continue setting other items, select the desired menu. To quit setting new values, select the ⬅ button.

Driver settings may have precedence over the settings made on the operator panel.

Printing With Web Services on Devices (WSD)

This section provides information for network printing with WSD, the new Microsoft protocol for Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows 7.

NOTE:
• WSD stands for Web Services on Devices.

This section includes:

■ Adding Roles of Print Services

When you use Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2, you need to add the roles of print services to the Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2 client.

• For Windows Server 2008:

1 Click **Start** → **Administrative Tools** → **Server Manager**.

2 Select **Add Roles** from the **Action** menu.

3 Select the **Print Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window in the **Add Roles Wizard**, and then click **Next**.

4 Click **Next**.

5 Select the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.

6 Click **Install**.

• For Windows Server 2008 R2:

1 Click **Start** → **Administrative Tools** → **Server Manager**.

2 Select **Add Roles** from the **Action** menu.

3 Select the **Print and Document Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window in the **Add Roles Wizard**, and then click **Next**.

4 Click **Next**.

5 Select the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.

6 Click **Install**.

■ Printer Setup

You can install your new printer on the network using the *Driver CD Kit* that shipped with your printer, or using Microsoft Windows' **Add Printer** wizard. The following procedure uses the PCL 6 driver as an example.

Installing a Print Driver Using the Add Printer Wizard

1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers** (**Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers** for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008).

2 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.

3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.

4 In the list of available printers, select the one you want to use, and then click **Next**.

   NOTE:
   • In the list of available printers, the WSD printer is displayed in the form of **http://**IP address**/ws/**.
   • If no WSD printer is displayed in the list, enter the printer's IP address manually to create a WSD printer. To enter the printer's IP address manually, follow the instructions below.
     For Windows Server 2008 R2, to create a WSD printer, you must be a member of Administrators group.
       1 Click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
       2 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or hostname** and click **Next**.
       3 Select **Web Services Device** from **Device type**.
       4 Enter the printer's IP address in **Hostname or IP address** and click **Next**.
   • Before installing the driver using the **Add Printer** wizard on Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows 7, perform one of the following:
     - Establish the Internet connection so that Windows Update can scan your computer.
     - Add the print driver to your computer.

5 If prompted, install the print driver on your computer. If you are prompted for an administrator password or confirmation, enter the password or provide confirmation.

6 Complete the additional steps in the wizard, and then click **Finish**.

7 Configure the option settings and print a test page to verify print installation.

   a Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers** (**Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers** for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008).

   b Right-click the printer you just created, and then click **Printer properties** (**Properties** for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008).

     On the **Configuration** tab, click **Installable Options** to configure the option settings, and then click **Apply**.

   c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**. When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

Using Digital Certificates

The authentication feature using digital certificates upgrades security when sending print data or setting data.

This section describes how to manage digital certificates.

NOTE:

- For information about digital certificate error, see "Understanding Printer Messages" on page 400 and "Digital Certificate Problem" on page 396.

The following is a typical setup flow for using digital certificates.

Prepare to manage digital certificates.
- Change the Encryption Setting of the hard disk unit
- Set HTTPS Communication

Import and set digital certificates.
- Import a Digital Certificate
- Set a Digital Certificate
- Confirm the Settings of a Digital Certificate

Set various security features using digital certificates.

■ Managing Certificates

This section describes how to manage digital certificates.

This section includes:

NOTE:

- The external certificate management described in this section is enabled only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and `Data Encryption` is set to `On`.

Preparing to Manage Certificates

Before managing digital certificates, the following settings must be applied.

• Changing the Encryption Setting of the Hard Disk Unit

Some items are effective only when encryption of the optional hard disk unit is set to On. Change the encryption setting to On and set a key that is required to encrypt from the operator panel, if necessary.

IMPORTANT:
- All files stored on the optional hard disk unit are cleared when changing the encryption setting.

NOTE:
- You can enter only characters from 0 to 9, a to z, A to Z, and NULL values for encryption key.

1 Press the `i` (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.

3 Select `Secure Settings`.

4 Select `Data Encryption`.

5 Select `Encryption`.

6 Select `On`, and then select `OK`.

7 Use the screen keyboard or the number pad to enter the passphrase for the encryption key, and then select `OK`.

8 The `Encryption` (`All stored documents will be deleted. Are you sure?`) screen appears.

When you confirm that all stored documents will be deleted to change the encryption setting, select `Yes, Delete` to change the setting.

When you quit changing encryption setting, select `No, Cancel`.

• Setting HTTPS Communication

Before managing certificates, set HTTPS communication with a self-signed certificate using CentreWare Internet Services.

NOTE:
- Set HTTPS communication after changing the `Data Encryption` setting to `On`.

1 Launch your web browser.

2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.

The printer's web page appears.

3 Click the **Properties** tab.

4 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.

5 Click **Generate Self-Signed Certificate** of **Machine Digital Certificate**.

If user name and password are required, enter the correct user name and password.

NOTE:
- The default user name is "11111", and the default password is "x-admin".

The **Create New Certificate** page is displayed.

6   Select the public key method from the list of **Public Key Method**.

7   Select the size of public key from the list of **Public Key Size**.

8   Confirm the issuer of SSL self-signed certificate.

9   Specify the validity period of the certificate in **Validity**.

10   Click **Generate Signed Certificate**.

11   When **Settings have been changed. Restart system for new settings to take effect.** is displayed, click **Restart Printer** to restart the printer.

12   Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and press the **Enter** key.

> **NOTE:**
> - To access CentreWare Internet Services when data encryption is enabled, enter "https" before its address instead of "http".
> Example: https://192.168.1.100/

The printer's web page appears.

13   Repeat steps 3 to 4 to display the **SSL/TLS Server Communication** page.

14   Check that **Enabled** for **SSL/TLS Server Communication** is selected.

Importing a Digital Certificate

IMPORTANT:
- Before importing a certificate file, back up the certificate file.

NOTE:
- To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates" on page 174.
- Be sure to import the certificate with Internet Explorer®.
- After importing a PKCS#12 format certificate, the secret key is not exported even if you execute exporting.

1   Launch your web browser.

2   Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.

> **NOTE:**
> - To access CentreWare Internet Services when data encryption is enabled, enter "https" before its address instead of "http".
> Example: https://192.168.1.100/

The printer's web page appears.

3   Click the **Properties** tab.

4   In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.

5   Click **Upload Signed Certificate** of **Machine Digital Certificate**.

The **Upload Signed Certificate** page is displayed.

> **NOTE:**
> - The **Upload Signed Certificate** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and `Data Encryption` is set to `On`.

6 Enter a password corresponding to the certificate file to be imported.

7 Re-enter the password again to confirm it.

8 Click **Browse** of **File Name**, and select the file to be imported.

9 Click **Import** to import the certificate.

Setting a Digital Certificate

NOTE:
* To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates" on page 174.

1 Launch your web browser.

2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.

> **NOTE:**
> * To access CentreWare Internet Services when data encryption is enabled, enter "https" before its address instead of "http".
> Example: https://192.168.1.100/

The printer's web page appears.

3 Click the **Properties** tab.

4 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.

5 Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

> **NOTE:**
> * The **Certificate Management** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and `Data Encryption` is set to `On`.

6 When setting a Wireless LAN (Server) certificate, select **Trusted Certificate Authorities** within **Category**. When setting a certificate of SSL Server, SSL Client, IPsec, or Wireless LAN (Client), select **Local Device**.

7 Select the purpose of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.

8 Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.

> **NOTE:**
> * If the list includes more than 20 certificates, click **Next** to display the next page.

9 Select the certificate to associate. At this time, confirm that **Validity** of the certificate selected is set to **Valid**.

10 Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.

11 Confirm the content, and click **Use this certificate** at the upper-right corner.

Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate

NOTE:
- To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates" on page 174.

1 Launch your web browser.

2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.

   NOTE:
   - To access CentreWare Internet Services when data encryption is enabled, enter "https" before its address instead of "http".
     Example: https://192.168.1.100/

   The printer's web page appears.

3 Click the **Properties** tab.

4 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.

5 Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

   NOTE:
   - The **Certificate Management** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and `Data Encryption` is set to `On`.

6 Select the category from the **Category** list.

7 Select the purpose of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.

8 Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.

   NOTE:
   - If the list includes more than 20 certificates, click **Next** to display the next page.

9 The certificate displayed with an asterisk as "***Valid**" in the **Validity** column is the certificate associated with the purpose of use and actually used.

Deleting a Digital Certificate

NOTE:
- To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates" on page 174.

1 Launch your web browser.

2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.

   NOTE:
   - To access CentreWare Internet Services when data encryption is enabled, enter "https" before its address instead of "http".
     Example: https://192.168.1.100/

   The printer's web page appears.

3 Click the **Properties** tab.

4 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.

5 Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

   NOTE:
   - The **Certificate Management** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and `Data Encryption` is set to `On`.

6 Select the category from the **Category** list.

7 Select the purpose of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.

8 Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.

> **NOTE:**
> • If the list includes more than 20 certificates, click **Next** to display the next page.

9 Select the certificate to be deleted.

10 Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.

11 To delete the selected certificate, click **Delete** at the upper-right corner.

12 Click **Delete**.

> **NOTE:**
> • When a certificate is deleted, the features associated with the deleted certificate are disabled. To delete a certificate being used, either disable the feature in advance or switch the association to another certificate, and then switch to another operation mode if possible before deleting the certificate.
>   - For an SSL Server, switch to another certificate such as a self-signed certificate.
>   - For an SSL Client, disable the LDAP-SSL/TLS and IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS) feature.
>   - For IPsec, change the IKE setting to Preshared Key or disable the feature.
>   - For Wireless LAN, change the Wireless Security setting to other than WPA-Enterprise before deleting the certificate.

Exporting a Digital Certificate

NOTE:
- To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see .
- Since the secret key is not exported, an imported PKCS#12 format certificate can be exported only as a PKCS#7 certificate.

1 Launch your web browser.

2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.

> **NOTE:**
> • To access CentreWare Internet Services when data encryption is enabled, enter "https" before its address instead of "http".
> Example: https://192.168.1.100/

The printer's web page appears.

3 Click the **Properties** tab.

4 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.

5 Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

> **NOTE:**
> • The **Certificate Management** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and `Data Encryption` is set to `On`.

6 Select the category from the **Category** list.

7 Select the purpose of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.

8 Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.

> **NOTE:**
> • If the list includes more than 20 certificates, click **Next** to display the next page.

9 Select the certificate to be exported.

10 Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.

11 To export the selected certificate, click **Export this certificate**.

■ Setting the Features

You can set various security features using digital certificates.

This section includes:

Setting the Certificate in the IPsec Digital Signature Mode

NOTE:

- To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates" on page 174.

1 Import the certificate to be used with IPsec.

   See also:
   - "Importing a Digital Certificate" on page 176

2 Set the certificate to be used with IPsec.

   See also:
   - "Setting a Digital Certificate" on page 177

3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly in IPsec.

   See also:
   - "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate" on page 178

4 Launch CentreWare Internet Services.

5 Click the **Properties** tab.

6 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **IP sec**.

7 Select the **Enabled** check box for **Protocol**.

8 Select **Digital Signature** from the **IKE Authentication Method** list.

9 Set each item, as necessary.

10 Click **Apply**.

11 After restarting the printer, IPsec communication using digital signatures is enabled. You can execute IPsec communication (Digital Signature mode) between the printer and the network device (such as computer) on which the certificate and IPsec are set identically as on this device.

Setting the SSL-use Server Certificate (HTTP/IPP)

NOTE:

- To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates" on page 174.

1 Import the certificate to be used with the SSL-use server.

> **See also:**
> - "Importing a Digital Certificate" on page 176

2 Set the certificate to be used with the SSL-use server.

> **See also:**
> - "Setting a Digital Certificate" on page 177

3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly.

> **See also:**
> - "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate" on page 178
>
> **NOTE:**
> - Confirm whether the newly set certificate, not the self-signed certificate, is associated.

4 After restarting the printer, the certificate set as described above is used as the server certificate when executing communication with HTTP/IPP-SSL/TLS.

Setting LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication

NOTE:

- This setting is available only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and `Data Encryption` is set to `On`.

1 Launch CentreWare Internet Services.

2 Click the **Properties** tab.

3 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.

4 Select the **Enabled** check box for **LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication**.

5 Click **Apply**.

6 After restarting the printer, **LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication** is enabled.

NOTE:

- When executing the certificate validity of the server and the presentation of the client certificate, see "Setting Server Certificate Verification for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication" on page 182 and "Setting Client Certificate for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication" on page 182.

Setting Server Certificate Verification for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication

NOTE:

- This setting is available only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and `Data Encryption` is set to `On`.
- This feature is enabled only when the **Enabled** check box for **LDAP - SSL/TLS Communication** is selected.

1 Import the root certificate (including intermediate certificate) for the LDAP server certificate.

> **See also:**
> - "Importing a Digital Certificate" on page 176

> **NOTE:**
> - In the verification of a certificate of the connected server, to automatically search for an imported certificate and verify the path, the certificate does not need to be associated.

2 Confirm whether the root certificate is correctly imported to the LDAP server.

> **See also:**
> - "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate" on page 178

3 Launch CentreWare Internet Services.

4 Click the **Properties** tab.

5 In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.

6 Select the **Enabled** check box for **Verify Remote Server Certificate**.

7 Click **Apply**.

8 After restarting the printer, the certificate presented by the LDAP server is verified when LDAP-SSL/TLS communication starts with the LDAP server.

NOTE:

- When the result of verification is NG, communication is not established and an error results.

Setting Client Certificate for LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication

NOTE:

- To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates" on page 174.
- This feature is enabled only when the **Enabled** check box for **LDAP - SSL/TLS Communication** is selected.

1 Import a certificate to be used with SSL Client.

> **See also:**
> - "Importing a Digital Certificate" on page 176

2 Set a certificate to be used with SSL Client.

> **See also:**
> - "Setting a Digital Certificate" on page 177

3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly.

> **See also:**
> - "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate" on page 178

4 After restarting the printer, the LDAP client certificate is presented when LDAP-SSL/TLS communication with the LDAP server starts. When the LDAP server is set to require a client certificate, the client certificate provided by the printer is verified by the LDAP server.

Setting for Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise (EAP-TLS)

NOTE:

- To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates" on page 174.
- WPA-Enterprise is available only when infrastructure is selected as the network type.
- Be sure to import the certificate with Internet Explorer.
- After importing a PKCS#12 format certificate, the secret key is not exported even if you execute exporting.

1 Import the certificate to be used with Wireless LAN (server or root certificate).

   See also:
   - "Importing a Digital Certificate" on page 176

2 Set the digital certificate for Wireless LAN (server or root certificate).

   a Launch CentreWare Internet Services.

   b Click the **Properties** tab.

   c In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.

   d Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

   NOTE:
   - The **Certificate Management** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and `Data Encryption` is set to `On`.

   e Select **Trusted Certificate Authorities** within **Category**.

   f Select **Wireless LAN (Server)** from the **Certificate Purpose** list.

   g From **Certificate Order**, select how the certificates are sorted in **Certificate List**. This setting is not necessary if you do not need to specify the order for the certificates.

   h Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.

   i Select the certificate to associate. At this time, confirm that **Validity** of the certificate selected is set to **Valid**.

   j Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.

   k Confirm the content, and click **Use this certificate** at the upper-right corner.

3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly.

   See also:
   - "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate" on page 178

4 Import the certificate to be used with Wireless LAN (client or client certificate).

   See also:
   - "Importing a Digital Certificate" on page 176

5 Set the digital certificate for Wireless LAN (client or client certificate).

   a Launch CentreWare Internet Services.

   b Click the **Properties** tab.

   c In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.

   d Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

   NOTE:
   - The **Certificate Management** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and `Data Encryption` is set to `On`.

    e   Select **Local Device** within **Category**.

    f   Select **Wireless LAN (Client)** from the **Certificate Purpose** list.

    g   From **Certificate Order**, select how the certificates are sorted in **Certificate List**. This setting is not necessary if you do not need to specify the order for the certificates.

    h   Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.

    i   Select the certificate to associate. At this time, confirm that **Validity** of the certificate selected is set to **Valid**.

    j   Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.

    k   Confirm the content, and click **Use this certificate** at the upper-right corner.

6   Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly.

    See also:

    • "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate" on page 178

7   Set WPA-Enterprise for EAP-TLS.

    a   Launch CentreWare Internet Services.

    b   Click the **Properties** tab.

    c   In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Port Settings** and select **Wireless**.

    NOTE:

    • This setting is available only when the optional wireless printer adapter is installed.

    d   Select either of the following from the **Encryption** list of **Security Settings**.

    • **WPA-Enterprise-AES/WPA2-Enterprise-AES**

    • **WPA-Enterprise-TKIP**

    NOTE:

    • **WPA-Enterprise-AES/WPA2-Enterprise-AES** or **WPA-Enterprise-TKIP** becomes available only when the following steps are set correctly.
      - Importing a Digital Certificate
      - Setting a Digital Certificate
      - Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate

    e   Set **EAP-Identity** of **WPA-Enterprise**.

    f   Select **EAP-TLS** from the **Authentication Method** list of **WPA-Enterprise**.

8   Click **Apply**.

Setting for Wireless LAN WPA-Enterprise (PEAPV0-MS-CHAPV2, EAP-TTLS PAP, EAP-TTLS CHAP)

NOTE:

• To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates" on page 174.

• WPA-Enterprise is available only when infrastructure is selected as the network type.

• Be sure to import the certificate with Internet Explorer.

• After importing a PKCS#12 format certificate, the secret key is not exported even if you execute exporting.

1   Import the certificate to be used with Wireless LAN (server or root certificate).

    See also:

    • "Importing a Digital Certificate" on page 176

2   Set the digital certificate for Wireless LAN (server or root certificate).

    a   Launch CentreWare Internet Services.

    b   Click the **Properties** tab.

    c In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.

    d Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

    NOTE:

    • The **Certificate Management** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and `Data Encryption` is set to `On`.

    e Select **Trusted Certificate Authorities** within **Category**.

    f Select the purpose of use from the **Certificate Purpose** list.

    g Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.

    h Select the certificate to associate. At this time, confirm that **Validity** of the certificate selected is set to **Valid**.

    i Click **Certificate Details** to display the **Certificate Details** page.

    j Confirm the content, and click **Use this certificate** at the upper-right corner.

3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly.

    a Launch CentreWare Internet Services.

    b Click the **Properties** tab.

    c In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Security** and select **SSL/TLS Server Communication**.

    d Click **Certificate Management** to display the **Certificate Management** page.

    NOTE:

    • The **Certificate Management** button is displayed only when the optional hard disk unit is installed and `Data Encryption` is set to `On`.

    e Select the category from the **Category** list.

    f Select **Wireless LAN (Server)** from the **Certificate Purpose** list.

    g From **Certificate Order**, select how the certificates are sorted in **Certificate List**. This setting is not necessary if you do not need to specify the order for the certificates.

    h Click **Display the List** to display the **Certificate List** page.

    i The certificate displayed with an asterisk as "***Valid**" in the **Validity** column is the certificate associated with the use purpose and actually used.

4 Set WPA-Enterprise for PEAPV0-MS-CHAPV2, EAP-TTLS PAP, or EAP-TTLS CHAP.

    a Launch CentreWare Internet Services.

    b Click the **Properties** tab.

    c In the left navigation panel, scroll down to **Port Settings** and select **Wireless**.

    NOTE:

    • This setting is available only when the optional wireless printer adapter is installed.

    d Select either of the following from the **Encryption** list of **Security Settings**.

    • **WPA-Enterprise-AES/WPA2-Enterprise-AES**

    • **WPA-Enterprise-TKIP**

    NOTE:

    • **WPA-Enterprise-AES/WPA2-Enterprise-AES** or **WPA-Enterprise-TKIP** becomes available only when the following steps are set correctly.
       - Importing a Digital Certificate
       - Setting a Digital Certificate
       - Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate

    e Set **EAP-Identity**, **Login Name**, and **Password** of **WPA-Enterprise**.

    f Select either of the following from the **Authentication Method** list of **WPA-Enterprise**:

    • **PEAPV0 MS-CHAPV2**

    • **EAP-TTLS PAP**

    • **EAP-TTLS CHAP**

    g Click **Apply**.

Setting Client Certificate for IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS)

NOTE:

- To manage digital certificates, you must first set encryption of the optional hard disk unit to On, and then set up HTTPS communication. For details, see "Preparing to Manage Certificates" on page 174.
- This feature is enabled only when Enable is set for IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS).

1 Import a certificate to be used with SSL Client.

See also:

- "Importing a Digital Certificate" on page 176

2 Set a certificate to be used with SSL Client.

See also:

- "Setting a Digital Certificate" on page 177

3 Confirm whether the certificate is set correctly.

See also:

- "Confirming the Settings of a Digital Certificate" on page 178

4 After restarting the printer, the IEEE 802.1x (EAP-TLS) certificate is presented when IEEE 802.1x communication with the RADIUS server starts. When the RADIUS server is set to require a client certificate, the client certificate provided by the printer is verified by the RADIUS server.

6

Copying

NOTE:
- If the `Service Lock` setting for `Copy` is set to `Password Locked`, you need to enter the four digit passcode to use the copy function. If the `Service Lock` setting for `Copy` is set to `Disable`, the copy function is disabled and the menu is not displayed on the screen. For details, see "Service Lock" on page 317.

This chapter includes:

Loading Print Media for Copying

The instructions for loading print media are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying.

See also:

Selecting Paper Tray

After loading the print media for copy output, select the desired paper tray to be used for the copy job.

To select the tray:

1 Press the ⌂ (**Services**) button.

2 Select `Copy`.

3 Select `Select Tray`.

4 Select the desired tray, and then select `OK`.

You can select `Bypass Tray`, `Tray1`, or `Tray2`*.

* `Tray2` is only available when the optional 550 sheet feeder (Tray2) is installed.

Preparing a Document

You can use the document glass or the duplex automatic document feeder (DADF) to load an original document for copying, scanning, and sending a fax. You can load up to 50 sheets of 75 gsm (20 lb) documents for one job using the DADF or one sheet at a time using the document glass.

IMPORTANT:

- Avoid loading documents that are smaller than 139.7 mm by 139.7 mm (5.5 in. by 5.5 in.) or larger than 215.9 mm by 355.6 mm (8.5 in. by 14 in.), different sizes or weights together, or booklets, pamphlets, transparencies, or documents having other unusual characteristics in the DADF.
- Carbon-paper or carbon-backed paper, coated paper, onion skin or thin paper, wrinkled or creased paper, curled or rolled paper, torn paper, photographs, or transparencies cannot be used in the DADF.
- Do not use the documents with staples, paper clips or exposed to adhesives or solvent based materials such as glue, ink and correcting fluid in the DADF.
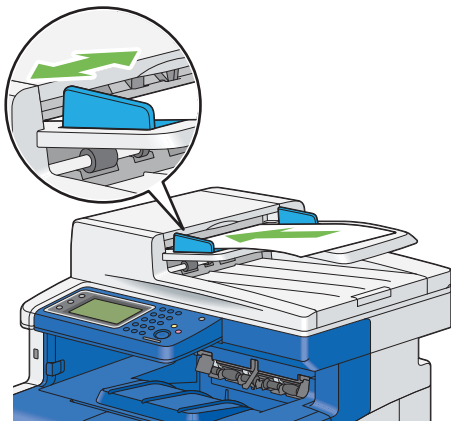
NOTE:

- To get the best scan quality, especially for color or gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the DADF.

Making Copies From the Document Glass

NOTE:

- A computer connection is not required for copying.
- Remove any documents from the DADF before copying from the document glass.
- Contaminants on the document glass may cause black spots on the copy output. For best results, clean the document glass before use. For more information, see also "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 410.

To make a copy from the document glass:

1 Lift and open the document cover.
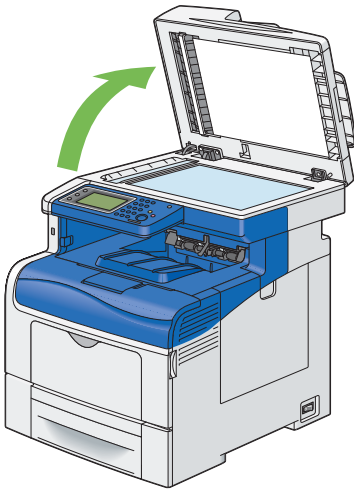
2 Place the document face down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the glass.

> ⚠ **CAUTION:**
>
> - **Do not apply excessive force to hold thick document on the document glass. It may break the glass and cause injuries.**
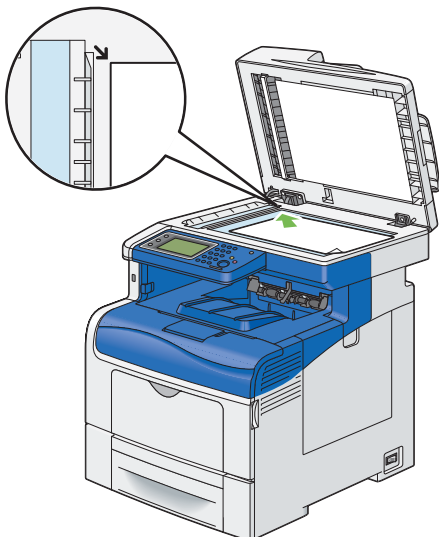
3 Close the document cover.

> **IMPORTANT:**
> • Leaving the document cover open while copying may affect the copy quality and increase the toner consumption.

> **NOTE:**
> • If you are copying a page from a book or magazine, lift the cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 30 mm, start copying with the document cover open.

4 Press the ⌂ (**Services**) button.

To simply make a copy without changing the default copy settings, proceed to step 8.

5 Select `Copy`.

6 Customize the copy settings including copy size, contrast, and image quality.

> **See also:**
> • "Setting Copy Options" on page 194

To clear the option settings, press the **CA** (**Clear All**) button.

> **NOTE:**
> • The copy options automatically return to their default status after the auto clear timer is expired.

7 Enter the number of copies from 1 to 99 using the number pad.

8 Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

NOTE:

• Press the ▽ (**Stop**) button to cancel a copy job at any time while scanning and printing a document.

Making Copies From the DADF

IMPORTANT:

- Do not load more than 50 sheets into the DADF or allow more than 50 sheets to be fed to the document output tray. The document output tray should be emptied before it exceeds 50 sheets or your original documents may be damaged.

NOTE:

- To get the best scan quality, especially for gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the DADF.
- A computer connection is not required for copying.
- You cannot load the following documents in the DADF. Be sure to place them on the document glass.

	Curled originals		Pre-punched paper
	Lightweight originals		Folded, creased or torn originals
	Cut and paste originals		Carbon paper

To make a copy from the DADF:

1 Load the documents face up on the DADF with top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the correct document size.

> **NOTE:**
> - Ensure that you use the document guides before copying a legal-size document.

2 Press the ⌂ (**Services**) button.

To simply make a copy without changing the default copy settings, proceed to step 6.

3 Select Copy.

4 Customize the copy settings including copy size, contrast, and image quality.

> **See also:**
> - "Setting Copy Options" on page 194

To clear the settings, use the **CA** (**Clear All**) button.

> **NOTE:**
> The copy options automatically return to their default status after the auto clear timer is expired.

5 Enter the number of copies from 1 to 99 using the number pad.

6 Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

NOTE:

- Press the ⊘ (**Stop**) button to cancel a copy job at any time while scanning and printing a document.

Setting Copy Options

Set the following options for the current copy job before pressing the ⬦ (**Start**) button to begin copying.

For details about making copies, see "Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 191 and "Making Copies From the DADF" on page 193.

NOTE:
- The copy options automatically return to their default status after auto clear timer is expired.

This section includes:

Options on each tab are below:

- `Copy` tab
  - "Output Color" on page 195
  - "Select Tray" on page 195
  - "Lighten / Darken" on page 195
  - "2 Sided Copying" on page 196
- `Quality` tab
  - "Original Type" on page 196
  - "Sharpness" on page 196
  - "Saturation" on page 197
  - "Auto Background Suppression" on page 197
- `Output` tab
  - "Collation" on page 197
  - "Reduce / Enlarge" on page 198
  - "Original Size" on page 199
  - "Pages Per Side" on page 200
  - "Edge Erase" on page 201

■ Output Color

To select the mode for color or black and white copying.

1 Select `Output Color`.

2 Select `Full Color` or `Black & White`, and then select `OK`.

NOTE:
- Color copy is secured with a passcode if the `Service Lock` setting for `Copy` is set to `On` (`Color Password Locked`). If you set `Output Color` to `Full Color` and the `Service Lock` setting for `Copy` to `On` (`Color Password Locked`), you will need to enter the four digit passcode after pressing the ◇ (**Start**) button.

■ Select Tray

To select a tray.

1 Select `Select Tray`.

2 Select the desired setting, and then select `OK`.

   NOTE:
   - Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Bypass Tray	The paper is fed from the bypass tray.
Tray 1*	The paper is fed from the standard 550 sheet tray.
Tray 2	The paper is fed from the optional 550 sheet feeder.

   NOTE:
   - `Tray 2` is only available when the optional 550 sheet feeder is installed.
   - When `Any` is displayed as the paper size and type in the bypass tray, you can select the paper size and type from this menu.

■ Lighten / Darken

To adjust the contrast to make the copy lighter or darker than the original.

1 Select `Lighten / Darken`.

2 Select the desired level on the `Lighten / Darken` bar, and then select `OK`.

   You can select a contrast level from seven levels between `Darken` and `Lighten`.

   Selecting a cell on the left side of the bar makes the document contrast darker, and selecting a cell on the right side of the bar makes the document contrast lighter.

   NOTE:
   - Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Darken +3	Works well with light documents or faint pencil markings.
Darken +2	
Darken +1	
Normal*	Works well with normal typed or printed documents.
Lighten +1	Works well with dark documents.
Lighten +2	
Lighten +3	

■ 2 Sided Copying

To make duplex copies with the specified binding position.

1 Select `2 Sided Copying`.

2 Select the desired setting, and then select `OK`.

> **NOTE:**
> • Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

1 → 1 Sided*			Select 1-sided or 2-sided and specify binding position for the 2-sided copy.
1 → 2 Sided	**Binding of Output**	**Long Edge Binding**	
		Short Edge Binding	
2 → 1 Sided	**Binding of Original**	**Long Edge Binding**	
2 → 2 Sided		**Short Edge Binding**	

When you are using the document glass and it is set to `1→2 Sided` or `2→2 Sided`, the display prompts you for another page after pressing the ◇ (**Start**) button.

> **a** If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then select `Continue` or press the ◇ (**Start**) button.
>
> **b** If you finish copying, select `Print Now`.

> **NOTE:**
> • When you use the DADF to copy both sides of a document, the printed position of the front and back of the document may differ if the size in the document size setting and the size of the document do not match. In this case, set `Document Size` to the same size as the document.

■ Original Type

To select the copy image quality.

1 Select the `Quality` tab, and then select `Original Type`.

2 Select the desired setting, and then select `OK`.

> **NOTE:**
> • Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Photo & Text*	Used for documents with photos and text.
Text	Used for documents with text.
Photo	Used for documents with photos.

■ Sharpness

To adjust the sharpness to make the copy image sharper or softer than the original.

1 Select the `Quality` tab, and then select `Sharpness`.

2 Select the desired setting, and then select `OK`.

> **NOTE:**
> • Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Sharpen	Makes the copy image sharper than the original.
Normal*	The color clarity of the image is the same as the original.
Soften	Makes the copy image softer than the original.

■ Saturation

To adjust the amount of colors of the copy to make the colors darker or lighter than the original.

1 Select the `Quality` tab, and then select `Saturation`.

2 Select the desired setting, and then select `OK`.

> **NOTE:**
> • Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Vivid	Makes the color of the copy more vivid.
Normal*	The color saturation is the same as the original.
Pastel	Makes the color of the copy less vivid.

■ Auto Background Suppression

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

1 Select the `Quality` tab, and then select `Auto Background Suppression`.

2 Select `On`, and then select `OK`.

■ Collation

To sort the copy output. For example, if you make two copies of three page documents, one complete three page document will be printed followed by the second complete document.

> **NOTE:**
> • You can collate more pages when 512MB memory or hard disk unit is installed.
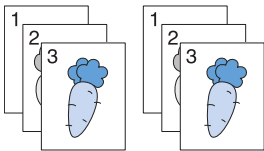
1 Select the `Output` tab, and then select `Collation`.

2 Select the desired setting, and then select `OK`.

> **NOTE:**
> • Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Auto*	Only the documents loaded from the DADF are copied in collated order.
Collated	Copies in collated order.
Uncollated	Does not copy in collated order.

When you are using the document glass and it is set to `Collated`, the display prompts you for another page after pressing the ◇ (**Start**) button.

a If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then select `Continue` or press the ◇ (**Start**) button.

b If you finish copying, select `Print Now`.

■ Reduce / Enlarge

To reduce or enlarge the size of a copied image from 25 to 400% when you copy original documents from the document glass or the DADF.

NOTE:
- When you make a reduced copy, black lines may appear at the bottom of your copy.

1 Select the `Output` tab, and then select `Reduce / Enlarge`.

2 Select the desired setting, and then select `OK`.

• mm series

NOTE:
- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

200%
141% A5 → A4
122% A5 → B5
100%*
81% B5 → A5
70% A4 → A5
50%

• inch series

200%
154%
129% 8.5 x 11" → 8.5 x 14"
100%*
78% 8.5 x 14" → 8.5 x 11"
64%
50%

NOTE:
- You can also specify the value in increments of 1% from 25 to 400 by selecting ⊞ + ⊞ or ⊟ − ⊟ or entering a value using the number pad. See the following table for specific zoom ratios.

Copy / Original	A5	B5	A4
A5	100%	122%	141%
B5	81%	100%	115%
A4	70%	86%	100%

The method to load print media depends on the size and orientation of a print media, see "Loading Print Media in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray and the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder" on page 144 or "Loading Print Media in the Bypass Tray" on page 147.

For print media that can be loaded, see "About Print Media" on page 136.

■ Original Size

To select the default document size.

1 Select the `Output` tab, and then select `Original Size`.

2 Select the desired setting, and then select `OK`.

• mm series

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Auto*
A4 (210 x 297 mm)
A5 (148 x 210 mm)
B5 (182 x 257 mm)
Letter (8.5 x 11")
Folio (8.5 x 13")
Legal (8.5 x 14")
Executive (7.25 x 10.5")

• inch series

Auto*
Letter (8.5 x 11")
Folio (8.5 x 13")
Legal (8.5 x 14")
A4 (210 x 297mm)
A5 (148 x 210mm)
B5 (182 x 257 mm)
Executive (7.25 x 10.5")

■ Pages Per Side

To print two original images to fit onto one sheet of paper.
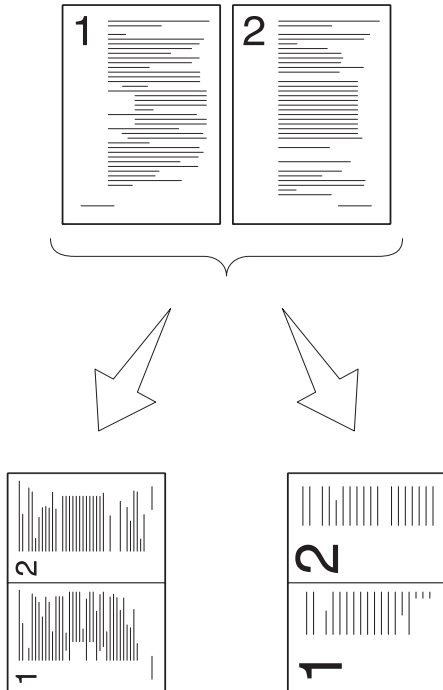
Auto:
Automatically reduces the pages to fit in one page.

Manual:
Reduces the pages in the custom size depending on the setting of the Reduce / Enlarge menu.

1 Select the `Output` tab, and then select `Pages Per Side`.

2 Select the desired setting, and then select `OK`.

NOTE:
- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Off*	Does not perform Pages Per Side printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in `Reduce / Enlarge`.

When you are using the document glass and it is set to `Auto` or `Manual`, the display prompts you for another page after pressing the ◇ (**Start**) button.

   a If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then select `Continue` or press the ◇ (**Start**) button.

   b If you finish copying, select `Print Now`.

■ Edge Erase

To specify the top and bottom margins of the copy.

> **NOTE:**
> • Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

1 Select the `Output` tab.

2 Select ▾ until `Edge Erase` appears, and then select `Edge Erase`.

3 Select − or + , or use the number pad to enter the desired value.

Top / Bottom	4 mm* (0.2 inch*)	Specify the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	0→50 mm (0.0→2.0")	
Left / Right	4 mm* (0.2 inch*)	Specify the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	0→50 mm (0→2.0")	
Middle	0 mm* (0 inch*)	Specify the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	0→50 mm (0→2.0")	

Using the ID Card Copy

You can copy both sides of an ID card on one side of a single sheet of paper in its original size by selecting `ID Card Copy` on the operator panel. This feature helps to show both sides of an ID card in one page in its original size.

To make a copy:

1 Place an ID card face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

2 Press the ⌂ (**Services**) button.

3 Select `ID Card Copy`.

4 Specify the copy settings below as required.
- Output Color
- Select Tray
- Lighten / Darken
- Auto Background Suppression
- Sharpness
- Saturation

5 Press the ◇ (**Stop**) button to begin copying.

After the front side of the ID card is scanned, the display prompts you to turn over the card.

a To scan the back side of the ID card, turn the ID card over and select `Continue`.

b To finish copying, select `Print Now`.

NOTE:
- Color copy is secured with a passcode if the Service Lock setting for `Copy` is set to `On (Color Password)`. If you set `Output Color` to `Full Color` and the Service Lock setting for `Copy` to `On (Color Password)`, you will need to enter the four digit passcode after pressing the ◇ (**Stop**) button.

Changing the Default Settings

The default settings of the Copy menu options such as `Output Color`, `Select Tray`, and `Lighten / Darken` can be set to the most frequently used modes. When you copy a document, the specified default settings are used unless they are changed by using the operator panel.

To create your own default settings:

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab.

3 Select `Default Settings`.

4 Select the desired menu item.

5 Select the desired setting or enter the value using the number pad, and then select `OK`.

6 Repeat steps 4 and 5 as needed.

7 To return to the top level of the System menu, press the **CA** (**Clear All**) button.

Scanning

NOTE:

- If the `Service Lock` setting for a scan function (`E-mail`, `Scan To Network`, `Scan To PC`/`WSD Scan`, `PC Scan`, or `Scan To USB`) is set to `Password Locked`, you need to enter the four digit passcode to use that scan function. If the `Service Lock` setting for a scan function is set to `Disable`, that scan function is disabled and the menu is not displayed on the screen. For details, see "Service Lock" on page 317.

This chapter includes:

Scanning Overview

You can use your printer to turn pictures and text into editable images on your computer.

The printer provides several ways to scan your document. There are two main scanning types. One is operated on the printer side without using the scan driver, and the other is operated on the computer side using a software and the scan driver.

■ Scanning - With scan driver

- Scan and send the scanned document to computer connected via USB cable

  (Supporting USB connection for both Microsoft® Windows® and Mac OS® X using bundled software tool of Express Scan Manager)

  Using the feature of "Scan to PC" on the operator panel of your printer, the scanned image is saved in the location of your computer specified with the Express Scan Manager.

  See "Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to PC" on page 209.

- Scan into a graphic software such as Adobe® Photoshop® using a TWAIN driver

  (Supporting USB and Network connections for both Windows and Mac OS X using a graphic software)

  See "Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver" on page 211.

- Scan into a Microsoft's default program such as Windows Photo Gallery and Microsoft Paint, using a Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver

  (Supporting USB and Network (including WSD) connections on Windows only)

  See "Scanning Using the WIA Driver" on page 212.

  NOTE:
  - WSD stands for Web Services on Devices.

■ Scanning - Without scan driver

- Scan and send the scanned document to a computer connected to a network using WSD

  See "Scanning From the Operator Panel - WSD Scan" on page 210.

- Scan and send the scanned document to computer or server connected to network

  See "Using a Scanner on the Network" on page 215.

- Scan and save the scanned document in a USB storage device

  See "Scanning to a USB Storage Device" on page 236.

- Scan and send the scanned document by e-mail

  See "Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image" on page 238.

The resolution setting to use when you scan an item depends on the item type and how you plan to use the image or document after you scan it into your computer. For the best results, use these recommended settings.

Type	Resolution
Documents	300 dpi black-and-white or 200 dpi grayscale or color
Documents of poor quality or that contain small text	400 dpi black-and-white or 300 dpi grayscale
Photographs and pictures	100–200 dpi color or 200 dpi grayscale
Images for an inkjet printer	150–300 dpi
Images for a high-resolution printer	300–600 dpi

Scanning beyond these recommended resolutions may exceed the capabilities of the application. If you require a resolution above those recommended in the above table, you should reduce the size of the image by previewing (or pre-scan) and cropping before scanning the image.

Installing the Scan Driver

If you plan to import scanned images directly into an application (such as Adobe Photoshop or Microsoft Clip Organizer), or scan images directly to your computer, you must install a scan driver.

This section includes:

■ For Windows

To install the scan driver from the *Driver CD Kit*:

1 Turn off the printer and the computer.

   IMPORTANT:
   - If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

2 Connect the computer and your printer with a USB cable.

   OR

   Connect your printer to a network.

3 Insert the *Driver CD Kit* into your computer to start **Easy Install Navi**.

4 Click **Installing Driver and Software**.

5 Click the **Main** tab, and then select **Scan Driver**.

6 Click **Start**.

7 Follow the on-screen instructions to install the scan driver.

For more information about scanning using USB connection, see "Express Scan Manager" on page 86.

■ For Mac OS X

To install the scan driver from the *Driver CD Kit*:

1 Run the *Driver CD Kit* on the Mac OS X.

2 Open the **MacOSX** folder under the **Contents** folder.

3 Double-click **FX DocuPrint CM405 df.dmg**.

4 Follow the on-screen instructions to install the scan driver.

For more information about scanning using USB connection, see "Express Scan Manager" on page 86.

Scanning to a Computer

This section includes:

■ Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to PC

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

NOTE:
- This feature cannot be used when the printer is connected to a network.
- Ensure that the printer is connected to the computer via the USB cable.
- This feature is supported on both Windows and Mac OS X.

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the duplex automatic document feeder (DADF).

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:
-
-

2 Press the ⌂ (**Services**) button.

3 Select `Scan to`.

4 Select `PC`.

5 Specify scan options such as `Output Color`, `Resolution`, `2 Sided Scanning`, and `File Format` on the `Scan to PC`, `Quality` and `Options` tabs.

6 Press the ◇ (**Start**) button.

The selected application window opens on your computer.

NOTE:
- If the following dialog box appears on your computer, select **DocuPrint CM405 df Express Scan Manager**, and then click **OK**.
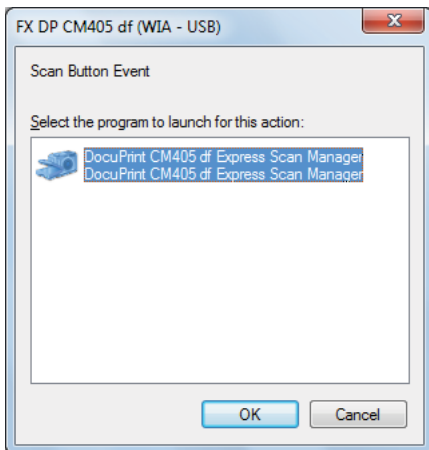
NOTE:
- Once you select the **Always use this program for this action** check box when selecting **DocuPrint CM405 df Express Scan Manager**, the selected application is automatically used without displaying the program selection window.
- You must use Express Scan Manager on your computer to change the settings for scanning. For details, see .
- For Mac OS X, the dialog box for selecting a program is not displayed.

■ Scanning From the Operator Panel - WSD Scan

If the printer is connected to a computer via network using WSD (Web Services on Devices), you can use the WSD Scan function to send scanned images to a computer.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

NOTE:
- To use WSD Scan, you need to setup connection using WSD.
- WSD is supported only on Windows Vista® and Windows 7.

Printer Setup for WSD Scan

Setup the printer and computer for connection using WSD.

• Checking the Printer Setting

To use the WSD Scan function, `WSD Scan` needs to be set to `Enable`. For details, "Protocols" on page 295.

• Setting Up the Computer

For Windows 7:

1   Click **Start** → **Computer** → **Network**.

2   Right-click the icon for the printer, and then click **Install**.
The printer is connected using WSD.

For Windows Vista:

1   Click **Start** → **Network**.

2   Right-click the icon for the printer, and then click **Install**.

3   Click **Continue**.
The printer is connected using WSD.

Procedures for WSD Scan

1   Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the DADF.
OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

> **See also:**
> - "Making Copies From the DADF" on page 193
> - "Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 191

2   Press the ⌂ (**Services**) button.

3   Select `Scan to`.

4   Select `WSD`.

5   Select ▾ until the desired computer you want to send the scan job to appears, and then select that computer.

6   Select `Event`, and specify the type of scan such as `Scan`, `Scan To Print` and `Scan To E-mail`.

7   Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin sending the scanned file.

■ Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver

Your printer supports the TWAIN driver for scanning images. The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

NOTE:

- Ensure that the printer is connected to the computer via the USB cable or to a network.

The following procedure to scan an image uses Clip Organizer as an example.

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- "Making Copies From the DADF" on page 193
- "Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 191

2 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Microsoft Office** → **Microsoft Office 2010 Tools** → **Microsoft Clip Organizer**.

3 Click **File** → **Add Clips to Organizer** → **From Scanner or Camera**.

4 In the **Insert Picture from Scanner or Camera** dialog box, under **Device**, select your device.

5 Click **Custom Insert**.

6 Select your scanning preferences and click **Preview** to display the preview image.

NOTE:

- **Preview** is grayed out and disabled when you select **Document Feeder** from **Scan from**.
- The illustration may vary for different operating systems.
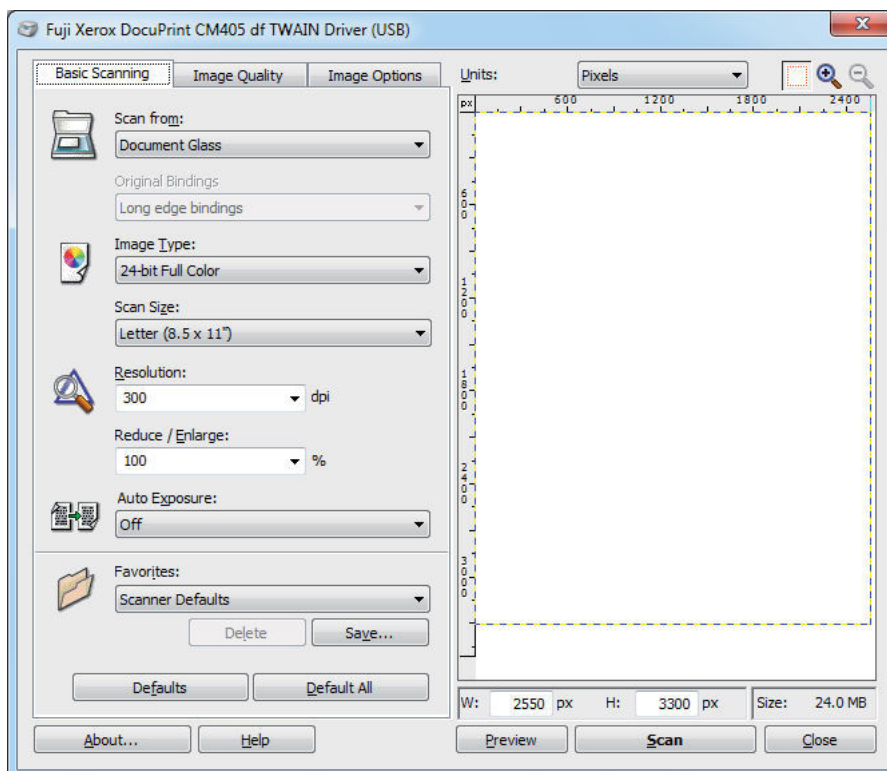
7 Select the desired properties from the **Image Quality** and **Image Options** tabs.

8 Click **Scan** to start scanning.

The scanned image file is generated.

■ Scanning Using the WIA Driver

Your printer also supports the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver for scanning images. WIA is one of the standard components provided by Windows XP and later operating systems and works with digital cameras and scanners. Unlike the TWAIN driver, the WIA driver allows you to scan an image and easily manipulate those images without using additional software.

NOTE:
- Ensure that the printer is connected to the computer via the USB cable or to a network.
- The Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver is supported only on Windows.

To Scan an Image From the Drawing Software

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:
- "Making Copies From the DADF" on page 193
- "Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 191

2 Start the drawing software, such as Paint for Windows.

NOTE:
- When you use Windows Vista, use Windows Photo Gallery instead of Paint.
- When using applications that utilize WIA 2.0, such as **Windows Fax and Scan** on Windows Vista and Windows 7, the **Feeder (Scan both sides)** option can be selected for duplex (two-sided) scanning.

3 Click **Paint** button → **From scanner or camera** (Click **File** → **From Scanner or Camera** for Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008 and Windows Vista).

The **Scan using FX DP CM405 df (WIA - USB)** window appears.

NOTE:
- The illustration may vary for different operating systems.
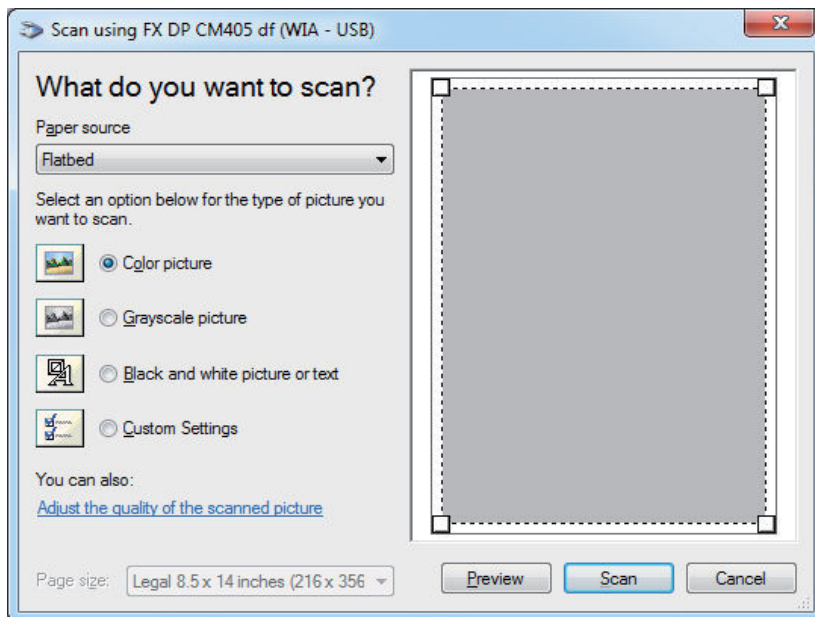
4   Select **Document Feeder** or **Flatbed** in **Paper source**.

NOTE:
- Select **Document Feeder** when you want to scan the document loaded in the DADF. Select **Flatbed** when you want to scan the document loaded on the document glass.

5   Select your scanning preferences and click **Adjust the quality of the scanned picture** to display the **Advanced Properties** dialog box.

6   Select the desired properties including brightness and contrast, and then click **OK**.

7   Click **Scan** to start scanning.

8   Click **Save** from the **Paint** menu.

9   Enter a picture name, and select a file format and destination to save the picture.

To Scan an Image From Control Panel

NOTE:
- This feature is supported on Windows Server 2003 and Windows XP only.

1   Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:
-
-

2   Click **start** → **Control Panel** → **Printers and Other Hardware** → **Scanners and Cameras**.

3   Double-click the scanner icon.

The **Scanner and Camera Wizard** launches.

4   Click **Next** to display the **Choose Scanning Preferences** page.

NOTE:
- The screen image may vary depending on the operating system.
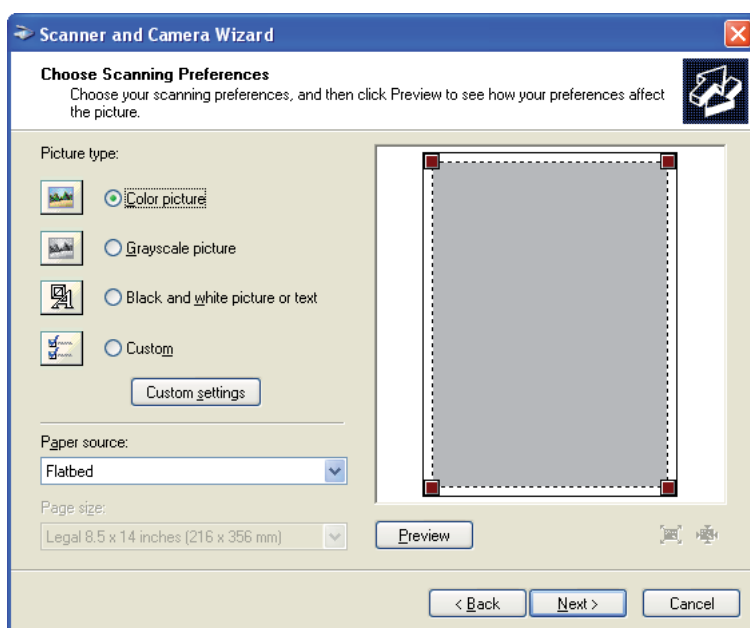
5 Select your desired type of picture, paper source, and paper size, and click **Next**.

6 Enter a picture name, select a file format, and specify the desired location to save the scanned document.

7 Click **Next** to start scanning.

8 Follow the on-screen instructions to edit the picture after it is copied to your computer.

Using a Scanner on the Network

This section includes:

NOTE:
- This feature does not require a network scan driver.

■ Overview

The Scan to Server/Computer feature allows you to scan documents and send the scanned document to a network computer via the FTP or SMB protocol.
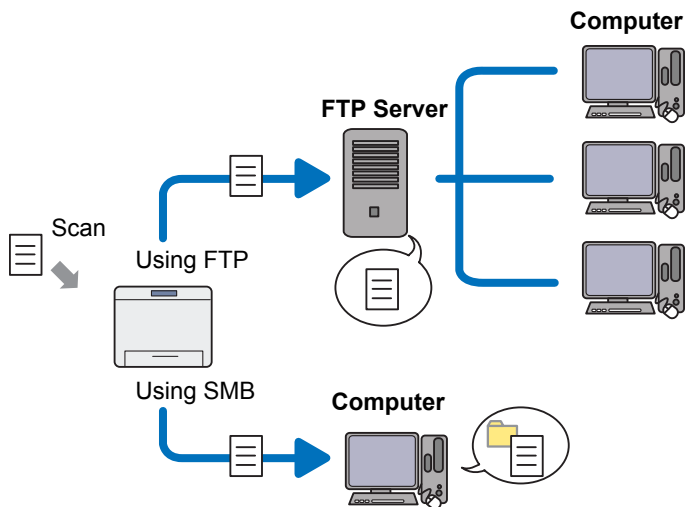
You can select the kind of server and specify a destination to store the scanned document with the CentreWare Internet Services or Address Book Editor.

The following items are required to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature.

- Using SMB

  To transfer data via SMB, your computer must run on one of the following operating systems that includes folder sharing.

  NOTE:
  - Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Mac OS X 10.3/10.4/10.5 support IPv4 only.
  - For Mac OS X, a shared user account is required.

  - Windows Server 2003
  - Windows Server 2008
  - Windows Server 2008 R2
  - Windows XP
  - Windows Vista
  - Windows 7
  - Mac OS X 10.3/10.4/10.5/10.6

- Using FTP

  To transfer data via FTP, one of the following FTP servers and an account to the FTP server (login name and password) are required.

  NOTE:
  - Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows Vista, Mac OS X 10.3/10.4/10.5 support IPv4 only.

  - Windows XP

    FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 5.1
  - Windows Server 2003

    FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 6.0
  - Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008

    FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 7.0
  - Windows 7, Windows Server 2008 R2

    FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 7.5

- Mac OS X 10.3/10.4/10.5/10.6/10.7

  FTP service of Mac OS X

For information on how to configure the FTP service, contact your system administrator.

Follow the procedure below to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature.

• For SMB:

• For FTP:

Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only)

The Scan to Computer/Server feature requires a user login account with a valid and non-empty password for authentication. Confirm a login user name and password.

If you do not use a password for your user login, you need to create a password on your User Login Account with the following procedure.

• For Windows XP:

1 Click **start** → **Control Panel** → **User Accounts**.

2 Click **Change an account**.

3 Select your account.

4 Click **Create a password** and add in a password for your user login account.

• For Windows Server 2003:

1 Click **Start** → **Administrative Tools** → **Computer Management**.

2 Click **Local Users and Groups**.

3 Double-click **Users**.

4 Right-click your account, and then select **Set Password**.

> **NOTE:**
> • When an alert message appears, confirm the message and then click **Proceed**.

5 Add in a password for your user login account.

• For Windows Vista and Windows 7:

1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.

2 Click **User Accounts and Family Safety**.

3 Click **User Accounts**.

4 Click **Create a password for your account** and add in a password for your user login account.

• For Windows Server 2008:

1 Click **Start** → **Administrative Tools** → **Computer Management**.

2 Click **Local Users and Groups**.

3 Double-click **Users**.

4 Right-click your account, and then select **Set Password**.

    NOTE:

      • When an alert message appears, confirm the message and then click **Proceed**.

5 Add in a password for your user login account.

• For Windows Server 2008 R2:

1 Click **Start** → **Administrative Tools** → **Computer Management**.

2 Click **Local Users and Groups**.

3 Double-click **Users**.

4 Right-click your account, and then select **Set Password**.

    NOTE:

      • When an alert message appears, confirm the message and then click **Proceed**.

5 Add in a password for your user login account.

• For Mac OS X 10.3:

1 Click **System Preferences** → **Accounts**.

2 Select your account.

3 Enter a password for your user login account in **Password**.

4 Re-enter the password in **Verify**.

• For Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6:

1 Click **System Preferences** → **Accounts**.

2 Select your account.

3 Select **Change Password**.

4 Enter a password for your user login account in **New Password** (**New password** for Mac OS X 10.6).

5 Re-enter the password in **Verify**.

6 Click **Change Password**.

After you confirmed a login user name and password, go to .

■ Creating a Shared Folder (SMB Only)

Share a folder to store the scanned document using the following procedure.

• For Windows XP Home Edition:

1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name: **MyShare**).

2 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.

**3** Click the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder on the network**.

4 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

> **NOTE:**
> • Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.
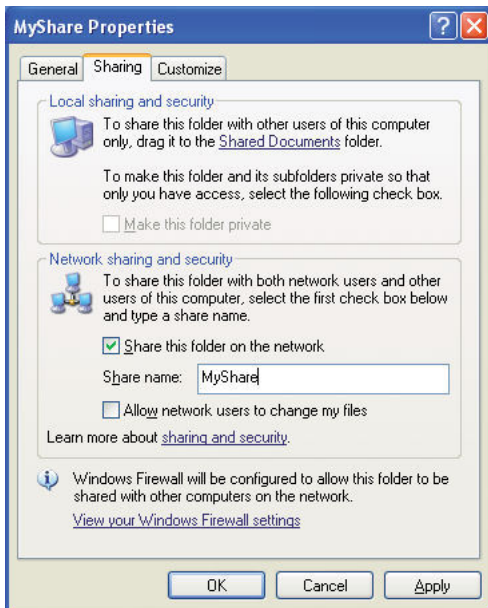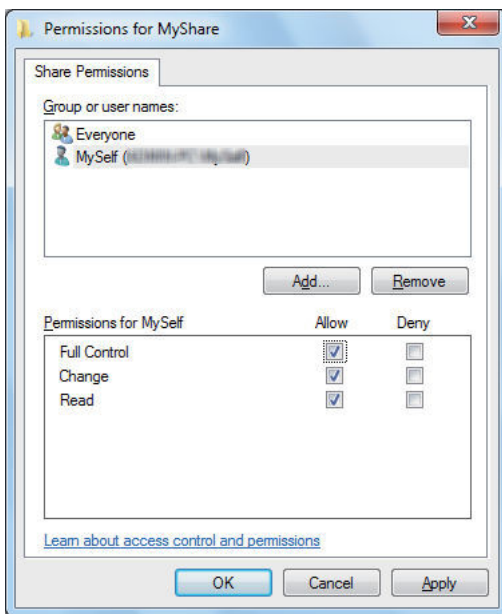

> **NOTE:**
> • When the following screen appears, click **If you understand the security risks but want to share files without running the wizard, click here**, then select **Just enable file sharing**, and then click **OK**.
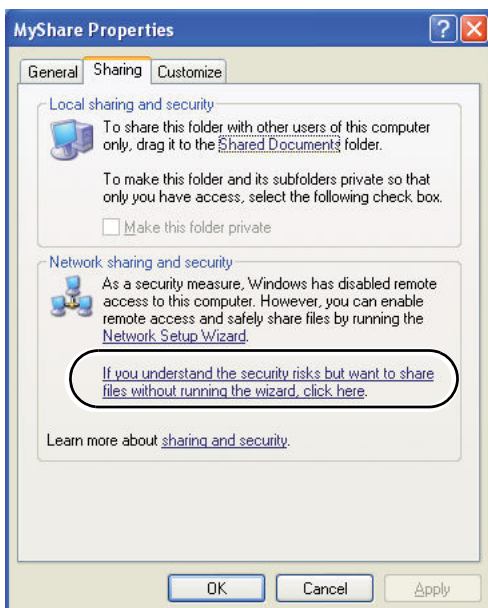
5 Select **Allow network users to change my files**.

6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

> **NOTE:**
> • To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
>   Example: Folder name: **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John**
>   You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory.

After you created a folder, go to .

• For Windows XP Professional Edition:

1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name: **MyShare**) and double-click the folder.

2 Select **Folder Options** from **Tools**.
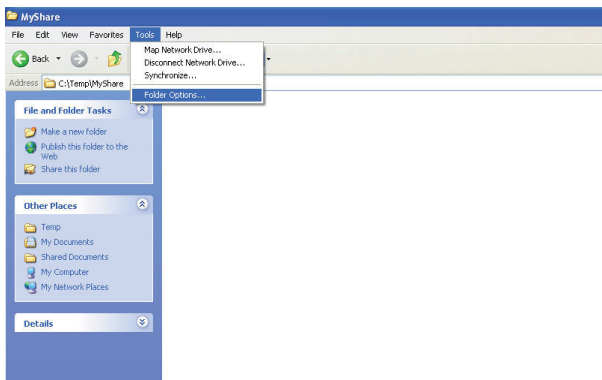
3 Click the **View** tab, and then deselect the **Use simple file sharing (Recommended)** check box.
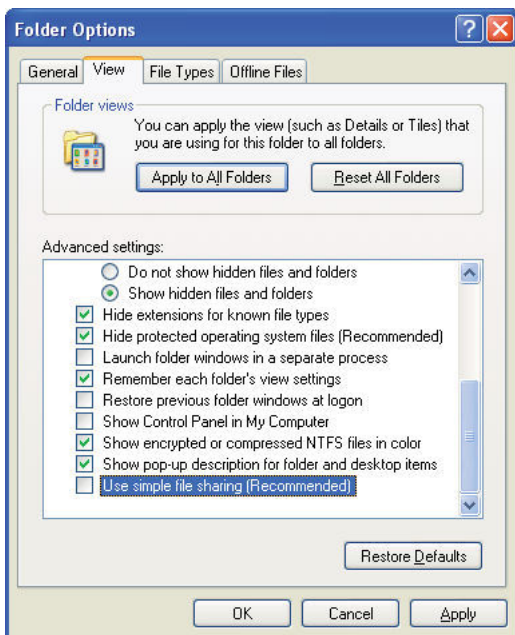
4 Click **OK**, and then close the window.

5 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.

6 Click the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder**.

7 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

> **NOTE:**
> • Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.
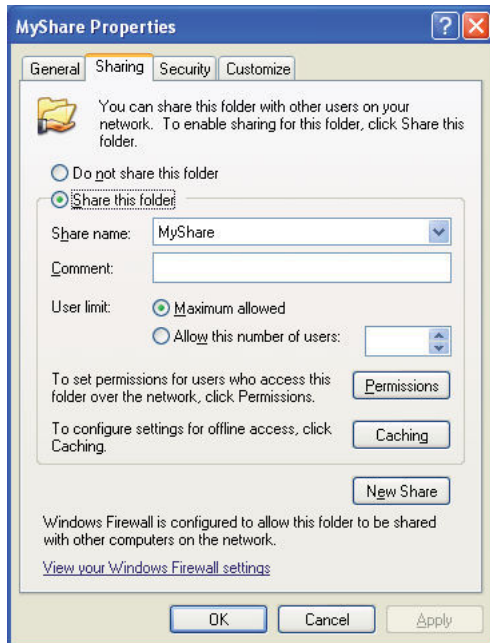
8 Click **Permissions** to create a write permission for this folder.

9 Click **Add**.

10 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name: **MySelf**).
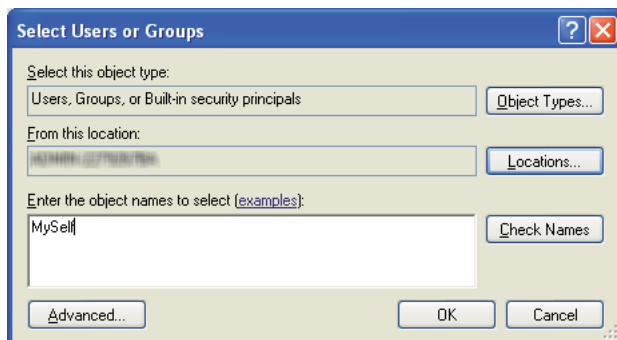
11 Click **OK**.

12 Click the user login name that you have just entered. Select the **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document into this folder.

> **NOTE:**
> • Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.
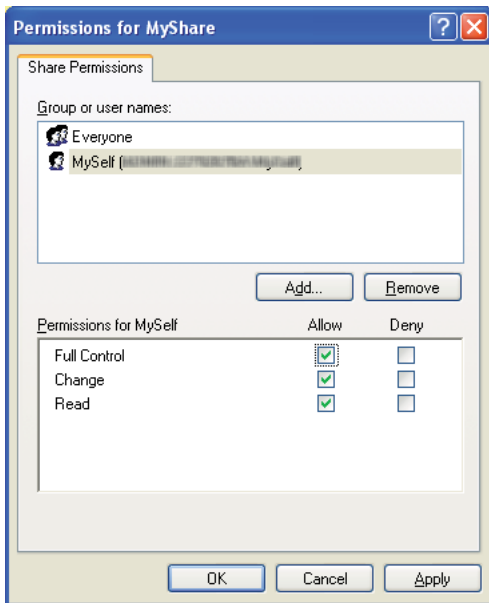
13 Click **OK**.

14 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

> **NOTE:**
> • To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
>   Example: Folder name: **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John**
>   You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory.

After you created a folder, go to "Setting a Destination Using an Address Book" on page 229.

• For Windows Server 2003

1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name: **MyShare**).

2 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.

3 Click the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder**.
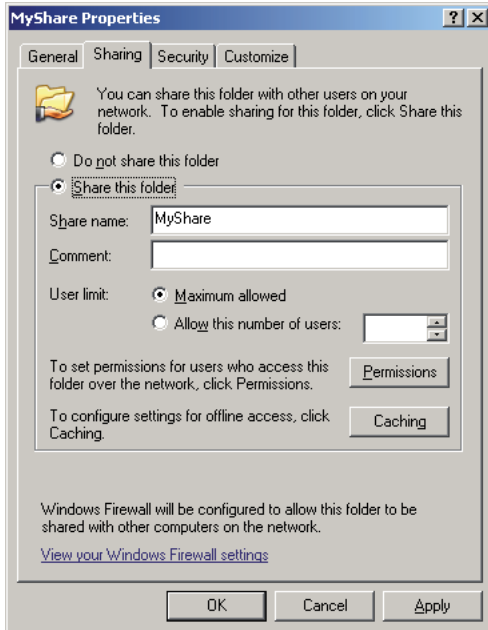
4 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

NOTE:

- Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.

5 Click **Permissions** to create a write permission for this folder.

6 Click **Add**.

7 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name: **MySelf**).
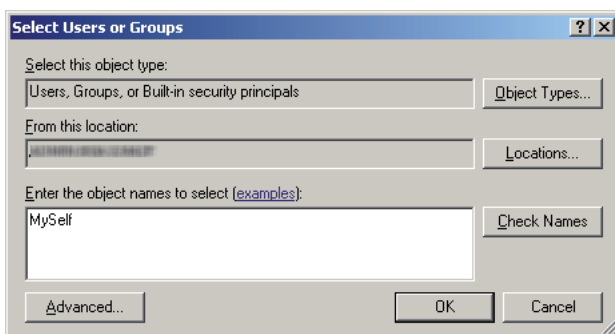
8 Click **OK**.

9 Click the user login name that you have just entered. Select the **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document into this folder.

> **NOTE:**
> • Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.
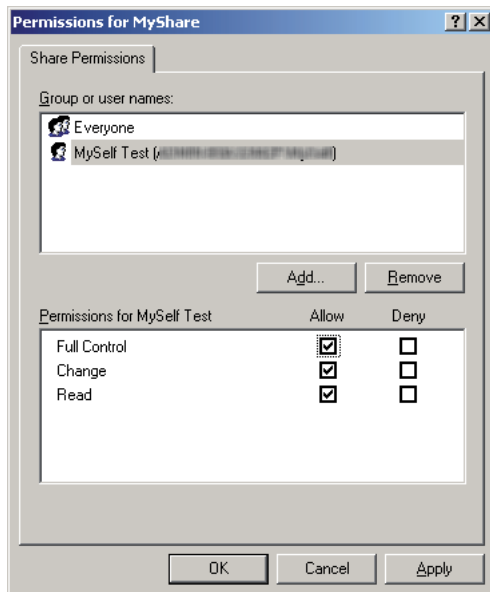
10 Click **OK**.

11 Configure other settings as necessary, and then click **Apply** and click **OK**.

> **NOTE:**
> • To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
>   Example: Folder name: **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John**
>   You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory.

After you created a folder, go to .

• For Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2

1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name: **MyShare**).

2 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.
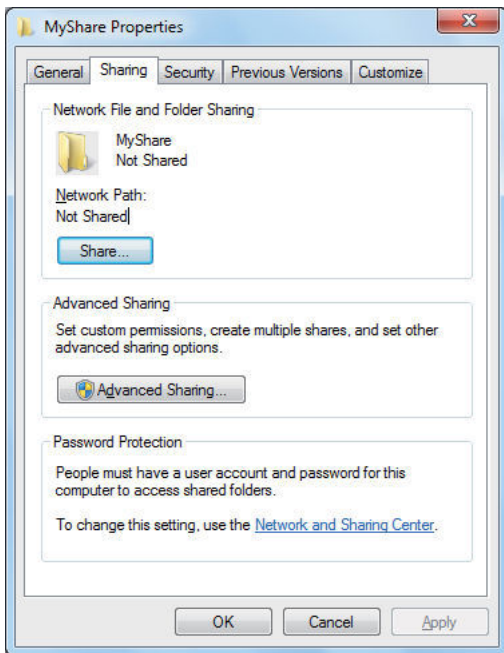
3 Click the **Sharing** tab, and then click **Advanced Sharing**.

For Windows Vista, when **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

4 Select the **Share this folder** check box.

5 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

NOTE:

- Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.
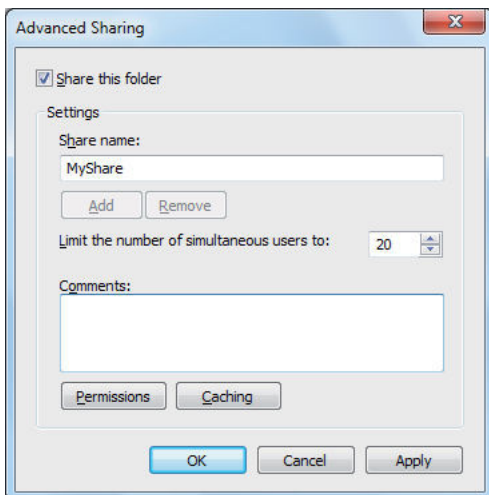
6 Click **Permissions** to create a write permission for this folder.

7 Click **Add**.

8 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name: **MySelf**).
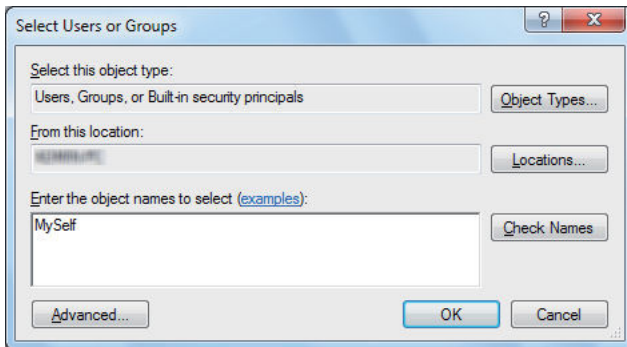
9 Click **OK**.

10 Click the user login name that you have just entered. Select the **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document into this folder.

NOTE:
- Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.

11 Click **OK**.

12 Click **OK** to exit the **Advanced Sharing** dialog box.

13 Click **Close**.

NOTE:
- To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
  Example: Folder name: **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John**
  You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory.

After you created a folder, go to .

• For Mac OS X 10.3/10.4:

1   Select **Home** from the **Go** menu.

2   Double-click **Public**.

3   Create a folder (Example of folder name: **MyShare**).

    NOTE:
     • Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.

4   Open **System Preferences**, and then click **Sharing**.

5   Select the **Personal File Sharing** check box and the **Windows Sharing** check box.

• For Mac OS X 10.5/10.6:

1   Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name: **MyShare**).

    NOTE:
     • Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.

2   Select the created folder, and then select **Get Info** from the **File** menu.

3   Select the **Shared Folder** (**Shared folder** for Mac OS X 10.6) check box, and then close the window.

4   Open **System Preferences**, and then click **Sharing**.

5   Select the **File Sharing** check box, and then click **Options**.

6   Select the **Share Files and folders using SMB** (**Share files and folders using SMB (Windows)** for Mac OS X 10.6) check box and your account name.

7   Enter your account password, and then click **OK**.

8   Click **Done**.

■ Setting a Destination Using an Address Book

You can configure the printer settings to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature with the CentreWare Internet Services or Address Book Editor.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

Before beginning to setup a destination, make sure you have the IP addresses you need such as printer and computer.

Verifying the IP Address Setting of the Printer

To setup the server address book through the network, you will first need to locate the IP address of the printer. To find your printer's IP address, see .

Locating the IP Address Setting of Your Computer

You can locate the IP address of your computer by the following operations.

1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Accessories** → **Run**. (for Windows Vista/Windows 7)

Click **start** → **Run**. (for Windows XP)

Click **Start** → **Run**. (for Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2008/Windows Server 2008 R2)

2 Type **cmd** in the text field and click **OK**. A command prompt window will open.

3 Type **ipconfig** and press **Enter**.

4 Write down the IP Address **xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx**.

Using CentreWare Internet Services

1 Launch your web browser.

2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.

The printer's web page appears.

NOTE:
- For details on how to check the IP address of the printer, see "Verifying the IP Settings" on page 97.

3 Click the **Address Book** tab.

If user name and password are required, enter the correct user name and password.

NOTE:
- The default user name is "11111", and the default password is "x-admin".

4 Under **Network Scan (Comp./Serv.)**, click **Computer/Server Address Book**.

5 Select any unused number and click **Add**.
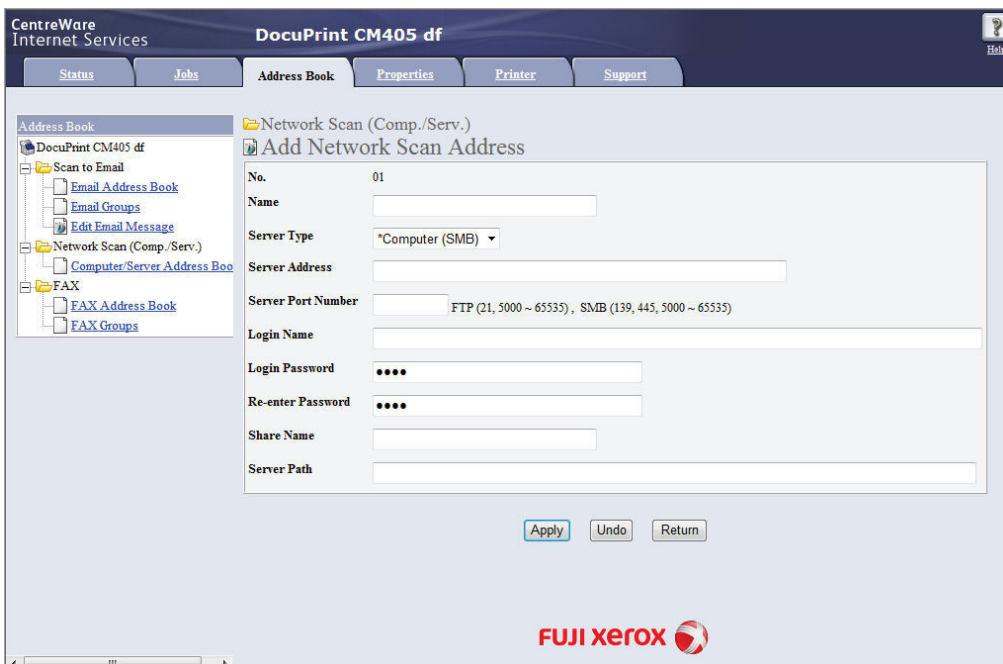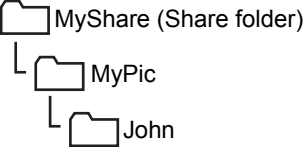
The **Add Network Scan Address** page appears.

To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

1	**Name**	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the **Computer/Server Address Book**.
2	**Server Type**	Select **Computer (SMB)** if you store the document in a shared folder of your computer.
		Select **Server (FTP)** if you use an FTP server.
3	**Server Address**	Enter a server name or IP address of your computer or the FTP server that you have shared out.
		The following are examples:
		• For **Computer (SMB)**:
		Server name: myhost
		IP address: 192.168.1.100
		• For **Server (FTP)**:
		Server name: myhost.example.com
		(myhost: host name, example.com: domain name)
		IP address: 192.168.1.100
4	**Server Port Number**	Enter the port number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 139 for SMB and 21 for FTP.
5	**Login Name**	Enter the user account name that has access to the shared folder on your computer or FTP server.
6	**Login Password**	Enter the password corresponding to the above login name.
		NOTE:
		• Empty password is not valid in the Scan to Computer feature. Ensure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only)" on page 218 for details on how to add a password in your user login account.)
7	**Re-enter Password**	Re-enter your password.

8	**Share Name**	For **Computer (SMB)** only.
		On the Windows operating system, enter the share name of the folder to store the scanned document on the recipient computer.
		On the Mac OS X, enter the folder name to store the scanned document on the recipient computer.
9	**Server Path**	For **Computer (SMB)**
		To store the scanned document in the shared folder directly without creating any subfolder, leave the space blank.
		To store the scanned document in the folder you created under the shared folder, enter the path as following.
		Example: Share Folder name: **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John**
		You should now see **MyShare\Mypic\John** in your directory.

		⌷ MyShare (Share folder)
		  └ ⌷ MyPic
		    └ ⌷ John

		In this case, enter the following item.
		Server Path: **\MyPic\John**
		For **Server (FTP)**
		Enter the server path to store the scanned document.

After you configured settings, go to "Sending the Scanned File on the Network" on page 235.

Using Address Book Editor

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **DocuPrint CM405 df** → **Address Book Editor**.

The **Select Device** window appears.

NOTE:
- If the **Address Book Editor** window appears, go to step 4.
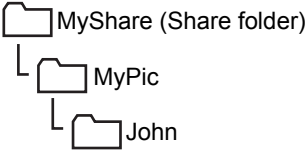
2 Select your printer from the list.

3 Click **OK**.

4 Click **Tool** → **New (Printer Address Book)** → **Server**.
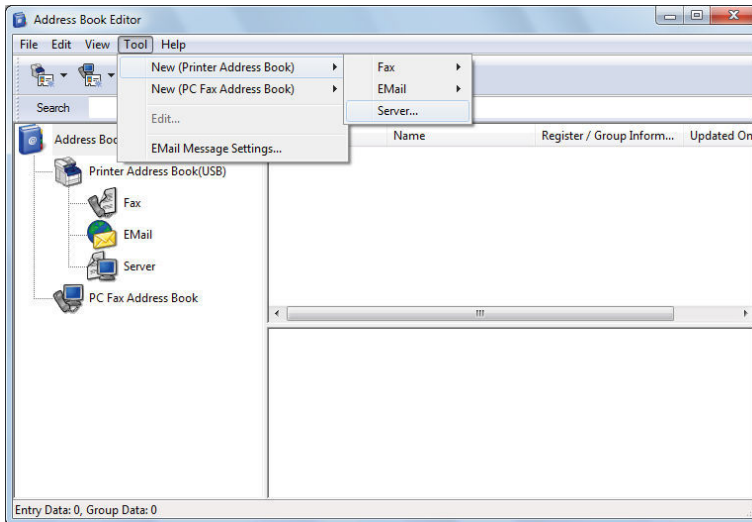
The **Server Address** dialog box appears.

To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

1	**Name**	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the address book.
2	**Server Type**	Select **Computer (SMB)** if you store the document in a shared folder of your computer.
		Select **Server (FTP)** if you use an FTP server.
3	**Computer Settings wizard**	Clicking this button opens the wizard screen which guides you through several steps.
		When you complete the steps in the wizard, the settings for **Server Address** are automatically configured.
4	**Server Name / IP Address**	Enter a server name or IP address of your computer or the FTP server that you have shared out.
		The following are examples: • For **Computer (SMB)**: Server name: myhost IP address: 192.168.1.100 • For **Server (FTP)**: Server name: myhost.example.com (myhost: host name, example.com: domain name) IP address: 192.168.1.100
5	**Share Name**	Enter the name of the shared folder on the recipient computer. For SMB only.
6	**Path**	For **Computer (SMB)**
		To store the scanned document in the shared folder directly without creating any subfolder, leave the space blank.
		To store the scanned document in the folder you created under the shared folder, enter the path as following.
		Example: Share Folder name: **MyShare**, Second-level folder name: **MyPic**, Third-level folder name: **John**
		You should now see **MyShare\MyPic\John** in your directory.

		📁MyShare (Share folder)
		  └ 📁MyPic
		      └ 📁John

		In this case, enter the following item.
		Path: **\MyPic\John**
		For **Server (FTP)**
		Enter the path to store the scanned document.
7	**Login Name**	Enter the user account name that has access to the shared folder on your computer or FTP server.
8	**Login Password**	Enter the password corresponding to the above login name.
		NOTE: • Empty password is not valid in the Scan to Computer feature. Ensure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Setting a Login Name and a Password (SMB Only)" on page 218 for details on how to add a password in your user login account).
9	**Confirm Login Password**	Re-enter your password.
10	**Port Number**	Enter the port number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 139 for SMB and 21 for FTP.

After you configured settings, go to "Sending the Scanned File on the Network" on page 235.

■ Sending the Scanned File on the Network

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- "Making Copies From the DADF" on page 193
- "Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 191

2 Press the ⌂ **(Services)** button.

3 Select `Scan to`.

4 Select `Network`.

5 Select [▾] until the desired address appears and then select that address.

6 Select OK.

7 Specify scan options such as `Output Color`, `Resolution`, `2 Sided Scanning`, and `File Format` on the `Scan to Network`, `Quality` and `Options` tabs. For details, see "File Format" on page 326.

8 Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin sending the scanned file.

Scanning to a USB Storage Device

■ Types of a USB Storage Device

You can use a USB storage device with the following interfaces:

- USB 1.1
- USB 2.0

The USB storage device must be formatted in FAT file systems (FAT16, FAT32, or VFAT) before inserting the memory device into the front USB port of the printer.

NOTE:

- If the USB storage device is formatted in a file system other than above, the printer may not recognize that the USB storage device is attached.
- A USB storage device with authentication feature and some brands of USB storage devices cannot be used with this printer.

■ Procedures

To store the scanned images to a USB storage device:

NOTE:

- If you insert a USB storage device to the front USB port first, the `USB Drive Detected` screen may appear. In this case, select `Scan To USB`, and proceed to step 6.

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:
- "Making Copies From the DADF" on page 193
- "Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 191

2 Press the ⌂ (**Services**) button.

3 Insert a USB storage device into the front USB port of the printer.
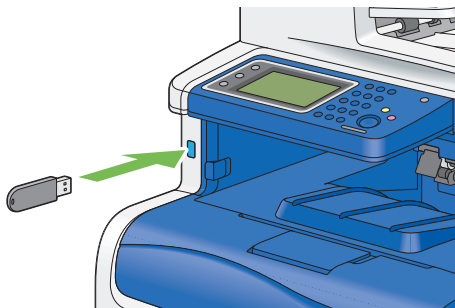
4 Select `Scan to`.

5 Select `USB Memory`.

6 Specify scan options such as `Output Color`, `Resolution`, `2 Sided Scanning`, and `File Format` on the `Scan To USB`, `Quality` and `Options` tabs. For details, see "File Format" on page 326.

You can also specify the folder to save the scanned image. For details, see "Specifying a Folder to Save the Scanned Image" on page 237.

7 Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin scanning the document.

8 Remove the USB storage device from the printer.

> **IMPORTANT:**
> - Before removing the USB storage device, ensure that the printer is not accessing the USB storage device. If you remove the USB storage device while the printer is accessing, the data in the USB storage device or the USB storage device itself may be destroyed.

■ Specifying a Folder to Save the Scanned Image

To save the scanned image to a folder in the USB storage device, specify the folder before executing the scan job.

1 Select `Change Folder` on the `Scan To USB Memory` tab.

2 Select a folder to save the scanned image.

> **NOTE:**
> - The default saving location is the root directory of the USB storage device.
> - You cannot directly enter a folder path using the number pad.
> - You can select any folder in the USB storage device but cannot create a new folder in this step. You should always create a new folder before connecting the memory to the printer.

If the name of the scanned image has already existed in the folder, the printer automatically generate a new file name to save the data.

Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned Image

To send an e-mail attached with the scanned image from your printer, follow the steps below:

- Setup the E-mail address book through the CentreWare Internet Services. See "Registering a New E-Mail Address" on page 238 for more details.

■ E-Mail Settings

1 From the CentreWare Internet Services, click **Properties**.

2 Click **E-mail**.
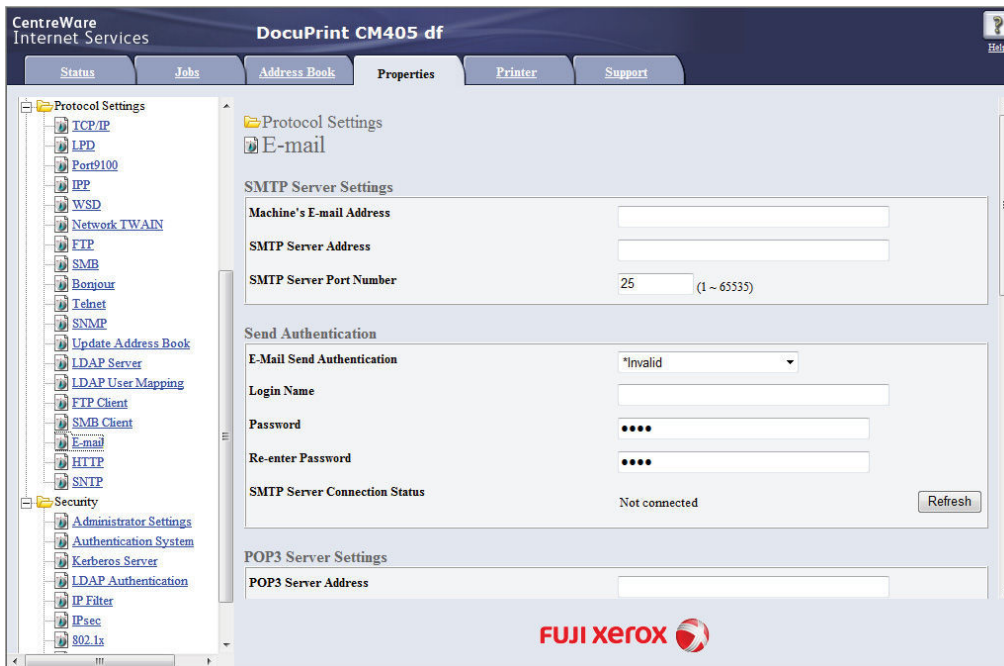
3 Specify the settings for E-mail as follows:

SMTP Server Address: Enter the IP address of the e-mail server.

E-Mail Send Authentication: Specify **Invalid** to enable the e-mail server.

NOTE:
- If an error message including 016-506 or 016-764 is displayed, contact your server administrator for the settings for **E-Mail Send Authentication**.

4 Click the **Apply** button.

■ Registering a New E-Mail Address

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

1 Launch your web browser.

2 Enter the IP address of the printer in the address bar, and then press the **Enter** key.

The printer's web page appears.

NOTE:
- For details on how to check the IP address of the printer, see "Verifying the IP Settings" on page 97.

3 Click the **Address Book** tab.

If user name and password are required, enter the correct user name and password.

NOTE:

- The default user name is "11111", and the default password is "x-admin".
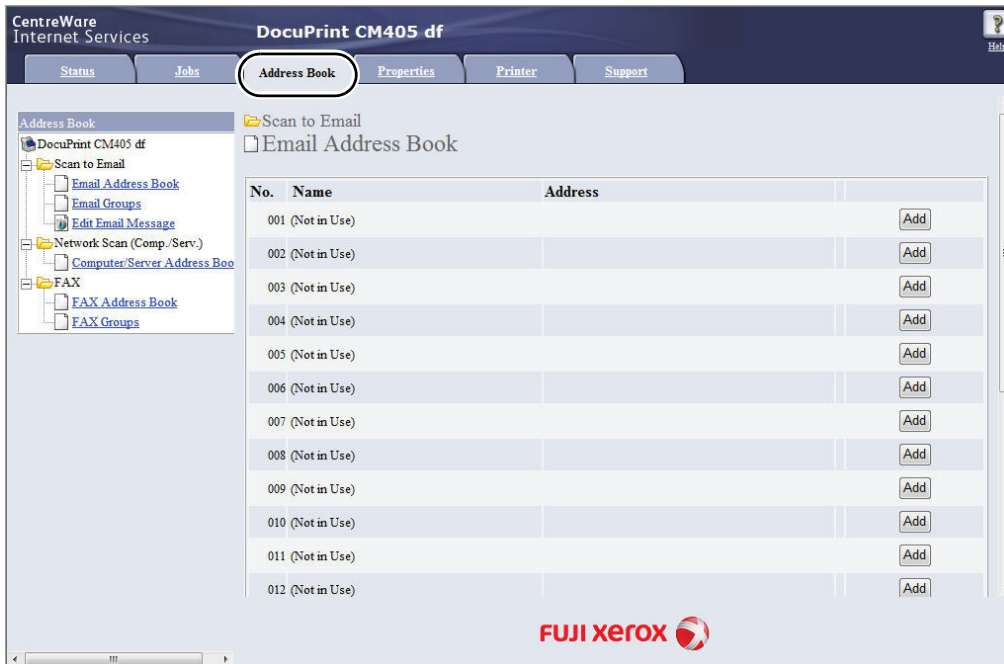
4 Click **Email Address Book**.

5 Select any unused number and click **Add**.

The **Add Email Address** page appears.

6 Enter a name in the **Name** field and e-mail address in the **E-mail Address** field.
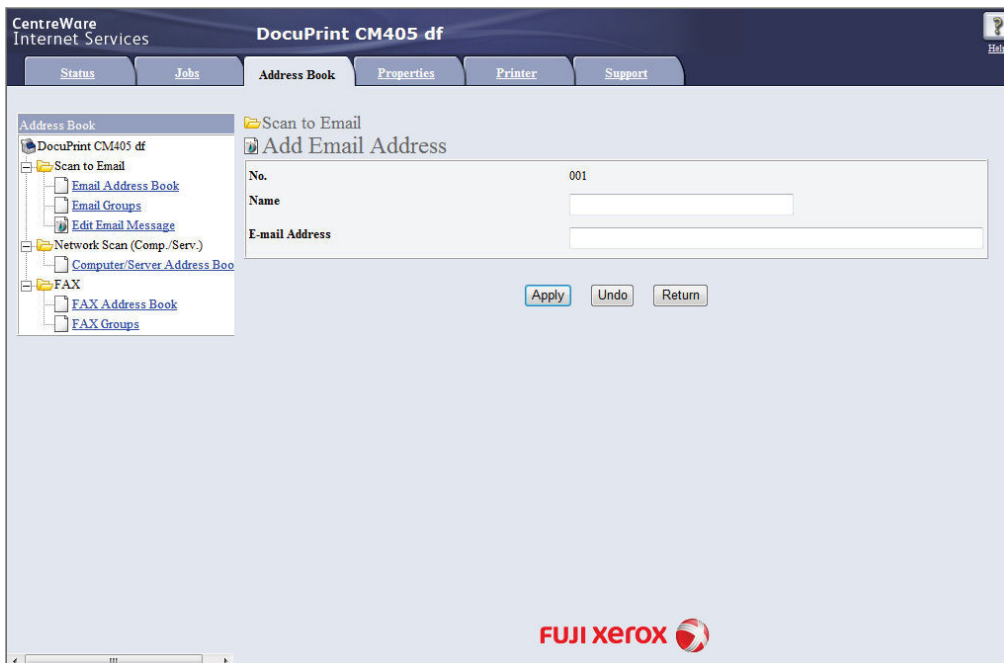
7 Click the **Apply** button.

■ Sending an E-mail With the Scanned File

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:
- "Making Copies From the DADF" on page 193
- "Making Copies From the Document Glass" on page 191

2 Press the ⌂ (**Services**) button.

3 Select `Email`.

4 Specify a recipient from the following, and then select `OK`:

`New Recipient`: Enter an e-mail address directly.

`Address Book`: Select from the following types of address books:

- `Device Address Book - Individuals`: Select an e-mail address registered in the address book.
- `Device Address Book - Groups`: Select a group of e-mails registered in the address book.
- `Search Network Address Book`: Search an e-mail address from the LDAP server address book.

Select the recipient you specified from the `New Recipient` to remove or edit the recipient.

Select the recipient you specified from the `Address Book` to remove or see details of the recipient. You can also change the email to Bcc.

5 Specify scan options such as `Output Color`, `Resolution`, `2 Sided Scanning`, and `File Format` on the `Quality` and `Options` tabs. For details, see "File Format" on page 326.

NOTE:
- Users need to be registered in the E-mail address book before you can select `Address Book` on the operator panel.
- For more information on address book and server address book, see "Address Book Editor" on page 85.
- If you are using the LDAP server address book, `Email Server Address Book` must be set to `On`. For details, see "Email Server Address Book" on page 308.

6 Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to send e-mail.

Adjusting Scanning Options

This section includes:

■ Adjusting the Default Scan Settings

This section includes:

For a complete list of all of the defaults settings, see .

Setting the Scanned Image File Type

To specify the file type of the scanned image:

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Default Settings`.

3 Select `Scan Defaults`.

4 Select `File Format`.

5 Select the type, and then select `OK`.

Available types:

- `PDF` (factory default)
- `Multi-Page TIFF`
- `TIFF`
- `JPEG`
- `XDW`

Setting the Color Mode

You can scan an image in color or in black and white. Selecting black and white significantly reduces the file size of the scanned images. An image scanned in color will have a larger file size than the same image scanned in black and white.

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Default Settings`.

3 Select `Scan Defaults`.

4 Select `Output Color`.

5 Change the color setting to `Color`, `Black & White` or `Gray Scale`, and then select `OK`.

Setting the Scan Resolution

You may want to change the scan resolution depending on the way you plan to use the scanned image. Scan resolution affects both the size and image quality of the scanned image file. The higher the scan resolution, the larger the file size.

To select the scan resolution:

1 Press the `i` (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Default Settings`.

3 Select `Scan Defaults`.

4 Select `Resolution`.

5 Select one of the following options, and then select `OK`:

- `200 dpi`: Produces the lowest resolution and smallest file size. (factory default)
- `300 dpi`: Produces medium resolution and a medium file size.
- `400 dpi`: Produces high resolution and a large file size.
- `600 dpi`: Produces the highest resolution and largest file size.

Setting the Original Size

To specify the size of the original:

1 Press the `i` (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Default Settings`.

3 Select `Scan Defaults`.

4 Select `Original Size`, and then select `OK`.

5 Select a specific paper size to determine the area to be scanned, and then select `OK`.

The factory default setting is `A4 (210x297mm)`.

Automatically Suppressing Background Variations

When scanning documents with a dark background such as newspapers, the printer automatically can detect the background and whiten it when outputting the image.

To turn on/off automatic suppression:

1 Press the `i` (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Default Settings`.

3 Select `Scan Defaults`.

4 Select `Auto Background Suppression`.

5 Select either `On` or `Off`, and then select `OK`.

The factory default setting is `On`.

■ Changing the Scan Settings for an Individual Job

Use the scan options to configure a variety of scanner features when scanning to a Network, Application, or USB storage device.

- `Scan To Network`/`Scan To PC`/`Scan To USB Memory` Tab

  You can set the basic options of the scan such as `Output Color`, `Resolution`, `2 Sided Scanning` and `File Format`.

- `Quality` Tab

  You can set the options concerning image quality such as `Lighten / Darken`, `Sharpness`, `Contrast` and `Auto Background Suppression`.

- `Options` Tab

  You can set other options for the scan such as `Original Size` and `Edge Erase`.

To temporarily change a scan setting when emailing the scanned image:

1 Press the 🏠 (**Services**) button.

2 Select `E-mail`.

3 Select scan options on the `Quality` and `Options` tabs.

4 Change the selected setting, and then select `OK`.

5 Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin the scan.

To temporarily change a scan setting when scanning to a computer:

1 Press the 🏠 (**Services**) button.

2 Select `Scan to`.

3 Select the scan destination.

4 Select scan options on the `Scan To PC`, `Quality` and `Options` tabs.

5 Change the selected setting, and then select `OK`.

6 Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin the scan.

Scanner Connection Tool

You can check the IP address of the printer or set the password using the Scanner Connection Tool. The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

To open the Scanner Connection Tool:

Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **DocuPrint CM405 df** → **Scanner Connection Tool**.
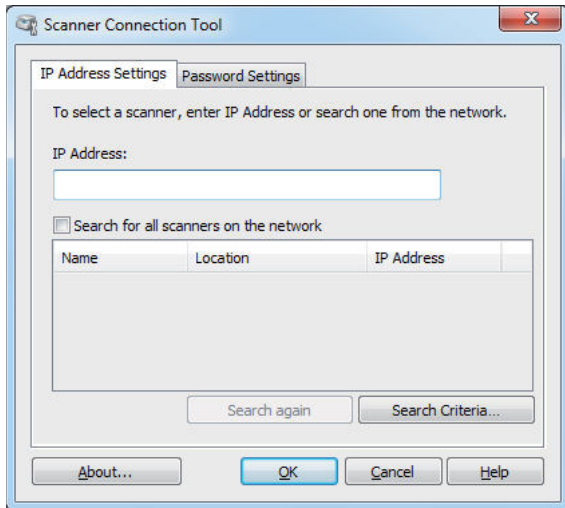
■ IP Address Settings

In the **IP Address Settings** tab, you can check the IP address that is set for your scanner or change the scanner selection.

- **IP Address**

  Enter the IP address.

- **Search for all scanners on the network** (Windows only)

  Searches scanners in your network.

- **Scanner List**

  Displays a list of scanners that are detected.

- **Search again**

  Searches the scanners in your network.

- **Search Criteria** (Windows only)

  Displays the **Search Criteria** dialog box for setting the search condition.

Search Criteria Dialog Box (Windows only)
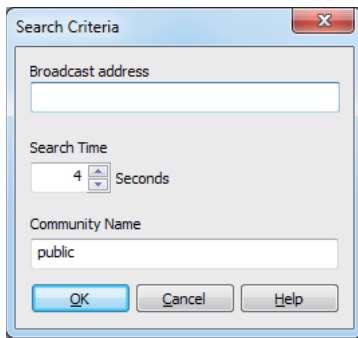
- **Broadcast address**

  Enter the subnet address.

  - IPv4: Broadcast Address such as **192.168.1.255**
  - IPv6: Multicast Address such as **ff02::1**

- **Search Time**

  Specify a time period for searching a scanner.

- **Community Name**

  Enter the SNMPv1/v2 community name. The default community name is **public**.

■ Password Settings

In the **Password Settings** tab, you can enter the password that is set for your scanner to access from your computer to the printer.
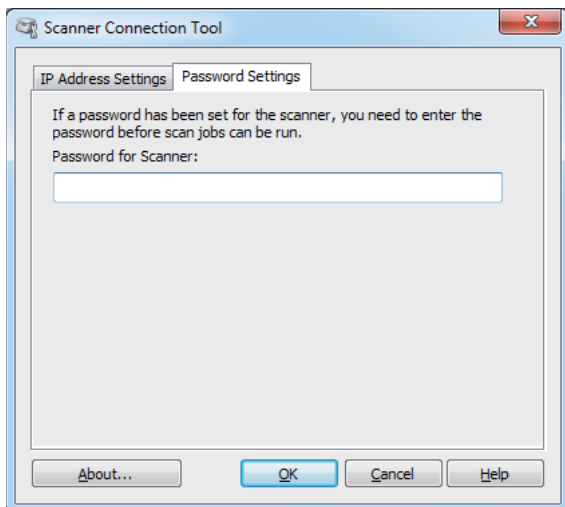
- **Password for Scanner**

  Enter the password.

Faxing

NOTE:

- If the `Service Lock` setting for `Fax` is set to `Password Locked`, you need to enter the four digit passcode to use the fax function. If the `Service Lock` setting for `Fax` is set to `Disable`, the fax function is disabled and the menu is not displayed on the LCD panel. For details, see "Service Lock" on page 317.
- If the `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`, you need to enter the four digit passcode to enter the `Admin Settings` menu.

This chapter includes:

Connecting the Telephone Line

NOTE:

- Do not connect your printer directly to a DSL (digital subscriber line). This may damage the printer. To use a DSL, you will need to use an appropriate DSL filter. Contact your service provider for the DSL filter.

1 Plug one end of a telephone line cord into the wall jack connector and the other end into an active wall jack.

Wall jack connector

To the wall jack
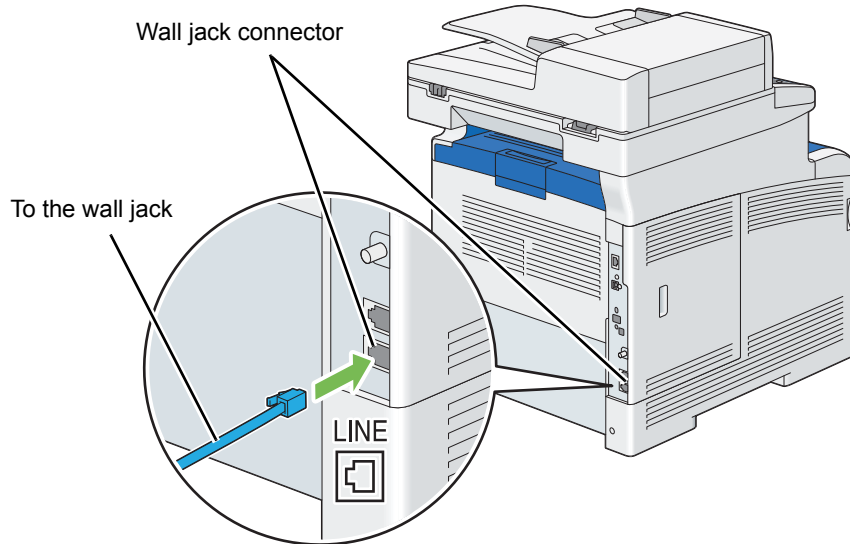
LINE

2 To connect a telephone and/or answering machine to your printer, plug the telephone or answering machine line cord into the phone connector ( ).

Phone connector

To an external telephone or answering machine

PHONE
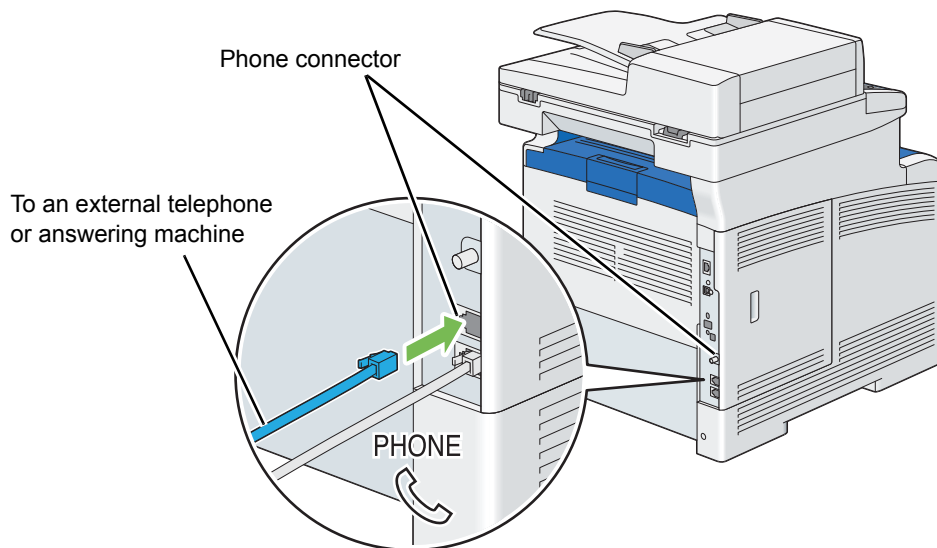
Configuring Fax Initial Settings

This section includes:

■ Specifying the Fax Initial Settings Using the Easy Install Navi (Windows Only)

You can specify the region, line type, tone/pulse, receive mode, DRPD pattern, fax header name, and fax number.

1 Insert the *Driver CD Kit* provided with the printer in your computer. The Easy Install Navi file launches automatically.

2 Click **Advanced Tools** on the **Easy Install Navi** window. The **Advanced Tools** window appears.
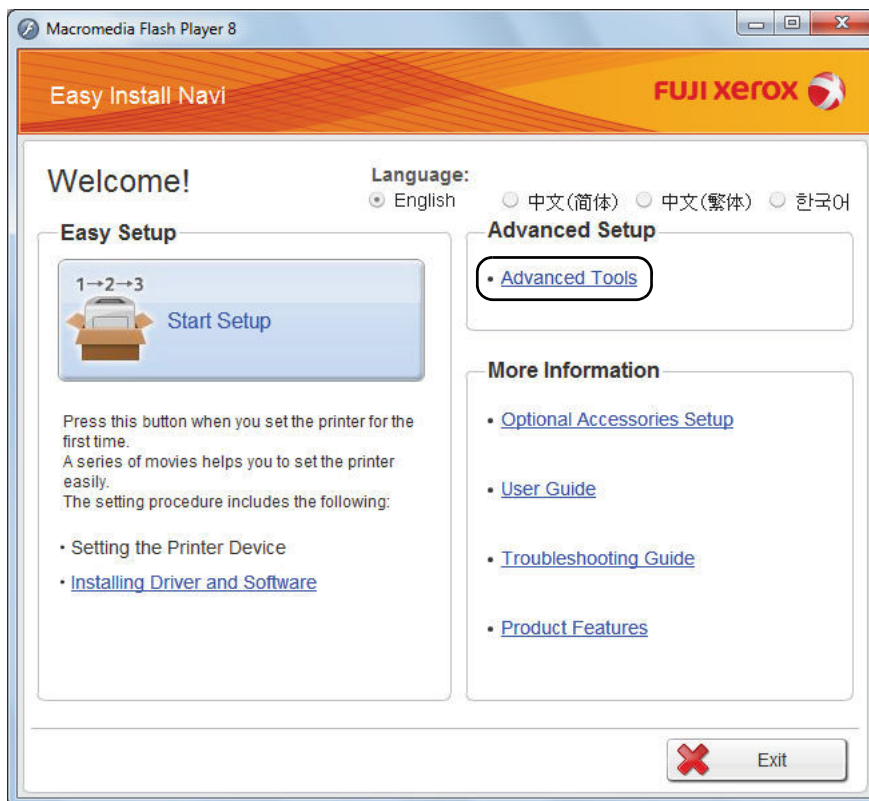
3 Click **Fax Configuration**.

4 Follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

Available settings are:

- **Region**
- **Line Type**
- **Tone/Pulse**
- **Receive Mode**
- **DRPD Pattern**
  (This setting is available only when a distinctive ring service is installed on your telephone line by your telephone company.)
- **FAX Header Name**
- **FAX Number**

NOTE:

- To make initial settings from the printer operator panel, see .

■ Specifying the Fax Initial Settings From the Operator Panel

Setting Your Region

You need to set the region where your printer is used for using the fax service on the printer.

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.

3 Select `Fax Settings`.

4 Select `Fax Line Settings`.

5 Select `Region`.

6 Select the region where the printer is used, and then select `OK`.

7 Select `Yes,Save`.

The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.

NOTE:

- When you configure the region setting, the information registered to the device is initialized.

Setting the Printer ID

In most regions, you are required by law to indicate your fax number on any fax you send. The printer ID, containing your telephone number and name or company name, will be printed at the top of each page sent from your printer.

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.

3 Select `Fax Settings`.

4 Select `Fax Line Settings`.

5 Select `Fax Number`.

6 Enter your fax number using the number pad.

> **NOTE:**
> • If you make a mistake while entering numbers, press the **C** (**Clear**) button to delete the last digit.

7 Select `OK` when the number on the display is correct.

8 Select `Company Name`, and then select `OK`.

9 Enter your name or company name using the keyboard.

10 Select `OK` when the name on the display is correct.

To return to the top level of the System menu, press the **CA** (**Clear All**) button.

Setting the Time and Date

NOTE:
• It may be necessary to reset the correct time and date if loss of power to the printer occurs.

To set the time and date:

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.

3 Select `System Settings`.

4 Select `General`.

5 Select `Date & Time`.

6 Select `Time Zone`.

7 Select the desired time zone, and then select `OK`.

8 Select `Date`.

9 Enter the correct date using the number pad, or select the correct date using the ⊟ or ⊞ button.

> **NOTE:**
> • If you make a mistake while entering numbers, press the **C** (**Clear**) button to delete the last digit.

10 Select `OK` when the date on the display is correct.

11 Select `Time`.

12 Enter the correct time using the number pad.

13 Select `OK` when the time on the display is correct.

To return to the top level of the System menu, press the **CA** (**Clear All**) button.

Changing the Clock Mode

You can set the current time using either the 12-hour or the 24-hour format.

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.

3 Select `System Settings`.

4 Select `General`.

5 Select `Date & Time`.

6 Select `Time`.

7 Select the desired format, and then select `OK`.

To return to the top level of the System menu, press the **CA** (**Clear All**) button.

Sending a Fax

You can fax data from your printer.

This section includes:

■ Loading an Original Document

You can use the DADF or the document glass to load an original document for faxing.

To Fax a Document Using the DADF

Using the duplex automatic document feeder (DADF), you can load up to 50 sheets of 75 gsm (20 lb) paper at a time.

NOTE:
- To get the best scan quality, especially for gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the DADF.
- You cannot load the following documents in the DADF. Be sure to place them on the document glass.

	Curled originals		Pre-punched paper
	Lightweight originals		Folded, creased or torn originals
	Cut and paste originals		Carbon paper

1   Place the document(s) face up on the DADF with the top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the correct document size.

2   Adjust the document resolution.

See also:

To Fax a Document From the Document Glass

Using the document glass, you can load one sheet at a time.

1 Lift and open the document cover.
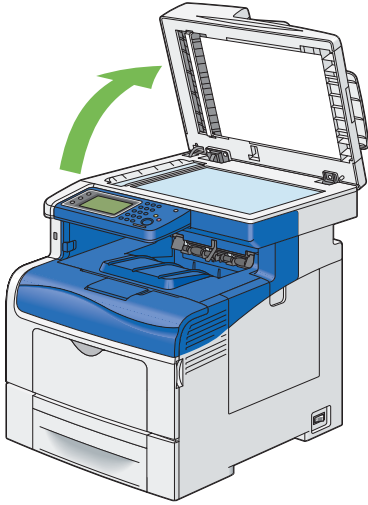
2 Place the document face down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the document glass.

> ⚠ **CAUTION:**
> • **Do not apply excessive force to hold thick document on the document glass. It may break the glass and cause injuries.**
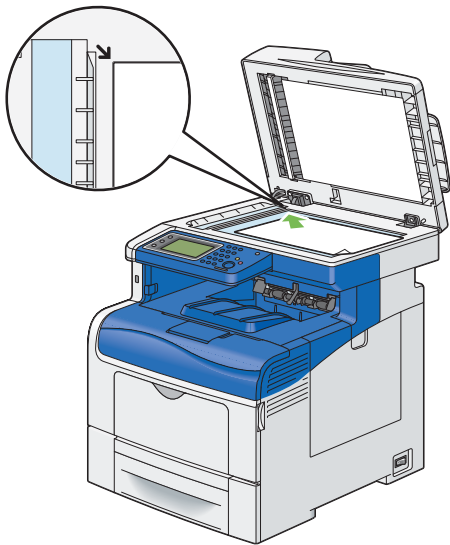
3 Close the document cover.

> **NOTE:**
> • Ensure that no document is in the DADF. If any document is detected in the DADF, it takes priority over the document on the document glass.
> • If you are faxing a page from a book or magazine, lift the document cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the document cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 30 mm, start faxing with the document cover open.

4 Adjust the document resolution.

> **See also:**
> • "Adjusting the Document Resolution" on page 255

■ Adjusting the Document Resolution

You can improve the quality of the fax document by adjusting the resolution, especially for the document in low-quality or containing the photographic image.

1 Press the ⌂ (**Services**) button.

2 Select `Fax`.

3 Select `Resolution`.

4 Select the desired setting, and then select `OK`.

> **NOTE:**
> • Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Standard*	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The Super Fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the Super Fine resolution. See the note below.
Photo	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.

> **NOTE:**
> • Faxes scanned in the Super Fine mode transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

■ Adjusting the Document Contrast

You can adjust the contrast of the fax document to be lighter or darker than the original.

1 Press the ⌂ (**Services**) button.

2 Select `Fax`.

3 Select `Lighten / Darken`.

4 Select the desired setting, and then select `OK`.

> **NOTE:**
> • Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Darken +3	Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darken +2	
Darken +1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Lighten +1	Works well with dark print.
Lighten +2	
Lighten +3	

■ Inserting a Pause

For some telephone systems, it is necessary to dial an access code and listen for a second dial tone. A pause must be entered in order for the access code to function. For example, enter the access code 9 and then press the ☽↺ / ☽॥ (**Redial / Pause**) button before entering the telephone number. "-" appears on the LCD panel to indicate when a pause is entered.

■ Sending a Fax From Memory

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:

- "Loading an Original Document" on page 253

2 Press the ⌂ (**Services**) button.

3 Select `Fax`.

4 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs.

See also:

- "Adjusting the Document Resolution" on page 255
- "Adjusting the Document Contrast" on page 255

5 To select a fax number, do one of the followings:

- Select [▣ ▾] button, and then select one of the following:

  `Device Address Book - Individuals` - Select an individual fax number and then select `OK`.

  `Device Address Book - Groups` - Select a group dial number and then select `OK`.

  `Search Network Address Book` - Search and select a fax number from the LDAP server and then select `OK`.

- Select [▶▶] button.

  Enter the speed dial number using the number pad, and then select [✚] button.

  NOTE:

  - For more information on address book and server address book, see "Address Book" on page 269.
  - If you are using the LDAP server address book, `Fax Server Address Book` must be set to `On`. For details, see "Fax Server Address Book" on page 307.
  - The fax number needs to be registered before you can select Address Book.

6 Press the ◇ (**Start**) button.

When the document is placed on the document glass, the display prompts you for another page. If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then select `Continue`. When you have finished loading documents, select `Send Now`.

The printer starts dialing the number, and then sending the fax when the remote fax machine is ready.

NOTE:

- By pressing the ▽ (**Stop**) button, you can cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax.

■ Sending a Fax Manually

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

> **See also:**
> - "Loading an Original Document" on page 253

2 Press the ⌂ (**Services**) button.

3 Select Fax.

4 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs.

> **See also:**
> - "Adjusting the Document Resolution" on page 255
> - "Adjusting the Document Contrast" on page 255

5 Select OnHook, and then select Manual Send.

6 Enter the remote fax machine's fax number using the number pad.

You can also select the recipient by using speed dial number or address book.

> **See also:**
> - "Automatic Redialing" on page 257
>
> **NOTE:**
> - You can enter a fax number using the ten key, *, and #.
> - Pressing the ⟩↺ / ⟩ıı (**Redial / Pause**) button enables you to enter a pause in the fax number.
> - Entering "=" in the fax number enables dial tone detection.
> - Entering ":" enables you to switch dialing type from dial pulse (DP) to push button (PB).

7 Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin sending the fax.

> **NOTE:**
> - By pressing the ⊘ (**Stop**) button, you can cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax.

■ Confirming Transmissions

When the last page of your document has been sent successfully, the printer beeps and returns to the standby mode.

If something goes wrong while sending your fax, an error message appears on the LCD panel.

If you receive an error message, select OK to clear the message and try to send the document again.

You can set your printer to print a confirmation report automatically after each fax transmission.

See also:
- "Printing a Report Page" on page 278

■ Automatic Redialing

If the number you have dialed is busy or there is no answer when you send a fax, the printer will automatically redial the number every minute based on the number set in the redial settings.

To change the time interval between redials and the number of redial attempts, see "Available Fax Settings Options" on page 273.

NOTE:
- The printer will not automatically redial a number that was busy when the number was manually entered.

Sending a Delayed Fax

The Delayed Start mode can be used to save scanned documents for transmission at a specified time to take advantage of lower long distance rates.

1. Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the DADF.

   OR

   Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   See also:
   - "Loading an Original Document" on page 253

2. Press the ⌂ (**Services**) button.

3. Select `Fax`.

4. Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs.

   See also:
   - "Adjusting the Document Resolution" on page 255
   - "Adjusting the Document Contrast" on page 255

5. Select the `Options` tab, and then select `Delayed Send`.

6. Select `On`.

7. Enter the start time using the number pad, and then select `OK`.

8. Select the `Fax` tab.

9. Enter the fax number of the recipient using the number pad.

   You can also use speed or group dial numbers.

   See also:
   - "Automatic Dialing" on page 265

10. Press the ◊ (**Start**) button to scan data.

Once Delayed Start mode is activated, your printer stores all of the documents to be faxed into its memory and sends them at the specified time. After faxing in the Delayed Start mode is complete, the data in the memory is cleared.

NOTE:
- If you turn off and on the printer, the stored documents are sent as soon as the printer is activated.

Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax)

You can send a fax directly from the computer running a Microsoft® Windows® operating system or Mac OS® X by using the driver.

NOTE:
- Only black and white faxes can be sent using Direct Fax.
- The names of the dialog boxes and the buttons may be different from those given in the following procedure depending on the application you are using.
- For Windows, the fax driver is installed with the PCL 6 driver. (For details, see "Inserting the CD-ROM" on page 100.)
- For Mac OS X, to use this feature, you must install the fax driver. To install the fax driver, run the Driver CD Kit on the Mac OS X, and then double-click **FX DocuPrint CM405 df.dmg** in the **MacOSX** folder under the **Contents** folder, and then follow the on-screen instructions to install the fax driver.

1 Open the file you want to send by fax.

2 Open the print dialog box from the application, and then select your printer name.

3 Click **Preferences** in Windows, or select **FAX Setting** in Mac OS X.

For Windows:
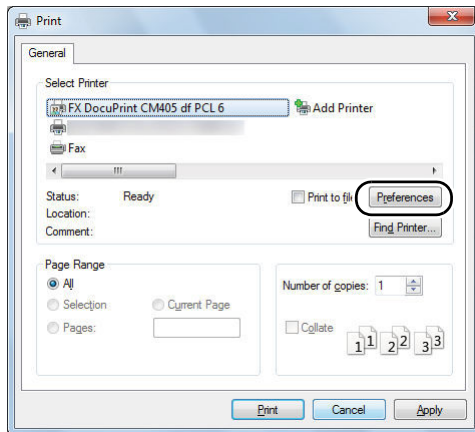
For Mac OS X:
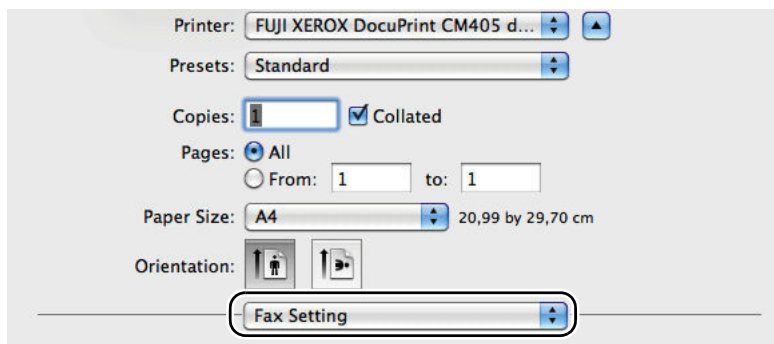
4 Specify the fax settings. For more information, see the Help of the driver.

NOTE:

- The settings done here are only applied to a single fax job.

For Windows:
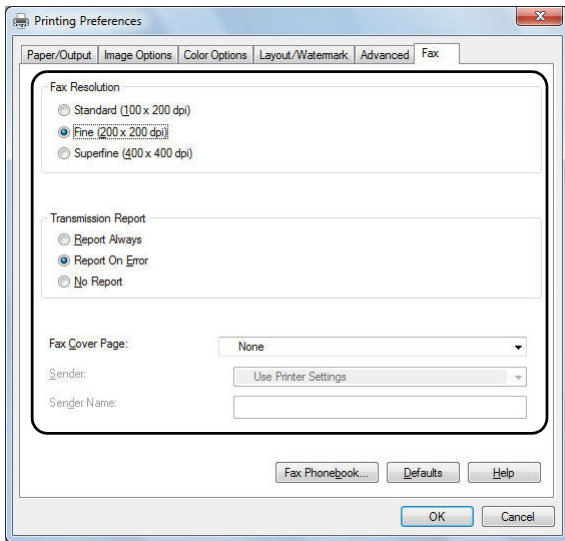
For Mac OS X:
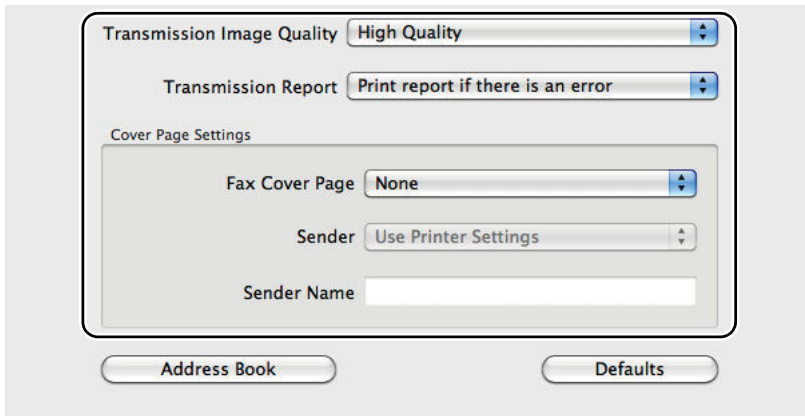
5 For Windows, click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** dialog box, and then click **Print**.

The **Recipient Setting** dialog box appears.

For Mac OS X, click **Print**. The **Set / Check Fax Transmission** dialog box appears.

For Windows:
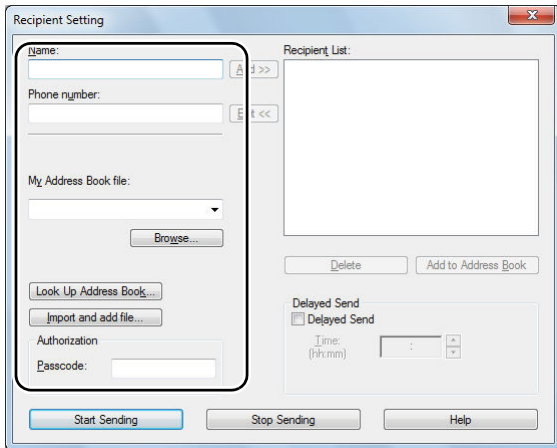
For Mac OS X:
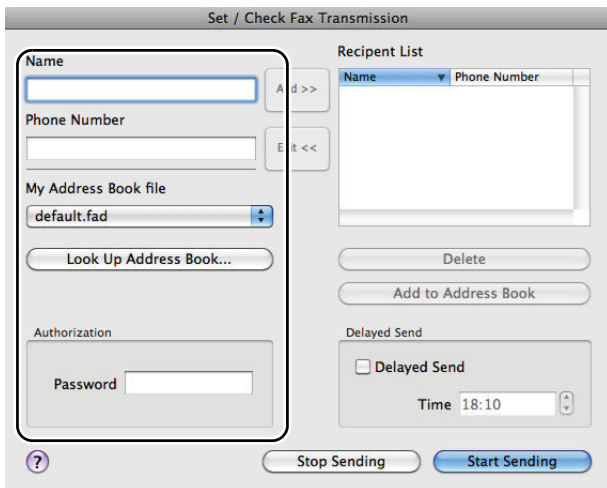
6 Specify the destination for the recipient in one of the following ways. For details on how to specify the destination, see the Help of the driver.

    a Enter the name and fax number directly.

    b Select a fax number from the address book.

       • **Look Up Address Book**: Displays a list of fax numbers that are saved in the file specified for **My Address Book file**.

       • **Import and add file** (Windows only): Allows you to select a source file such as a CSV file, WAB file, MAPI, or a LDAP server. (For details on LDAP server, see "Fax Server Address Book" on page 307.)

NOTE:

• Enter the password in **Passcode** in Windows or **Password** in Mac OS X in the **Authorization** area before sending a fax if the Fax service is locked with a password.

Receiving a Fax

This section includes:

■ About Receiving Modes

NOTE:
- To use the TEL/FAX Mode or Ans/FAX Mode, connect an external telephone or answering machine to the phone connector ( ) on the rear of your printer.

When the memory is full, you cannot receive a fax automatically. Use an external telephone to receive a fax manually.

See also:
- "Receiving a Fax Manually Using an External Telephone" on page 263

■ Loading Paper for Receiving Faxes

The instructions for loading paper in the paper tray are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying, except that faxes can only be printed on Letter-sized, A4-sized, or Legal-sized paper.

See also:
- "Loading Print Media" on page 143
- "Setting Paper Sizes and Types" on page 151

■ Receiving a Fax Automatically in the FAX Mode

Your printer is preset to the FAX Mode at the factory.

If you receive a fax, the printer automatically goes into the FAX Mode after a specified period of time and receives the fax.

To change the interval at which the printer goes into the FAX Mode after receiving an incoming call, see "Available Fax Settings Options" on page 273.

■ Receiving a Fax Manually in the TEL Mode

You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone and then pressing the remote receive code (see "Available Fax Settings Options" on page 273), or by selecting `Manual Receive` in `OnHook` (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine) and then pressing the (**Start**) button.

The printer begins receiving a fax and returns to the standby mode when the reception is completed.

■ Receiving a Fax Automatically in the TEL/FAX Mode or Ans/FAX Mode

To use the TEL/FAX Mode or Ans/FAX Mode, you must connect an external telephone to the phone connector (📞) on the rear of your printer.

If the caller leaves a message, the answering machine stores the message as it would normally. If your printer hears a fax tone on the line, it automatically starts to receive a fax.

NOTE:
- If you have set your printer to Ans/FAX Mode and your answering machine is turned off, or no answering machine is connected to your printer, your printer will automatically go into the FAX Mode after a predefined time.

■ Receiving a Fax Manually Using an External Telephone

This feature works best when you are using an external telephone connected to the phone connector (📞) on the rear of your printer. You can receive a fax from someone you are talking to on the external telephone without having to go to the printer.

When you receive a call on the external telephone and hear fax tones, press the two-digit keys on the external telephone, or set select `Manual Receive` in `OnHook` and then press the ◇ (**Start**) button.

The printer receives the document.

Press the buttons slowly in sequence. If you still hear the fax tone from the remote machine, try pressing the two-digit keys once again.

The remote receive code is set to `Off` at the factory. You can change the two-digit number to whatever you choose. For details on changing the code, see "Available Fax Settings Options" on page 273.

NOTE:
- Set the dialing system of your external telephone to DTMF.

■ Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD Mode

The Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) is a telephone company service which enables a user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers. The particular number someone uses to call you on is identified by different ringing patterns, which consist of various combinations of long and short ringing sounds.

Before using the DRPD option, Distinctive Ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. To set up DRPD, you will need another telephone line at your location, or someone available to dial your fax number from outside.

To set up the DRPD:

1 Press the 🛈 (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.

3 Select `Fax Settings`.

4 Select `Fax Line Settings`.

5 Select `DRPD Pattern`.

6 Select the desired pattern, and then select `OK`.

7 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on again.

   To receive faxes in the DRPD, you need to set the menu to DRPD. For details, see "Available Fax Settings Options" on page 273.

■ Receiving Faxes in the Memory

Since your printer is a multi-tasking device, it can receive faxes while you are making copies or printing. If you receive a fax while you are copying, printing, or run out of paper or toner, your printer stores incoming faxes in the memory. Then, as soon as you finish copying, printing, or re-supply the toner cartridges, the printer automatically prints the fax.

■ Polling Receive

You can receive faxes from the remote fax machine when you want to receive it.

1 Press the ⌂ (**Services**) button.

2 Select Fax.

3 Select the Options tab, and then select Polling Receive.

4 Select On, and then select OK.

5 Enter the number of the remote machine using the number pad.

> **NOTE:**
> • For information on how to enter the fax number of the remote machine, see "Sending a Fax From Memory" on page 256 or "Sending a Fax Manually" on page 257.

6 Press the ◇ (**Start**) button.

Automatic Dialing

This section includes:

■ Speed Dialing

You can store up to 200 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations (1–200).

When the speed dial job specified in the delayed fax or redial exists, you cannot change the speed dial number from the operator panel or CentreWare Internet Services.

■ Setting Speed Dial

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.

3 Select `Fax Address Book`.

4 Select `Individuals`.

5 Select the desired speed dial number between 1 and 200.

6 Select the `Name` text box.

7 Enter the name, and then select `OK`.

8 Select the `Fax Number` text box.

9 Enter the number you want to store using the number pad, and then select `OK`.

To insert a pause between numbers, press the ↺/❚❚ (**Redial / Pause**) button. "-" appears on the LCD panel.

10 Select `OK`.

To store more fax numbers, repeat steps 5 to 10.

To return to the top level of the System menu, press the **CA** (**Clear All**) button.

■ Sending a Fax Using Speed Dial

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the DADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

See also:
- "Loading an Original Document" on page 253

2 Press the ⌂ (**Services**) button.

3 Select Fax and then select 🔲 button.

4 Enter the speed dial number between 001 and 200 using the number pad, and then select 🔲 button.

5 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs.

See also:
- "Adjusting the Document Resolution" on page 255
- "Adjusting the Document Contrast" on page 255

6 Press the ◇ (**Start**) button.

The document scans into the memory.

When the document is placed on the document glass, the display prompts you for another page. If you want to place a new document, replace the document with a new document, and then press the ◇ (**Start**) button. When you have finished loading documents, select Send Now.

The fax number stored in the speed dial location is automatically dialed. The document is sent when the remote fax machine answers.

NOTE:
- Using the asterisk (*) in the first digit, you can send a document to multiple locations. For example, if you enter 00*, you can send a document to the locations registered between 001 and 009.

■ Group Dialing

If you frequently send the same document to several destinations, you can create a group of these destinations and set them under a one-digit group dial location. This enables you to use a group dial number setting to send the same document to all the destinations in the group.

NOTE:
- You cannot include one group dial number within another group dial number.

■ Setting Group Dial

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.

3 Select `Fax Address Book` and then select `Groups`.

4 Select the desired group dial number between 01 and 06.

5 Select the `Enter Group Name` text box.

6 Enter the name, and then select `OK`.

7 Select `Add from Address Book`.

8 Select the desired speed dial numbers.

9 Select `OK`, and then select `OK` again.

To store more group dial numbers, repeat steps 4 to 9.

To return to the top level of the System menu, press the **CA** (**Clear All**) button.

■ Editing Group Dial

You can delete a specific speed dial number from a selected group or add a new number to the selected group.

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.

3 Select `Fax Address Book` and then select `Groups`.

4 To change the group dial name:
    a Select the group dial number that you want to edit, and then select `Edit`.
    b Select `Enter Group Name` text box.
    c Enter a new name, and then select `OK` twice.

To delete a speed dial number from the group dial number:
    a Select the group dial number that you want to edit, and then select `Edit`.
    b Select the speed dial number that you want to edit.
    c Select `Remove`.
    d Select `OK`.

To delete the group dial:
    a Select the group dial number.
    b Select `Remove`.
    c Select `Delete`.

NOTE:
• When you delete the last speed dial in a group, the group itself is not deleted.

5 If you want to edit another group dial number, repeat step 4.

To return to the top level of the System menu, press the **CA** (**Clear All**) button.

■ Sending a Fax Using Group Dialing (Multi-address Transmission)

You can use group dialing for broadcasting or delayed transmissions.

Follow the procedure of the desired operation (For delayed transmission, see "Sending a Delayed Fax" on page 258).

You can use one or more group numbers in one operation. Then continue the procedure to complete the desired operation.

Your printer automatically scans the document loaded in the DADF or on the document glass into the memory. The printer dials each of the numbers included in the group.

■ Printing a Fax Address Book List

You can check your automatic dial setting by printing a Fax Address Book list.

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select `Report / List.`

3 Select `Fax Address Book,` and then select `Print.`

A list of your Fax Address Book entries is printed.

Address Book

You can select the registered phone numbers from the address books.

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the DADF.

   OR

   Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

   For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document" on page 253.

2 Press the ⌂ (**Services**) button.

3 Select `Fax`.

4 To select the registered phone numbers from the address books:

   a Select `Device Address Book - Individuals` or `Device Address Book - Groups`.

   b Select the desired speed dial number or group dial number.

   c Select `OK`.

   NOTE:
   - The fax number needs to be registered before you can select address book.

5 Press the ◇ (**Start**) button to begin sending the fax.

Other Ways to Fax

This section includes:

■ Using the Secure Receiving Mode

You may need to prevent your received faxes from being accessed by unauthorized people. You can turn on the secure fax mode using the `Secure Receive` option to restrict printing out all of the received faxes when the printer is unattended. In the secure receiving mode, all incoming faxes will go in memory. When the mode turns off, any faxes stored will be printed.

NOTE:
- Before operation, ensure `Panel Lock` is enabled.

To turn the secure receiving mode on:

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.

3 Select `Fax Settings`.

4 Select `Incoming Defaults`.

5 Select `Secure Receive`.

6 Select `Secure Receive Set`.

7 Select `Enable`, and then select `OK`.

8 Enter a four-digit password using the number pad, and then select `OK`.

   To return to the top level of the System menu, press the **CA** (**Clear All**) button.

   When a fax is received in the secure receiving mode, your printer stores it into memory and the `Active Jobs` screen displays `Secure Receive` to let you know that there is a fax stored.

To print received documents:

1 Press the ⓘ (**Job Status**) button.

2 Select `Secure Fax Receive`.

3 Enter the passcode, and then select `OK`.

   The faxes stored in memory are printed.

To turn the secure receiving mode off:

1 Access the `Secure Receive Set` menu by following steps from 1 to 6 in "To turn the secure receiving mode on:" on page 270.

2 Select `Disable`, and then select `OK`.

   To return to the top level of the System menu, press the **CA** (**Clear All**) button.

◼ Using an Answering Machine

Line
To the wall jack   Printer   Telephone Answering Device   Phone
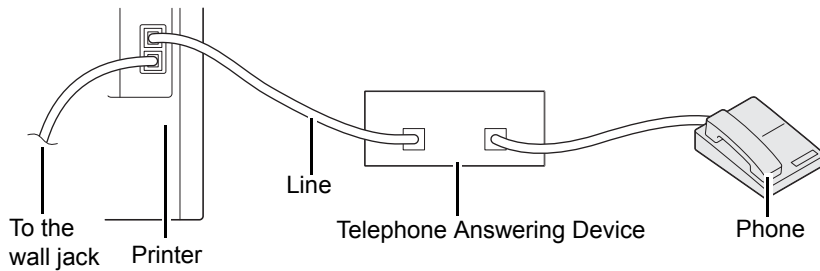
You can connect a telephone answering device (TAD) directly to the rear of your printer as shown above.

- Set your printer to the `Ans/FAX Mode` and set `Auto Ans. Ans/FAX` to specify the time for the TAD.
- When the TAD picks up the call, the printer monitors and takes the line if fax tones are received and then starts receiving the fax.
- If the answering device is off, the printer automatically goes into the FAX Mode after the ring tone sounds for a predefined time.
- If you answer the call and hear fax tones, the printer will answer the fax call if you

  → Select `Manual Receive` in `OnHook` (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine), and then press the ◇ (**Start**) button and hang up the receiver.

  OR

  → Press the two-digit remote receive code and hang up the receiver.

◼ Using a Computer Modem

Line
To the internet   Computer   Printer   Telephone Answering Device   Phone
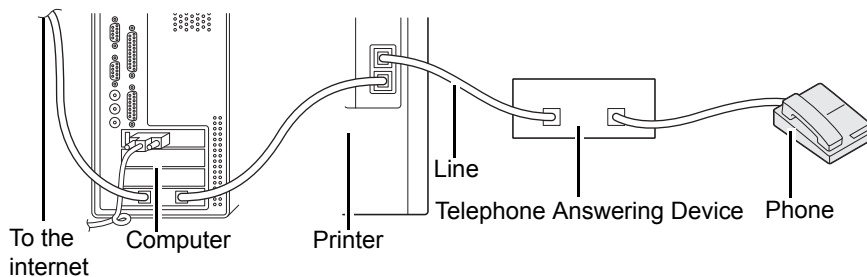
If you want to use your computer modem for faxing or for a dial-up internet connection, connect the computer modem directly to the rear of your printer with the TAD as shown above.

- Set your printer to the `Ans/FAX Mode` and set `Auto Ans. Ans/FAX` to specify the time for the TAD.
- Turn off the computer modem's Fax Receive feature.
- Do not use the computer modem if your printer is sending or receiving a fax.
- Follow the instructions provided with your computer modem and fax application to fax via the computer modem.

Setting Sounds

This section includes:

■ Speaker Volume

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.

3 Select `Fax Settings`.

4 Select `Fax Line Settings`.

5 Select `Line Monitor`.

6 Select the desired volume, and then select `OK`.

7 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

■ Ringer Volume

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.

3 Select `Fax Settings`.

4 Select `Incoming Defaults`.

5 Select `Ring Tone Volume`.

6 Select the desired volume, and then select `OK`.

7 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

Specifying the Fax Settings Options

This section includes:

■ Changing the Fax Settings Options

1 Press the 🛈 (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.

3 Select `Fax Settings`.

4 Select the desired menu item.

5 Select the desired setting or enter the value using the number pad.

6 Select `OK` to save the selection.

7 Ensure that the message `This Setting Becomes Effective after Restart` appears, and then press any button.

8 If necessary, repeat steps 4 to 6.

To return to the top level of the System menu, press the **CA** (**Clear All**) button.

■ Available Fax Settings Options

You can use the following settings options for configuring the fax system:

Option	Description
Fax Number	Specifies the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of faxes. This feature is available when you set `Send Header` to `On`. The number specified in `Fax Number` is used in the printer ID.
Region	You can select the region where the printer is used. You can change this setting when: • No jobs in operation • No fax jobs waiting in the memory
Company Name	Specifies the sender's name to be printed on the header of faxes.
Line Type	You can select the default line type. • PSTN • PBX
Line Monitor	Sets the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
DRPD Pattern	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
Extel Hook Threshold	You can select the external telephone hook detection threshold for the condition in which a telephone line is not being used.

Option		Description
Receive Mode	**TEL Mode**	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone and then pressing the remote receive code, or by selecting `Manual Receive` in `OnHook` (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine) and then pressing the ◇ (**Start**) button.
	FAX Mode*	Automatically receives faxes.
	TEL/FAX Mode	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in `Auto Ans. TEL/FAX`, and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
	Ans/FAX Mode	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones.
	DRPD Mode	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
Ring Tone Volume		Sets the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when `Ans Select` is set to `TEL/FAX Mode`.
Auto Answer Setup	**Auto Answer Fax**	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 0 second.
	Auto Answer TEL/FAX	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 6 seconds.
	Auto Answer Ans/FAX	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 21 seconds.
Junk Fax Filter		You can reject faxes sent from unwanted stations. The system only accepts faxes from the remote stations registered in the speed dial. This feature is useful for blocking any unwanted faxes.
		Select `Off` to turn the feature off. Anybody can send you a fax.
		Select `On` to turn the feature on.
Secure Receive	**Secure Receive set**	Allows you to password protect all the incoming faxes. When the Secure Receive feature is enabled, the printer stores incoming faxes and prints them when the correct password is entered on the operator panel.
Forward Settings		You can set your printer to forward incoming faxes to another fax number. When a fax arrives at your printer, it is stored in the memory. Then, the printer dials the fax number that you have specified and sends the fax.
		Select `Off` not to forward incoming faxes.
		Select `Forward` to forward incoming faxes without printing. If an error occurs during forwarding a received fax, the printer prints the fax.
		Select `Print and Forward` to forward and print incoming faxes.
Forwarding Number		You enter the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.
2 Sided Print		You can set whether to make duplex print when you print faxes.
		Select `Off` to print faxes on one side of a sheet of paper.
		Select `On` to print faxes on both sides of a sheet of paper.
Remote Receive		You can receive a fax by pressing the remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.
Remote Receive Tone		You can specify the tone when `Remote Receive` is set to `On`.

Option		Description
Discard Size		When receiving a document as long as or longer than the paper installed in your printer, you can set the printer to discard any excess at the bottom of the page. If the received page is outside the margin you set, it will print on two sheets of paper at the actual size. When the document is within the margin and `Discard Size` is set to `Auto Reduction`, the printer reduces the document to fit it onto the appropriate sized paper and discard does not occur. If `Discard Size` is set to other than `Auto Reduction`, the data within the margin will be discarded.
Auto Redial Setup	Number of Redial	You can specify the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy, within the range of 0 to 9. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial.
	Redial Interval	Your printer can automatically redial a remote fax machine if it was busy. Intervals from 1–15 minutes can be entered.
	Interval Timer	You can specify the interval between transmission attempts within the range of 3 to 255 seconds. The default is 8 seconds.
Dial Type		You can select the dialing type. • PB • DP (10PPS) • DP (20PPS)
Prefix Dial		You can specify whether or not to set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Number		You can set a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PBX).
Fax Cover Page		You can set whether to attach a cover page to faxes when sending faxes.
Send Header		Prints the sender's information on the header of faxes. Select `Off` to turn this feature off. Select `On` to turn this feature on. Note that if `United States` is selected for the setting of `Region`, this option does not appear on the menu. The setting is fixed to `On` and cannot be changed. For information on the region setting, see "Specifying the Fax Initial Settings From the Operator Panel" on page 250.
ECM		You can set whether to enable or disable the ECM (Error Correction Mode).
Modem Speed		You can set the modem speed.
Display Manual Fax Recipients		To set whether to display the fax number of the recipient when manually sending a fax.
Fax Reports	Fax Activity	You can set whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
	Fax Transmit	You can set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission.
	Fax Broadcast	You can set whether to print a transmission result after a fax broadcast to multiple locations.
	Fax Protocol	You can set whether to print the protocol monitor report after a fax transmission to monitor fax protocol problems.

• Prefix Dial

NOTE:

- Prefix Dial supports only the environment where you send a fax to the external line number. To use Prefix Dial, you must do the following from the operator panel.

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Admin Settings`.

3 Select `Fax Settings`.

4 Select `Fax Line Settings`.

5 Select `Line Type`.

6 Select `PBX`.

7 Access the `Fax Settings` menu by following steps from 1 to 3.

8 Select `Transmission Defaults`.

9 Select `Prefix Dial`.

10 Select `On`, and then select `OK`.

11 Enter an up-to-five-digit prefix number from 0–9, *, and #, and then select `OK`.

12 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

Changing Setting Options

1   Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2   Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Default Settings`.

3   Select `Fax Defaults`.

4   Select the desired menu item.

5   Select the desired setting or enter the value using the number pad, and then select `OK`.
        To return to the top level of the System menu, press the **CA** (**Clear All**) button.

Printing a Report Page

The following reports may be useful when you use the fax:

- Fax Address Book

  This list shows all the fax numbers currently stored in the memory of your printer as speed dial numbers.

  You can print this Fax Address Book list from the operator panel. (For details, see also "Printing a Fax Address Book List" on page 268.)

- Email Address Book

  This list shows all the e-mail addresses currently stored in the memory of your printer as Email Address Book information.

- Fax Activity

  This report shows information about the faxes you recently received or sent.

- Fax Pending

  This list shows the status of pending faxes. You may print this list to confirm your changes after changing any settings.

Procedures:

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select `Report / List.`

3 Select the report or list you want to print, and then select `Print.`

The selected report or list is printed.

9

Using the Operator Panel Menus and Keypad

This chapter includes:

Understanding the Printer Menus

When your printer is connected to a network and available to a number of users, the access to the `Admin Settings` can be limited. This prevents other users from using the operator panel to inadvertently change a user default that has been set by the administrator.

However, you can use your print driver to override user defaults and select settings for individual print jobs.

■ Report / List

Use the `Report / List` menu to print various types of reports and lists.

System Settings

Purpose:

To print a list of the current user default values, the installed options, the amount of installed print memory, and the status of printer supplies.

Panel Settings

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of all the settings on the operator panel menus.

PCL Fonts List

Purpose:

To print a sample of the available PCL fonts.

PCL Macros List

Purpose:

To print the information on the downloaded PCL macro.

PS Fonts List

Purpose:

To print a sample of the available PS fonts.

PDF Fonts List

Purpose:

To print a sample of the available PDF fonts.

Job History

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of the print, copy, fax, or scan jobs that have been processed. This list contains the last 20 jobs.

Error History

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of paper jams and fatal errors.

Printer Meter

Purpose:

To print the reports for the total number of pages printed.

Demo Page

Purpose:

To print a page for testing colors.

Protocol Monitor

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of monitored protocols.

Fax Address Book

Purpose:

To print the list of all fax addresses stored as Fax Address Book information.

Email Address Book

Purpose:

To print the list of all e-mail addresses stored as Email Address Book information.

Server Address

Purpose:

To print the list of all server addresses stored as Server Address information.

Fax Activity

Purpose:

To print the report of faxes you recently received or sent.

Fax Pending

Purpose:

To print the list of status of pending faxes.

Stored Documents

NOTE:

- Stored Documents feature is available only when the optional 512MB memory is installed on the printer and `RAM Disk` under `System Settings` is enabled or when the hard disk unit is installed.

Purpose:

To print a list of all files stored for `Secure Print` and `Sample Print` in the RAM disk.

■ Billing Meters

Purpose:

To check the total number of printed pages.

Values:

Meter1	Displays the total number of color prints.
Meter2	Displays the total number of monochrome prints.
Meter3[*1]	Displays the total number of large size color prints.
Meter4	Displays the total number of color and monochrome prints (Meter1 + Meter2).

[*1] This item always shows `0` on your printer.

■ Admin Settings

Use the `Admin Settings` menu to configure a variety of printer features.

Fax Address Book

Use the `Fax Address Book` menu to configure the individuals and groups settings.

• Individuals

Purpose:

To store up to 200 frequently dialed numbers in individuals locations.

• Groups

Purpose:

To create a group of fax destinations and register it under a two-digit dial code. Up to six group dial codes can be registered.

PCL Settings

Use the `PCL Settings` menu to change printer settings that only affect jobs using the PCL emulation printer language.

NOTE:
- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• Paper Tray

Purpose:

To specify the default paper tray.

Values:

Auto[*]
Bypass Tray
Tray1
Tray2[*1]

[*1] `Tray2` is available only when the optional 550 sheet feeder is installed.

• Output Size

Purpose:

To specify the default paper size.

Values:

mm series

A4 (210 x 297mm)*[1]			
A5 (148 x 210mm)			
B5 (182 x 257mm)			
Letter (8.5 x 11")			
Folio (8.5 x 13")			
Legal (8.5 x 14")			
Executive(7.25 x 10.5")			
Monarch Env. (3.9 x 7.5")			
DL Env. (110 x 220mm)			
C5 Env. (162 x 229mm)			
#10 Env. (4.1 x 9.5")			
New Custom Size	**Width(x)**	210 mm*	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
		77 - 215 mm	
	Length(y)	297 mm*	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
		127 - 355 mm	

[1]The default for Output Size varies depending on region-specific factory.

inch series

Letter (8.5 x 11")*[1]			
Folio (8.5 x 13")			
Legal (8.5 x 14")			
A4 (210 x 297 mm)			
A5 (148 x 210 mm)			
B5 (182 x 257 mm)			
Executive(7.25 x 10.5")			
Monarch Env. (3.9 x 7.5")			
DL Env. (110 x 220 mm)			
C5 Env. (162 x 229 mm)			
#10 Env. (4.1 x 9.5")			
New Custom Size	**Width(x)**	8.3 inch*	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
		3.0-8.5 inches	
	Length(y)	11.7 inch*	Specifies the width of the custom size paper.
		5.0-14.0 inches	

[1]The default for Output Size varies depending on region-specific factory.

NOTE:

• Selecting New Custom Size for the paper size prompts you to enter a custom length and width.

• Orientation

Purpose:

To specify how text and graphics are oriented on the page.

Values:

Portrait[*]	Prints text and graphics parallel to the short edge of the paper.
Landscape	Prints text and graphics parallel to the long edge of the paper.

• 2 Sided Print

Purpose:

To specify whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.

Values:

1 Sided*			Does not print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
2 Sided	**Binding Edge**	**Long Edge Flip**[*]	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
		Short Edge Flip	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.

• Font

Purpose:

To specify the default font from the fonts registered in the printer.

Values:

CG Times	**LetterGothic**	**CourierPS**
CG Times It	**LetterGothic It**	**CourierPS Ob**
CG Times Bd	**LetterGothic Bd**	**CourierPS Bd**
CG Times BdIt	**Albertus Md**	**CourierPS BdOb**
Univers Md	**Albertus XBd**	**SymbolPS**
Univers MdIt	**Clarendon Cd**	**Palatino Roman**
Univers Bd	**Coronet**	**Palatino It**
Univers BdIt	**Marigold**	**Palatino Bd**
Univers MdCd	**Arial**	**Palatino BdIt**
Univers MdCdIt	**Arial It**	**ITCBookman Lt**
Univers BdCd	**Arial Bd**	**ITCBookman LtIt**
Univers BdCdIt	**Arial BdIt**	**ITCBookmanDm**
AntiqueOlv	**Times New**	**ITCBookmanDm It**
AntiqueOlv It	**Times New It**	**HelveticaNr**
AntiqueOlv Bd	**Times New Bd**	**HelveticaNr Ob**
CG Omega	**Times New BdIt**	**HelveticaNr Bd**
CG Omega It	**Symbol**	**HelveticaNrBdOb**
CG Omega Bd	**Wingdings**	**N C Schbk Roman**
CG Omega BdIt	**Line Printer**	**N C Schbk It**
GaramondAntiqua	**Times Roman**	**N C Schbk Bd**
Garamond Krsv	**Times It**	**N C Schbk BdIt**
Garamond Hlb	**Times Bd**	**ITC A G Go Bk**
GaramondKrsvHlb	**Times BdIt**	**ITC A G Go BkOb**
Courier[*]	**Helvetica**	**ITC A G Go Dm**
Courier It	**Helvetica Ob**	**ITC A G Go DmOb**
Courier Bd	**Helvetica Bd**	**ZapfC MdIt**
Courier BdIt	**Helvetica BdOb**	**ZapfDingbats**

• Symbol Set

Purpose:

To specify a symbol set for a specified font.

Values:

ROMAN-8*	WIN L1	ISO-6
ISO L1	WIN L2	ISO-11
ISO L2	WIN L5	ISO-15
ISO L5	DESKTOP	ISO-17
ISO L6	PS TEXT	ISO-21
PC-8	MC TEXT	ISO-60
PC-8 DN	MS PUB	ISO-69
PC-775	MATH-8	WIN 3.0
PC-850	PS MATH	WINBALT
PC-852	PI FONT	SYMBOL
PC-1004	LEGAL	WINGDINGS
PC-8 TK	ISO-4	DNGBTSMS

• Font Size

Purpose:

To specify the font size for scalable typographic fonts, within the range of 4.00 to 50.00. The default is 12.00.

Font size refers to the height of the characters in the font. One point equals approximately 1/72 of an inch.

NOTE:
- The `Font Size` menu is only displayed for typographic fonts.

• Font Pitch

Purpose:

To specify the font pitch for scalable mono spaced fonts, within the range of 6.00 to 24.00. The default is 10.00.

Font pitch refers to the number of fixed-space characters in a horizontal inch of type. For nonscheduled mono spaced fonts, the pitch is displayed, but cannot be changed.

NOTE:
- The `Font Pitch` menu is only displayed for fixed or mono spaced fonts.

• Form Line

Purpose:

To set the number of lines in a page.

Values:

64[1] (mm series)/60[1] (inch series)	Sets the value in increments of 1.
5–128	

[1]Denotes region-specific factory default values.

The printer sets the amount of space between each line (vertical line spacing) based on the `Form Line` and `Orientation` menu items. Select the correct `Form Line` and `Orientation` before changing `Form Line`.

See also:

• Quantity

Purpose:

To set the default print quantity, within the range of 1 to 999. The default is 1. (Set the number of copies required for a specific job from the print driver. Values selected from the print driver always override values selected from the operator panel.)

• Image Enhance

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable the Image Enhance feature, which makes the boundary line between black and white smoother to decrease jagged edges and enhance the visual appearance.

Values:

Off	Disables the Image Enhance feature.
On[*]	Enables the Image Enhance feature.

• Hex Dump

Purpose:

To help isolate the source of a print job problem. With `Hex Dump` selected, all data sent to the printer is printed in hexadecimal and character representation. Control codes are not executed.

Values:

Disable[*]	Disables the Hex Dump feature.
Enable	Enables the Hex Dump feature.

• Draft Mode

Purpose:

To save toner by printing in the draft mode. The print quality is reduced when you print in the draft mode.

Values:

Disable[*]	Does not print in the draft mode.
Enable	Prints in the draft mode.

• Line Termination

Purpose:

To add the line termination commands.

Values:

Off[*]	The line termination command is not added.
	CR=CR, LF=LF, FF=FF
Add-LF	The LF command is added.
	CR=CR-LF, LF=LF, FF=FF
Add-CR	The CR command is added.
	CR=CR, LF=CR-LF, FF=CR-FF
CR-XX	The CR and LF commands are added.
	CR=CR-LF, LF=CR-LF, FF=CR-FF

• Output Color

Purpose:

To specify the color mode to Color or Black and White. This setting is used for a print job that does not specify a print mode.

Values:

Black and White[*]	Prints in the black and white mode.
Color	Prints in the color mode.

• Ignore Form Feed

Purpose:

To specify whether to ignore blank pages that only contain Form Feed control codes.

Values:

Off[*]	Disables the Ignore Form Feed feature.
On	Enables the Ignore Form Feed feature.

PostScript Settings

Use the `PostScript Settings` menu to change printer settings that only affect jobs using the PostScript® emulation printer language.

NOTE:
- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• PS Error Report

Purpose:

To specify whether to print the contents of PostScript errors.

The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Off	Discards the print job without printing an error message.
On*	Prints an error message before it discards the job.

NOTE:
- Instructions from the PS driver override the settings specified on the operator panel.

• PS Job Time-out

Purpose:

To specify the runtime of one PostScript job.The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Off*		Job time-out does not occur.
On	**1**	A PostScript error occurs if processing is not completed after the specified time.
	1-900min	

• Paper Select Mode

Purpose:

To set the way to select the paper tray for PostScript mode.The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto*	The tray is selected as the same setting as in the PCL mode.
Select From Tray	The tray is selected in a method compatible with regular PostScript printers.

• Output Color

Purpose:

To specify the color mode to Color or Black and White. This setting is used for a print job which does not specify a print mode.

Values:

Color*	Prints in color mode.
Black and White	Prints in black and white mode.

PDF Settings

Use the `PDF Settings` menu to change printer settings that only affect the PDF jobs.

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• Quantity

Purpose:

To specify the number of copies to print.

Values:

1*	Sets the value in increments of 1.
1–999	

• 2 Sided Print

Purpose:

To specify whether to print on both sides of a sheet of paper.

Values:

1 Sided*			Does not print on both sides of a sheet of paper.
2 Sided	**Binding Edge**	**Long Edge Flip***	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
		Short Edge Flip	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.

• Print Mode

Purpose:

To specify the print mode.

Values:

Normal*	For documents with normal sized characters.
High Quality	For documents with small characters or thin lines, or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
High Speed	Prints with the higher speed than the Normal mode, but the quality is less.

• PDF Password

Purpose:

To specify the password to print the secure PDF.

Value:

Enter PDF Password	Enter the password to print the secure PDF.

• Collation

Purpose:

To specify whether to sort the job.

Values:

Collated	Sorts the job.
Uncollated[*]	Does not sort the job.

• Output Size

Purpose:

To specify the output paper size for PDF.

Values:

A4[*1]
Letter[*1]
Auto

*1 The default paper size is displayed.

• Layout

Purpose:

To specify the output layout.

Values:

Full to Paper[*]
100% (No Scaling)
Booklet
2 Sides per Page
4 Sides per Page

• Output Color

Purpose:

To specify the output color.

Values:

Color (Auto)[*]
Black and White

Network Setup

Use the `Network Setup` menu to change the printer settings affecting jobs sent to the printer through the wired or wireless network.

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• Ethernet/Wireless

NOTE:

- When using a wired network, `Ethernet` is displayed. When the optional wireless printer adapter is attached and the Ethernet cable is disconnected, `Wireless` is displayed.

Purpose:

To confirm or specify network settings.

Wireless Status

NOTE:

- Wireless Status feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To confirm the wireless communication status.

Values:

Status	Good
	Acceptable
	Low
	No Reception
SSID	Displays the name that identifies the wireless network.
Encryption Type	No Security
	WEP
	WPA-PSK-TKIP
	WPA2-PSK-AES
	Mixed mode PSK
	WPA-Enterprise-TKIP*
	WPA2-Enterprise-AES*
	Mixed mode Enterprise*

*The settings can be configured only on CWIS.

Wireless Setup Wizard

NOTE:

• Wireless Setup Wizard is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To configure the wireless network interface. The printer automatically searches and list available access points. Select one of the access points, and enter a pass phrase or WEP key to complete the wireless setup. You can also specify and configure the wireless network manually.

Values:

Select Access		Select the access point from the list.
	WEP Key	When you select an access point using WEP as the encryption type, enter the WEP key.
	WPA	When you select an access point using WPA, WPA2, or Mixed as the encryption type, enter the password.
	WPA2	

Manual SSID Setup	Enter SSID			Specifies a name to identify the wireless network. Up to 32 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
	Infrastructure			Select when you configure the wireless setting through the access point such as a wireless router.
		No Security		Specifies to configure the wireless setting without specifying a encryption type from WEP, WPA-PSK-TKIP, and WPA-PSK-AES.
		Mixed mode PSK*		Select to configure the wireless setting with the encryption type of Mixed mode PSK.
			Wireless Setup Password	Specifies the password of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63.
		WPA-PSK-TKIP		Select to configure the wireless setting with the encryption type of WPA-PSK-TKIP.
			Wireless Setup Password	Specifies the password of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63.
		WPA2-PSK-AES		Select to configure the wireless setting with the encryption type of WPA2-PSK-AES.
			Wireless Setup Password	Specifies the password of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63.
		WEP		Specifies the WEP key to use through the wireless network. For 64bit keys, up to 10 hexadecimal characters can be entered. For 128bit keys, up to 26 hexadecimal characters can be entered.
			Transmit Key	Specifies the transmit key from Auto, WEP Key 1, WEP Key 2, WEP Key 3, and WEP Key 4.
	Ad-hoc			Select to configure the wireless setting without the access point such as a wireless router.
		No Security*		Select to configure the wireless setting without specifying the encryption type from WEP.
		WEP		Specifies the WEP key to use through the wireless network. For 64bit keys, up to 10 hexadecimal characters can be entered. For 128bit keys, up to 26 hexadecimal characters can be entered.
			Transmit Key	Specifies the transmit key from WEP Key 1, WEP Key 2, WEP Key 3, and WEP Key 4.

WPS Setup

- WPS Setup is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To configure the wireless network using WPS.

Values:

Push Button Control*	Start Configuration	Configures the wireless setting with WPS-PBC.
PIN Code	Start Configuration	Configures the wireless setting using the PIN code assigned automatically by the printer.
	Print PIN Code	Prints the PIN code. Confirm it when entering PIN assigned to the printer into your computer.

IP Mode

Purpose:

To configure the IP mode.

Values:

Dual Stack*	Uses both IPv4 and IPv6 to set the IP address.
IPv4 Mode	Uses IPv4 to set the IP address.
IPv6 Mode	Uses IPv6 to set the IP address.

TCP/IP

Purpose:

To configure TCP/IP settings.

Values:

Get IP Address	DHCP / AutoIP*	Sets the IP address automatically. A random value in the range of `169.254.1.0` to `169.254.254.255` that is not currently in use on the network is set as the IP address. The subnet mask is set as `255.255.0.0`.
	BOOTP	Sets the IP address using BOOTP.
	RARP	Sets the IP address using RARP.
	DHCP	Sets the IP address using DHCP.
	Panel	Use this option when you want to set the IP address manually on the operator panel.
IP Address		When an IP address is being set manually, the IP is allocated to the printer using the format `nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn`. Each octet that makes up `nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn` is a value in the range of `0` to `254.127` and any value in the range of `224` to `254` cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.
Subnet Mask		When an IP address is being set manually, the subnet mask is specified using the format `nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn`. Each octet that makes up `nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn` is a value in the range of `0` to `255.255.255.255.255` cannot be specified as the subnet mask.
Gateway Address		When an IP address is being set manually, the gateway address is specified using the format `nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn`. Each octet that makes up `nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn` is a value in the range of `0` to `254.127` and any value in the range of `224` to `254` cannot be specified for the first octet of a gateway address.

IPsec

NOTE:

• IPsec feature is available only when IPsec is enabled on the CentreWare Internet Services.

Purpose:

Disables IPsec.

Value:

Disable	Disables IPsec.

Reset Wireless

NOTE:

• Reset Wireless feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wireless network.

Purpose:

To initialize wireless network settings. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wireless network settings are reset to their default values.

Value:

Reset	Initialize wireless network settings.

Connection Speed

NOTE:

• Connection Speed feature is available only when the printer is connected using the wired network.

Purpose:

To specify the communication speed and the duplex settings of Ethernet. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto[*]	Detects the Ethernet settings automatically.
10BASE-T Half	Uses 10BASE-T Half-duplex.
10BASE-T Full	Uses 10BASE-T Full-duplex.
100BASE-TX Half	Uses 100BASE-TX Half-duplex.
100BASE-TX Full	Uses 100BASE-TX Full-duplex.
1000BASE-T Full	Uses 1000BASE-T Full-duplex.

• Protocols

Purpose:

To enable or disable each protocol. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

LPD	**Disable**	Disables the Line Printer Daemon (LPD) port.
	Enable*	Enables the LPD port.
Port9100	**Disable**	Disables the Port9100 port.
	Enable*	Enables the Port9100 port.
FTP	**Disable**	Disables FTP port.
	Enable*	Enables FTP port.
IPP	**Disable**	Disables IPP port.
	Enable*	Enables IPP port.
SMB TCP/IP	**Disable**	Disables SMB TCP/IP port.
	Enable*	Enables SMB TCP/IP port.
SMB NetBEUI	**Disable**	Disables SMB NetBEUI port.
	Enable*	Enables SMB NetBEUI port.
WSD Print	**Disable**	Disables WSD print.
	Enable*	Enables WSD print.
WSD Scan	**Disable**	Disables WSD scan.
	Enable*	Enables WSD scan.
Network TWAIN	**Disable**	Disables Network TWAIN.
	Enable*	Enables Network TWAIN.
SNMP UDP	**Disable**	Disables the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) UDP port.
	Enable*	Enables the SNMP UDP port.
StatusMessenger	**Disable**	Disables the Status Messenger feature.
	Enable*	Enables the Status Messenger feature.
InternetServices	**Disable**	Disables an access to CentreWare Internet Services embedded in the printer.
	Enable*	Enables an access to CentreWare Internet Services embedded in the printer.
Bonjour(mDNS)	**Disable**	Disables Bonjour® (mDNS).
	Enable*	Enables Bonjour (mDNS).
Telnet	**Disable**	Disables Telnet.
	Enable*	Enables Telnet.
Update Address Book	**Disable**	Disables Update Address Book.
	Enable*	Enables Update Address Book.
HTTP-SSL/TLS[1]	**Disable**	Disables HTTP-SSL/TLS.
	Enable*	Enables HTTP-SSL/TLS.

[1] `HTTP-SSL/TLS` is available only when a certificate is created using CentreWare Internet Services. For details about creating a certificate, see the Help on the CentreWare Internet Services.

NOTE:

• WSD stands for Web Services on Devices.

• Advanced Settings

Purpose:

To specify advanced network settings.

IP Filter

NOTE:

• IP Filter feature is available only when `Protocols` is set to `LPD` or `Port9100`.

Purpose:

To block data received from certain IP addresses through the wired or wireless network. You can set up to five IP addresses. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

n (n is 1-5)	IP Address		Sets the IP address for Filter n.
	Subnet Mask		Sets the address mask for Filter n.
	Mode	Not Active*	Disables the IP Filter feature for Filter n.
		Accept	Accepts an access from the specified IP address.
		Reject	Rejects an access from the specified IP address.

802.1x

NOTE:

• 802.1x feature is available only when the printer is connected using LAN cable and the 802.1x authentication is enabled using CentreWare Internet Services. For details about setting 802.1x, see the Help on the CentreWare Internet Services.

Purpose:

To disable 802.1x authentication. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Disable	Disables 802.1x.

• Adobe Protocol

Purpose:

To specify PostScript communication protocol for a parallel interface, you can configure the Adobe Protocol settings for the wired network. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto*	Sets the PostScript communications protocol automatically.
Standard	Sets the PostScript communications protocol to `Standard`.
BCP	Sets the PostScript communications protocol to `BCP`.
TBCP	Sets the PostScript communications protocol to `TBCP`.
Binary	Sets the PostScript communications protocol to `Binary`.

• Reset Network Setup

Purpose:

To initialize wired network data stored in non-volatile memory (NVM). After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wired network settings are reset to their default values.

Reset	Initializes the wired network data stored in NVM.

Fax Settings

Use the Fax Settings menu to configure the basic fax settings.

NOTE:
- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• Fax Line Settings

Purpose:

To configure basic settings for the fax line.

Fax Number

Purpose:

To set the fax number of the printer, which will be printed on the header of a fax message.

NOTE:
- Ensure to specify `Fax Number` before using `Junk Fax Setup`.

Region

Purpose:

To select the region where the printer is used.

Values:

Unknown[*]
Australia
China
Hong Kong
Indonesia
Malaysia
New Zealand
Philippines
Singapore
South Korea
Taiwan
Thailand

Company Name

Purpose:

To set the sender name to be printed on the header on faxes.

Line Type

Purpose:

To select the default line type.

Values:

PSTN[*]	Uses PSTN.
PBX	Uses PBX.

Line Monitor

Purpose:

To set the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.

Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the line monitor.
Min	Sets the volume of the line monitor to minimum.
Middle[*]	Sets the volume of the line monitor to middle.
Max	Sets the volume of the line monitor to maximum.

DRPD Pattern

Purpose:

To provide a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern.

Values:

Pattern1–7	DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies. DRPD patterns are specified by your telephone company. The patterns provided with your printer are shown below:

Pattern1

Pattern2

Pattern3

Pattern4*

Pattern5
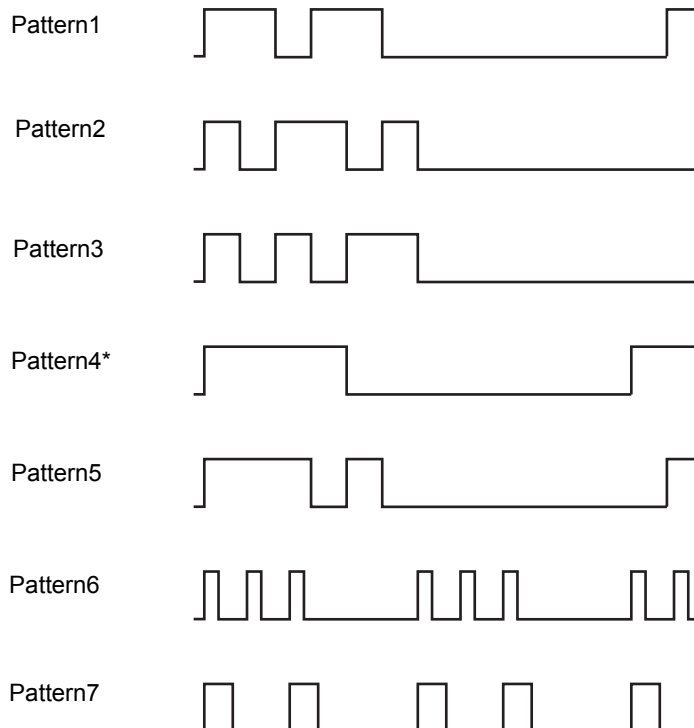
Pattern6

Pattern7

Ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service. For example, Pattern7 is the New Zealand FaxAbility distinctive ringing pattern: rings for 400 ms, stops for 800 ms, rings for 400 ms and stops for 1400 ms. This pattern is repeated over and over again. This printer only responds to Distinctive Alert cadence(s) DA4 in New Zealand.

Extel Hook Threshold

Purpose:

To select the external telephone hook detection threshold for the condition in which a telephone line is not being used.

Values:

Lower	Sets the external telephone hook detection threshold to Lower.
Normal[*]	Sets the external telephone hook detection threshold to Normal.
Higher	Sets the external telephone hook detection threshold to Higher.

• Incoming Defaults

Purpose:

To configure settings for incoming fax.

Receive Mode

Purpose:

To select the default fax receiving mode.

Values:

TEL Mode	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external phone and then pressing the remote receive code, or by selecting `Manual Receive` in `OnHook` to `On` (you can hear voice or fax tones from the remote machine) and then pressing ◇ (**Start**) button. For details about `Manual Receive`, see "Receiving a Fax Manually in the TEL Mode" on page 262.
FAX Mode*	Automatically receives faxes.
TEL/FAX Mode	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in `Auto Receive TEL/FAX`, and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
Ans/FAX Mode	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication in your region is serial, this mode is not supported.
DRPD Mode	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.

Ring Tone Volume

Purpose:

To set the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when `Receive Mode` is set to `TEL/FAX Mode`.

Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the ring tone.
Min	Sets the volume of the ring tone to minimum.
Middle	Sets the volume of the ring tone to middle.
Max[*]	Sets the volume of the ring tone to maximum.

Auto Answer Setup

Purpose:

To configure settings for automatic fax reception.

Values:

Auto Answer Fax	**0**[*]	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call. The value is set in increments of 1 second.
	0-255	
Auto Answer TEL/FAX	**6**[*]	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call. The value is set in increments of 1 second.
	0-255	
Auto Answer Ans/FAX	**21**[*]	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call. The value is set in increments of 1 second.
	0-255	

Junk Fax Filter

Purpose:

To reject unwanted faxes by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Fax Address Book.

Values:

Off[*]	Does not reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
On	Rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers.

Secure Receive

NOTE:

• Secure Receive feature is available only when `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`.

Purpose:

To specify whether to require a passcode to receive faxes, and to set or change the passcode.

Values:

Secure Receive Set	**Disable**[*]	Does not require a passcode to receive faxes.
	Enable	Requires a passcode to receive faxes.
Change Passcode[*1]	**0000–9999**	Sets or changes the passcode required to receive faxes.

    *1 This item is available only when `Secure Receive Set` is set to `Enable`.

Forward Settings

Purpose:

To set whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.

Values:

Off[*]		Does not forward incoming faxes.
Forward		Forwards incoming faxes to a specified destination. Prints incoming faxes if an error occurs during the transfer.
Print and Forward		Prints incoming faxes and also forwards them to a specified destination.
	Forwarding Number	Specifies the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.

2 Sided Print

To set the duplex printing for fax.

Values:

Off[*]	Does not perform duplex printing.
On	Performs duplex printing.

Remote Receive

Purpose:

To receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.

Values:

Off[*]		Does not receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
On		Receives a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
	Remote Receive Tone	Specifies the tone in two digits to start Remote Receive.

Discard Size

Purpose:

To set the printer to discard images or any text at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit the output paper.

Values:

Off[*]	Prints excess images or text at the bottom of a fax page without discarding it.
On	Discards any excess images or text.
Auto Reduction	Automatically reduces a fax page to fit it onto the appropriate paper size.

• Transmission Defaults

Purpose:

To configure settings for transmitting fax.

Auto Redial Setup

Purpose:

To configure settings for automatic redial.

Values:

Number of Redial	**3**[*]	Sets the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial. The value is set in increments of 1.
	0-9	
Redial Interval	**1**[*]	Sets the interval between redial attempts. The value is set in increments of 1 minute.
	1-15	
Interval Timer	**8**[*]	Sets the interval between re-send attempts. The value is set in increments of 1 second.
	3-255	

Dial Type

Purpose:

To select the dialing type.

Values:

PB[*]	Uses tone dialing.
DP(10PPS)	Sets DP (10PPS) (Dial Pulse, 10 Pulse Per Second) as the dial type.
DP(20PPS)	Sets DP (20PPS) (Dial Pulse, 20 Pulse Per Second) as the dial type.

Prefix Dial

Purpose:

To select whether to set a prefix dial number.

Values:

Off[*]		Does not set a prefix dial number.
On		Sets a prefix dial number.
	Prefix Dial Number	Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).

Fax Cover Page

Purpose:

To set whether to attach a cover page to faxes.

Values:

Off[*]	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
On	Attaches a cover page to faxes.

Send Header

Purpose:

To print the information of the sender on the header of the faxes.

Values:

Off	Does not print the sender's information on the header of faxes.
On[*]	Prints the sender's information on the header of faxes.

ECM

Purpose:

To set whether to enable or disable the Error Correction Mode (ECM). To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.

Values:

Off	Disables the ECM.
On[*]	Enables the ECM.

Modem Speed

Purpose:

To adjust the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.

Values:

2.4 Kbps
4.8 Kbps
9.6 Kbps
14.4 Kbps
33.6 Kbps[*]

Display Manual Fax Recipients

Purpose:

To set whether to display the fax number of the recipient on the sending fax screen when manually sending a fax.

Values:

Off	Does not display the fax number when manually sending a fax.
On[*]	Displays the fax number when manually sending a fax.

• Fax Reports

Purpose:

To configure settings for fax reports.

Fax Activity

Purpose:

To set whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.

Values:

Auto Print[*]	Automatically prints a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
No Auto Print	Does not automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.

Fax Transmit

Purpose:

To set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission.

Values:

Print Always	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error[*]	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission.

Fax Broadcast

Purpose:

To set whether to print a transmission result after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.

Values:

Print Always[*]	Prints a broadcast report after every fax broadcast.
Print On Error	Prints a broadcast report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable	Does not print a broadcast report after a fax broadcast to multiple destinations.

Fax Protocol

Purpose:

To set whether to print the protocol monitor report, which helps you identify the cause of a communication problem.

Values:

Print Always	Prints a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error	Prints the protocol monitor report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable[*]	Does not print the protocol monitor report.

System Settings

Use `System Settings` to configure a variety of printer features.

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• General

Purpose:

To configure general settings for the printer.

Energy Saver

Purpose:

To specify the time for transition to Energy Saver mode.

Values:

Low Power Timer	1min[*]	Specifies the time taken by the printer to enter Low Power mode after it finishes a job.
	1–60 min	
Sleep Timer	4min[*]	Specifies the time taken by the printer to enter Sleep mode after it has entered Low Power mode.
	1–6 min	

When you specify 1 minutes for `Low Power Timer`, the printer enters energy saver mode 1 minutes after it finishes a job. This uses much less energy, but requires more warm-up time for the printer. Specify 1 minutes if your printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting and you notice lights flickering.

Select a high value if your printer is in constant use. In most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to operate with minimum warm-up time. Select a value between 1 and 60 minutes for `Low Power Timer` if you want a balance between energy consumption and a shorter warm-up period.

The printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the Energy Saver mode when it receives data from the computer or remote fax machine. You can also change the status of the printer to the standby mode by pressing ⊘ (**Wake UP**) button on the operator panel.

Date & Time

Purpose:

To specify the date and time formats.

Values:

Time Zone			Sets the time zone.
Date			Sets the date depending on the `Format` settings.
	Format	**YYYY / MM / DD**	Sets the date format.
		DD / MM / YYYY[*]	
		MM / DD / YYYY	
Time			Sets the time.
	Format	**12 Hour**	Sets the time in 12-hour format.
		24 Hour	Sets the time in 24-hour format.

Measurements

Purpose:

To specify the default measurement unit displayed after the numeric value on the operator panel.

Values:

Millimeters(mm)[*]	Selects millimeter as the default measurement unit.
Inches(")	Selects inch as the default measurement unit.

NOTE:

• The default for Measurements varies depending on other settings, such as `Region` and `Document Size`.

Display Brightness

Purpose:

To adjust the screen brightness of the LCD panel.

Values:

5[*]	Sets the brightness in 10 levels, with 10 being the brightest.
1-10	

Audio

Purpose:

To configure settings for tones emitted by the printer during operation or when a warning message appears.

Values:

Panel Select Tone	**Off**[*]	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the operator panel entry is correct.
	Normal	
	Loud	
Panel Alert Tone	**Off**[*]	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel entry is incorrect.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the operator panel entry is incorrect.
	Normal	
	Loud	

Machine Ready Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when the printer is ready to process a job.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the printer is ready to process a job.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Copy Job Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a copy job is complete.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a copy job is complete.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Non-Copy Job Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a job other than a copy job is complete.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a job other than a copy job is complete.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Fault Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a job ends abnormally.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a job ends abnormally.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a problem occurs.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a problem occurs.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Out of Paper	Off	Does not emit a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
	Soft	Emits a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Low Toner Alert	Off	Does not emit a tone when a toner is low.
	Soft	Emits a tone when a toner is low.
	Normal*	
	Loud	
Auto Clear Alert	Off*	Does not emit a tone 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
	Soft	Emits a tone 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
	Normal	
	Loud	
All Tones	Off	Disables all the alert tones.
	Soft	Sets the volume of all the alert tones at once.
	Normal*	
	Loud	

Low Toner Alert Message

Purpose:

To specify whether to show the alert message when the toner is low.

Values:

| Off | Does not show the alert message when the toner is low. |
| On* | Shows the alert message when the toner is low. |

OffHook Wake Up

Purpose:

To specify whether to wake up from the Low Power or Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.

Values:

Off[*]	Does not wake up from the Low Power or Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.
On	Wakes up from the Low Power or Sleep mode when you pick up the handset of the external telephone.

Auto Job History

Purpose:

To automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.

Values:

Off[*]	Does not automatically print a job history report.
On	Automatically prints a job history report.

The job history report can also be printed using the `Report / List` menu.

RAM Disk

NOTE:

• RAM Disk feature is not available when the hard disk unit is installed.

Purpose:

To allocate memory to the RAM disk file system for the Secure Print and the Sample Print features. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Off		Does not allocate memory to the RAM disk file system. Secure Print and Sample Print jobs will abort and be recorded to the job log.
On[*]	**50MB**[*] **(300MB**[*1]**)**	Sets the allocation of memory to the RAM disk file system in increments of 50 MB.
	50-100MB (50-600MB[*1]**)**	

[*1] When the 512MB Memory is installed.

NOTE:

• Restart your printer when you change the settings for the `RAM Disk` menu.

Fax Server Address Book

Purpose:

To specify whether to search the phone numbers from the Address Book for the LDAP server.

Values:

Off[*]	Does not search the phone numbers from the Address Book for the LDAP server.
On	Searches the phone numbers from the Address Book for the LDAP server.

NOTE:

• You can search the phone numbers only from the local Address Book when `Fax Server Address Book` is set to `Off`.

Email Server Address Book

Purpose:

To specify whether to search the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.

Values:

Off[*]	Does not search the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.
On	Searches the e-mail addresses from the Address Book for the LDAP server.

NOTE:
- You can search the e-mail addresses only from the Address Book that is local when `Email Server Address Book` is set to `Off`.

Power on Wizard

Purpose:

To perform initial setup for the printer.

• Timers

Purpose:

To configure timer settings.

Control Panel

Purpose:

To automatically reset the settings for Copy, Scan, Fax, E-mail, or Print to the default settings and return to the standby mode after you do not specify any settings for the specified time.

Values:

45 Seconds[*]
1 Minute
2 Minute
3 Minute
4 Minute

Fault Timeout

Purpose:

To specify the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally. The print job is cancelled if the time-out time is exceeded.

Values:

Off		Disables the fault time-out.
On[*]	**60 sec**[*]	Sets the amount of time the printer waits before canceling a job that stops abnormally.
	3-300 sec	

Job Timeout

Purpose:

To specify the amount of time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer. The print job is cancelled if the time-out time is exceeded.

Values:

Off		Disables the job time-out.
On*	30 sec*	Sets the time the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
	5-300 sec	

• Output Settings

Purpose:

To configure settings concerning output from the printer.

Default Paper Size

Purpose:

To specify the default paper size.

Values:

A4*1
Letter*1

*1The default for Default Paper Size varies depending on region-specific factory default.

Print ID

Purpose:

To specify a location where the user ID is printed.

Values:

Off*	Does not print the user ID.
Top Left	Prints the user ID on the top left of the page.
Top Right	Prints the user ID on the top right of the page.
Bottom Left	Prints the user ID on the bottom left of the page.
Bottom Right	Prints the user ID on the bottom right of the page.

NOTE:

• When you print on DL size paper, a part of the user ID may not be printed correctly.

Print Text

Purpose:

To specify whether the printer outputs PDL data, which is not supported by the printer, as text when the printer receives it. Text data is printed on A4 or Letter size paper.

Values:

Off	Does not print the received data.
On*	Prints the received data as text data.

Banner Sheet

Purpose:

To specify the position of banner sheet, and also specify the tray in which the banner sheet is loaded.

Values:

Insert Position	Off*	Does not print the banner sheet.
	Front	Inserted before the first page of every copy.
	Back	Inserted after the last page of every copy.
	Front & Back	Inserted before the first page of every copy and after the last page of every copy.
Specify Tray	Bypass Tray	The banner sheet is loaded in the bypass tray.
	Tray1*	The banner sheet is loaded in the standard 550 sheet tray.
	Tray2	The banner sheet is loaded in the optional 550 sheet feeder.

Substitute Tray

Purpose:

Specifies whether to use paper of a different size when the paper that is loaded in the specified tray does not match the paper size settings for the current job.

Values:

Off*	No tray size substitute accepted.
Larger Size	Substitutes paper of next largest size. When there is no larger paper size, the printer substitutes paper of nearest size.
Nearest Size	Substitutes paper of nearest size.
Use Bypass Tray	Substitutes paper from the bypass tray.

Letterhead 2 Sided

Purpose:

To specify whether to print on both sides when using letterhead.

Values:

Disable*	Does not print on both sides of letterhead.
Enable	Prints on both sides of letterhead.

Report 2 Sided Print

Purpose:

To specify to print reports on both sides a sheet of paper.

Values:

1 Sided	Prints reports on one side of a sheet of paper.
2 Sided[*]	Prints reports on both side of a sheet of paper.

Auditron Mode

Purpose:

To specify whether to limit the functions that can be used per user by Auditron authentication.

Values:

Off[*]	Does not limit functions by Auditron authentication.
On	Limits functions by Auditron authentication.

No Account User Print

Purpose:

To specify whether to permit the printing of data without authentication information.

Values:

Off[*]	Does not permit non-account user to print the data.
On	Permits non-account user to print the data.

Maintenance

Use the `Maintenance` menu to initialize the NV (non-volatile) memory, configure the plain paper quality adjustment settings, and configure the security settings.

NOTE:
- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• Adjust Paper Type

Purpose:

To specify paper density settings.

Values:

Plain	**Lightweight**
	Heavyweight[*]
Labels	**Lightweight**
	Heavyweight[*]

• Adjust Transfer Belt Unit

Purpose:

To adjust the transfer bias when ghosting occur. (The ghost image may be the image of the previous page, or a part of the page currently printing.)

Values:

K Offset	**0**[*] **-5 to +5**	If faint black colored ghosts appear, try to decrease the value.
YMC Offset	**0**[*] **-5 to +5**	If faint ghosts in color (yellow, magenta, or cyan) appear, try to decrease the value.

• Adjust 2nd BTR

Purpose:

To specify the transfer roller voltage adjustment for each paper type.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. If you see mottles on the print output, try to increase the voltage. If you see white spots on the print output, try to decrease the voltage.

NOTE:

• The print quality changes depending on the setting values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	**0**[*] **-5 to +10**
Lightweight Cardstock	**0**[*] **-5 to +10**
Heavyweight Cardstock	**0**[*] **-5 to +10**
Light Glossy Cardstock	**0**[*] **-5 to +10**
Heavy Glossy Cardstock	**0**[*] **-5 to +10**
Labels	**0**[*] **-5 to +10**
Envelope	**0**[*] **-5 to +10**

• Adjust Fusing Unit

Purpose:

To adjust the temperature setting of the fusing unit for each paper type.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. When the printed paper has curled, try to lower the temperature. When the toner does not fuse on the paper properly, try to increase the temperature.

NOTE:
- The print quality changes depending on the setting values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	**0***
	-3 to +3
Lightweight Cardstock	**0***
	-3 to +3
Heavyweight Cardstock	**0***
	-3 to +3
Light Glossy Cardstock	**0***
	-3 to +3
Heavy Glossy Cardstock	**0***
	-3 to +3
Labels	**0***
	-3 to +3
Envelope	**0***
	-3 to +3

• Auto Registration

Purpose:

To specify whether to automatically perform color registration adjustment.

Values:

Off	Does not automatically perform color registration adjustment.
On*	Automatically performs color registration adjustment.

• Color Registration

Purpose:

To manually perform color registration adjustment.

manual color registration adjustments are required when the printer is initially installed and after the printer is moved.

NOTE:
- The Color Registration feature can be configured when `Auto Registration` is set to `Off`.

Values:

Auto Registration	Start		Automatically performs color registration correction.
Print Registration Chart	Print		Prints a color registration chart. The color registration chart prints a lattice pattern of yellow, magenta, and cyan lines. On the chart, find the values on the right side that are next to the line that is perfectly straight for each of the three colors. If the value for this line is 0, color registration adjustment is not required.
			If the value for this line is any value other than 0, specify the adjustment values under lateral adjustment and process adjustment in `Enter Registration values.`
Enter Registration Values	LY	-9 to +9	Sets lateral (perpendicular to paper feed direction) and process (paper feed direction) color adjustment values individually for yellow, magenta, and cyan. Enter a number in order of lateral adjustment (left), lateral adjustment (right), and process adjustment. Select `OK` to save all the settings.
	LM		
	LC		
	RY	-9 to +9	
	RM		
	RC		
	PY	-9 to +9	
	PM		
	PC		

NOTE:
- Ensure that you remove the paper from the bypass tray before performing `Auto Registration`.

• Initialize NVM

Purpose:

To initialize the non-volatile (NV) memory for system parameters, Address Book data for fax, or Address Book data for scan. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the menu parameters or data, except the parameters for the network, are reset to their factory default values.

Values:

Fax Settings	Initialize	Initializes the fax number entries in the Address Book.
Scan Settings	Initialize	Initializes the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.
System Settings	Initialize	Initializes the system parameters.

• Initialize Print Meter

Purpose:

To initialize the print meter of the printer. When the print meter is initialized, the meter count is reset to zero.

Value:

Initialize	Initializes the print meter.

• Reset Transfer Unit

Purpose:

To initialize the life counter of the transfer unit. After replacing the transfer unit, be sure to initialize its life counter.

Value:

Initialize	Initializes the transfer unit counter.

• Clear Storage

NOTE:

• Clear Storage feature is available only when the optional 512MB memory or the hard disk unit is installed.

Purpose:

To clear all files stored as Secure Print and Sample Print in the RAM Disk or the hard disk unit.

Values:

All	Deletes all files stored as Secure Print and Sample Print in the RAM Disk or the hard disk unit.
Secure Print	Deletes all files stored as Secure Print in the RAM Disk or the hard disk unit.
Sample Print	Deletes all files stored as Sample Print in the RAM Disk or the hard disk unit.

• Format Hard Disk

NOTE:

• Format Hard Disk feature is available only when the hard disk unit is installed.

Purpose:

To initialize the hard disk unit.

• Non-Genuine Toner

Purpose:

To use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

NOTE:

• Using a non-Fuji Xerox toner cartridge may severely damage your printer. The warranty does not cover damages caused by using non-Fuji Xerox toner cartridges.

Values:

Off[*]	Does not use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
On	Uses toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

• Adjust Altitude

Purpose:

To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The discharge phenomenon for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure. Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.

NOTE:

- An incorrect altitude adjustment setting leads to problems such as poor printing quality and incorrect indication of remaining toner.

0m[*]	Sets the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
1000m	
2000m	
3000m	

• Clear Job History

Purpose:

To clear the job history of all finished jobs.

• Adjust TouchScreen

Purpose:

To calibrate the LCD panel.

Secure Settings

Use the `Secure Settings` menu to set a passcode to limit access to the menus. This prevents items from being changed accidentally.

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• Panel Lock

Purpose:

To set a limited access to `Admin Settings` with a passcode, and to set or change the passcode.

See also:

- "Panel Lock Function" on page 338

Values:

Panel Lock Set	Disable[*]	Disables passcode protection for `Admin Settings`.
	Enable	Enables passcode protection for `Admin Settings`.
Change Passcode[*1]	0000–9999	Sets or changes the passcode required to access `Admin Settings`.

[*1]This item is available only when `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`.

• Service Lock

NOTE:

- Service Lock feature is available only when `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`.

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable or disable each of the printer services, or to require a passcode to use the services.

Values:

Copy	**Enabled***	Enables the Copy service.
	Password Locked	Enables the Copy service, but requires a passcode to use the service.
	Color Password Locked	Enables the Copy service with a color mode, but requires a passcode.
	Disable	Disables the Copy service.
E-mail	**Enabled***	Enables the E-mail service.
	Password Locked	Enables the E-mail service, but requires a passcode to use the service.
	Disable	Disables the E-mail service.
Fax	**Enabled***	Enables the Fax service.
	Password Locked	Enables the Fax services, but requires a passcode to send faxes (does not require a passcode to receive incoming faxes).
	Disable	Disables the Fax service (the printer will not send or receive faxes).
Send via Fax Driver	**Enable***	Enables the Send via Fax Driver service.
	Disable	Disables the Send via Fax Driver service.
Scan To Network	**Enabled***	Enables the Scan To Network service.
	Password Locked	Enables the Scan To Network service, but requires a passcode to use the service.
	Disable	Disables the Scan To Network service.
Scan To PC	**Enabled***	Enables the Scan To PC / WSD Scan service.
	Password Locked	Enables the Scan To PC / WSD Scan service, but requires a passcode to use the service.
	Disable	Disables the Scan To PC / WSD Scan service.
PC Scan	**Enabled***	Enables the PC Scan service.
	Password Locked	Enables the PC Scan service, but requires a passcode to use the service.
	Disable	Disables the PC Scan service.
Scan To USB	**Enabled***	Enables the Scan To USB service.
	Password Locked	Enables the Scan To USB service, but requires a passcode to use the service.
	Disable	Disables the Scan To USB service.
Print from USB	**Enabled***	Enables the Print from USB service.
	Password Locked	Enables the Print from USB service, but requires a passcode.
	Color Password Locked	Enables the Print from USB service with a color mode, but requires a passcode.
	Disable	Disables the Print from USB service.
ID Card Copy	**Enable***	Enables the ID Card Copy service.
	Disable	Disables the ID Card Copy service.

USB Services	Show USB Pop Up Menu	Enable*	Shows a USB Drive Detected screen when a USB storage device is inserted in to the printer.
		Disable	Does not show a USB Drive Detected screen when a USB storage device is inserted in to the printer.
	Display USB Memory Services	Hide until USB inserted*	Hides menus concerning USB storage device until a USB storage device is inserted to the printer.
		Always Display	Menus concerning USB storage device are shown without a USB storage device inserted to the printer.
Change Passcode*1			Changes the passcode that is set under the `Service Lock` menu.

*1 This item is available only when `Password Locked` or `Color Password Locked` is enabled.

• Edit Email From Field

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable editing of the transmission source when you use Scan to E-mail.

Values:

| Disable | Disables editing of the transmission source. |
| Enable* | Enables editing of the transmission source. |

• Confirm Recipients

NOTE:

- If `Confirm Recipients` menu is set to `Confirm Recipient`, recipients can only be selected from the `phone book` or the `address book`. You cannot directly enter an address or fax number.

Purpose:

To specify whether to confirm the recipient before sending a fax or scan.

Values:

| No Confirmation* | Does not display a screen to reconfirm the recipient before the job is actually sent. |
| Confirm Recipient | Displays a screen to reconfirm the recipient before the job is actually sent. |

• Domain Filtering

NOTE:

- Set the domains from SMTP Domain Filtering on the CentreWare Internet Services.

Purpose:

To specify whether to only send e-mails to specified domains.

Values:

| Disable* | Disables Domain Filtering. |
| Enable | Only allows e-mails to be sent to specified domains. |

• Software Download

Purpose:

To enable or disable download of firmware updates.

Values:

| Disable | Disables firmware updates. |
| Enable* | Enables firmware updates. |

• Display Network Information

Purpose:

To show or hide network information in the message field of the Main Home screen.

Values:

Show IPv4 Address[*]	Shows the IPv4 address of the printer on the Main Home screen.
Show Host Name	Shows the host name of the printer on the Main Home screen.
Hide Network Information	Does not show network information on the Main Home screen.

• Data Encryption

Purpose:

To disable or enable data encryption when using the printer.

Values:

Encryption	**Off**[*]	Disables encryption of the data.
	On	Enables encryption of the data.
Encryption Key		Sets a key that is required for encryption.

• HDD Overwrite

NOTE:

- HDD Overwrite feature is available only when the hard disk unit is installed.
- Overwrite of the hard disk may take several hours. When overwriting the hard disk unit, all functions of the printer are inoperable.

Purpose:

To erase the contents of the entire hard disk unit by overwriting the hard disk unit with meaningless data.

Values:

Off[*]	Disables overwrite of the hard disk unit.
1 Time	Overwrites the hard disk unit once.
3 Times	Overwrites the hard disk unit three times.

• Login Attempts

NOTE:

- Login Attempts feature is available only when `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`.

Purpose:

To specify the number of error entry attempts allowed when you log in as an administrator in the `Admin Settings` and `Report / List` menu.

Values:

Off[*]		Does not allow an administrator to log in after one error entry attempt.
On	**5**[*]	Sets the number of error entry attempts allowed when an administrator logs in.
	1-10	

USB Settings

Use the `USB Settings` menu to change printer settings affecting a USB port.

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• Port Status

NOTE:

- Port Status feature is available only for the USB port on the rear of the printer.

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable the USB port. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Disable	Disables the USB port.
Enable[*]	Enables the USB port.

• Adobe Protocol

Purpose:

To specify PostScript communication protocol. You can configure the `Adobe Protocol` settings for the wired network. The change becomes effective after the printer is turned off and then on again.

Values:

Auto	Sets the PostScript communications protocol automatically.
Standard	Sets the PostScript communications protocol to `Standard`.
BCP	Sets the PostScript communications protocol to `BCP`.
TBCP*	Sets the PostScript communications protocol to `TBCP`.
Binary	Sets the PostScript communications protocol to `Binary`.

■ Default Settings

Use `Default Settings` menu to modify the defaults for the Copy, Scan Menu, Fax, or USB Direct Print.

Copy Defaults

Purpose:

To modify the defaults for the Copy menu.

NOTE:

• Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• Output Color

Purpose:

To select color or black and white copying.

Values:

Full Color[*]	Copies in color mode.
Black & White	Copies in black and white mode.

• Select Tray

Purpose:

To specify the input tray.

Values:

Bypass Tray	The paper is fed from the bypass tray.
Tray1*	The paper is fed from the standard 550 sheet tray.
Tray2	The paper is fed from the optional 550 sheet feeder.

NOTE:

• `Tray2` is available only when the optional 550 sheet feeder is installed.

• Collation

Purpose:

To sort the copy job.

Values:

Auto*	Automatically determines which output mode for the copy job.
Collated	Sorts the copy job.
Uncollated	Does not sort the copy job.

• Reduce / Enlarge

Purpose:

To set the default copy reduction/enlargement ratio.

Values:

mm series

200%
141% A5→A4
122% A5→B5
100%*
81% B5→A5
70% A4→A5
50%

inch series

200%
154%
129% 8.5x11"→8.5x14"
100%*
78% 8.5x14"→8.5x11"
64%
50%

NOTE:

- You can also use the number pad to input the desired zoom ratio from 25% to 400%, or select <kbd>+</kbd> to enlarge the zoom ratio or select <kbd>−</kbd> to reduce the zoom ratio in 1% intervals.
- This item is available only when `Pages Per Side` is set to `Off` or `Manual`.

• Original Size

Purpose:

To specify the default document size.

Values:

mm series

Auto*
A4 (210 x 297 mm)
A5 (148 x 210 mm)
B5 (182 x 257 mm)
Letter (8.5 x 11")
Folio (8.5 x 13")
Legal (8.5 x 14")
Executive (7.25 x 10.5")

inch series

Auto*
Letter (8.5 x 11")
Folio (8.5 x 13")
Legal (8.5 x 14")
A4 (210 x 297 mm)
A5 (148 x 210 mm)
B5 (182 x 257 mm)
Executive (7.25 x 10.5")

NOTE:

• When `Auto` is selected, the printer assumes that the document size is the size of the print media loaded in the standard 550 sheet tray or bypass tray.

• Original Type

Purpose:

To select the copy image quality.

Values:

Photo & Text*	Suitable for documents with both text and photos/gray tones.
Text	Suitable for documents with text.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

• Lighten / Darken

Purpose:

To set the default copy density level.

Values:

Darken +3	Makes the copy darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darken +2	
Darken +1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Lighten +1	Makes the copy lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighten +2	
Lighten +3	

• Sharpness

Purpose:

To set the default sharpness level.

Values:

Sharpen	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
Normal*	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
Soften	Makes the copy softer than the original.

• Saturation

Purpose:

To set the default color saturation level.

Values:

Vivid	Increases the color saturation to brighten the color of the copy.
Normal*	The color saturation is the same as the original.
Pastel	Decreases the color saturation to lighten the color of the copy.

• Auto Background Suppression

Purpose:

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

Values:

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On*	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

• Auto Background Suppression Level

Purpose:

To specify the default background suppression level.

Values:

Normal*	Sets the background suppression level to `Normal`.
Higher	Sets the background suppression level to `Higher`.
Highest	Sets the background suppression level to `Highest`.

• Color Balance

Purpose:

To specify the default color balance level within the range of -3 to +3.

Values:

Yellow	**Shadows**	**0**[*] **-3 to +3**	Sets the color balance level of low density yellow.
	Midtones	**0**[*] **-3 to +3**	Sets the color balance level of medium density yellow.
	Highlights	**0**[*] **-3 to +3**	Sets the color balance level of high density yellow.
Magenta	**Shadows**	**0**[*] **-3 to +3**	Sets the color balance level of low density magenta.
	Midtones	**0**[*] **-3 to +3**	Sets the color balance level of medium density magenta.
	Highlights	**0**[*] **-3 to +3**	Sets the color balance level of high density magenta.
Cyan	**Shadows**	**0**[*] **-3 to +3**	Sets the color balance level of low density cyan.
	Midtones	**0**[*] **-3 to +3**	Sets the color balance level of medium density cyan.
	Highlights	**0**[*] **-3 to +3**	Sets the color balance level of high density cyan.
Black	**Shadows**	**0**[*] **-3 to +3**	Sets the color balance level of low density black.
	Midtones	**0**[*] **-3 to +3**	Sets the color balance level of medium density black.
	Highlights	**0**[*] **-3 to +3**	Sets the color balance level of high density black.

• 2 Sided Copying

Purpose:

To print on both sides of a sheet of paper.

Values:

1→1 Sided*			Prints on one side of a sheet of paper.
1→2 Sided			Prints one sided originals on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Binding of Output	**Long Edge Binding**	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
		Short Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.
2→1 Sided			Prints two sided originals on one side of a sheet of paper.
	Binding of Original	**Long Edge Binding**	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
		Short Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.
2→2 Sided			Prints two sided originals on both sides of a sheet of paper.
	Binding of Original	**Long Edge Binding**	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
		Short Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.

• Pages Per Side

Purpose:

To print two original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.

Values:

Off*	Does not perform Pages Per Side printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in `Reduce/Enlarge`.

• Edge Erase

Purpose:

To specify the value of the top and bottom margins.

Values:

Top / Bottom	**0.2 inch* (4 mm*)**	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	0.0–2.0 inch (0 – 50 mm)	
Left / Right	**0.2 inch* (4 mm*)**	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	0.0–2.0 inch (0 – 50 mm)	
Middle	**0.0 inch*(0 mm*)**	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	0.0–2.0 inch (0 – 50 mm)	

Scan Defaults

To modify the defaults for the `Scan` menu and `Email` menu defaults.

NOTE:

• Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• File Format

Purpose:

To specify the file format to save the scanned image.

Values:

PDF*
Multi-Page TIFF
TIFF (1 File per page)
JPEG (1 File per page)
XDW

• Output Color

Purpose:

To specify whether to scan in color, black and white, or gray scale.

Values:

Color*	Scans in color.
Black & White	Scans in black and white.
Gray Scale	Scans in grayscale.

• Resolution

Purpose:

To specify the default scan resolution.

Values:

200 dpi*
300 dpi
400 dpi*[1]
600 dpi*[1]

[1]For color scan, 400 × 400 dpi and 600 × 600 dpi are available only when the optional 512MB memory is installed on the printer.

• Original Size

Purpose:

To specify the default document size.

Values:

mm series

A4 (210x297mm)*[1]
A5 (148x210mm)
B5 (182x257mm)
Letter (8.5x11")
Folio (8.5 x 13")
Legal (8.5x14")
Executive (7.25x10.5")

[1]The default for Document Size varies depending on region-specific factory default.

inch series

Letter (8.5x11")*[1]
Folio (8.5 x 13")
Legal (8.5x14")
A4 (210x297mm)
A5 (182x257mm)
B5 (176x250mm)
Executive (7.25x10.5")

[1]The default for Document Size varies depending on region-specific factory default.

• 2 Sided Scanning

Purpose:

To scan both sides of a sheet of paper.

Values:

1 Sided*			Scans one side of a document.
2 Sided	**Binding of Original**[1]	**Long Edge Binding***	Scans both sides of a document to be bound by long edge.
		Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document to be bound by short edge.

[1] This item is available only when 2 Sided Scanning is set to 2 Sided in the Scan Defaults menu.

• Lighten / Darken

Purpose:

To set the default scan density level.

Values:

Darken +3	Makes the scanned image darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darken +2	
Darken +1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Lighten +1	Makes the scanned image lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighten +2	
Lighten +3	

• Sharpness

Purpose:

To set the default sharpness level.

Values:

Sharpen	Makes the scanned image sharper than the original.
Normal*	Does not make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.
Soften	Makes the scanned image softer than the original.

• Contrast

Purpose:

To adjust the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker or lighter than the original.

Values:

More	Adjusts the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker than the original.
Normal*	Does not adjust the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors darker or lighter than the original.
Less	Adjusts the amount of colors to make the contrast of colors lighter than the original.

• Auto Background Suppression

Purpose:

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.

Values:

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On*	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.

• Auto Background Suppression Level

Purpose:

To specify the default background suppression level.

Values:

Normal*	Sets the background suppression level to `Normal`.
Higher	Sets the background suppression level to `Higher`.
Highest	Sets the background suppression level to `Highest`.

• Edge Erase

Purpose:

To specify the value of the top and bottom margins.

Values:

Top / Bottom	**0.1 inch* (2 mm*)**	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	0.0–2.0 inch (0 – 50 mm)	
Left / Right	**0.1 inch* (2 mm*)**	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	0.0–2.0 inch (0 – 50 mm)	
Middle	**0.0 inch*(0 mm*)**	Sets the value in increments of 0.1 inch (1 mm).
	0.0–2.0 inch (0 – 50 mm)	

• TIFF File Format

Purpose:

To specify the default TIFF file format.

Values:

TIFF V6[*]	Sets the default TIFF file format to TIFF V6.
TTN2	Sets the default Tiff file format to TTN2.

• Quality/File Size

Purpose:

To specify the Quality/File Size.

Values:

Small	Sets the Quality/File Size level to `Small`.
Normal[*]	Sets the Quality/File Size level to `Normal`.
Large	Sets the Quality/File Size level to `Large`.

• Max Email Size

Purpose:

To specify the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent, within the range of 50 K bytes to 16384 K bytes. The default is 2048 K bytes.

Fax Defaults

Purpose:

To modify the defaults for the `Fax` menu.

NOTE:

- The FAX service cannot be used unless you set up a region code under `Region`. If `Region` is not set up, a message `Set the Country Code` appears on the display.
- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• Resolution

Purpose:

To specify the scan resolution to improve the output quality.

Values:

Standard[*]	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The Super Fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the Super Fine mode. See the notes below.
Photo	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.

NOTE:

- Faxes scanned in the Super Fine mode transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

• 2 Sided Scanning

Purpose:

To scan both sides of a sheet of paper.

Values:

1 Sided[*]			Scans one side of a document.
2 Sided	**Binding of Original**^{*1}	**Long Edge Binding**[*]	Scans both sides of a document to be bound by long edge.
		Short Edge Binding	Scans both sides of a document to be bound by short edge.

^{*1} This item is available only when `2 Sided Scanning` is set to `2 Sided Printing` in the `Scan Defaults` menu.

• Lighten / Darken

Purpose:

To adjust the density to make the copy lighter or darker than the original.

Values:

Darken +3	Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darken +2	
Darken +1	
Normal[*]	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Lighten +1	Works well with dark print.
Lighten +2	
Lighten +3	

• Delayed Send

Purpose:

This feature enables you to set a specific time for the fax transmission to start. Once `Delayed Send` mode is activated, your printer stores all of the documents to be faxed into its memory and sends them at the specified time. After faxing in the `Delayed Send` mode is complete, the data in the memory is cleared.

Values:

21:00*/9:00PM*	Specify the fax transmission start time when sending a fax at a specified time.
0:00 – 23:59 / **1:00 – 12:59AM/PM**	

NOTE:
- A maximum of 19 delayed fax jobs can be stored in this printer.

Print from USB Defaults

To modify the defaults for the `Print from USB` menu.

NOTE:
- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

• Output Color

Purpose:

To specify whether to print in black and white or in color.

Values:

Full Color*	Prints in color.
Black & White	Prints in black and white.

• Select Tray

Purpose:

To specify the input tray.

Values:

Bypass Tray	The paper is fed from the bypass tray.
Tray1*	The paper is fed from the standard 550 sheet tray.
Tray2	The paper is fed from the optional 550 sheet feeder.

NOTE:
- `Tray2` is available only when the optional 550 sheet feeder is installed.

• 2 Sided Printing

Purpose:

To print on both sides of a sheet of paper.

Values:

1 Sided*			Prints on one side of a sheet of paper.
2 Sided	Binding of Output	Long Edge Binding*	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by long edge.
		Short Edge Binding	Prints on both sides of a sheet of paper to be bound by short edge.

• Sides Per Page

Purpose:

To print two or four original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.

Values:

Off[*]	Prints one page on one side of a sheet of paper.
2 Sides per Page	Prints two pages on one side of a sheet of paper.
4 Sides per Page	Prints four pages on one side of a sheet of paper.

• PDF Password

Purpose:

To enter the password when you print the secure PDF job.

Values:

Enter PDF Password	Enter the password to print the secure PDF job.

■ Tray Management

Use the `Tray Management` menu to define the print media loaded in the standard 550 sheet tray and the optional 550 sheet feeder.

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Tray Settings

To configure tray settings.

• Bypass Tray

Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in the bypass tray.

Values:

Display Tray Prompt	Enter a check to display a popup message that prompts to set Type and Size when paper is loaded in the bypass tray. The factory default is on (check).			
Use Driver Settings for Print Job	Enter a check to use the Size and Type set on the print driver. The factory default is off (blank).			
Size mm series	**A4 (210 x 297 mm)**[1]			
	A5 (148 x 210 mm)			
	B5 (182 x 257 mm)			
	Letter (8.5 x 11")			
	Folio (8.5 x 13")			
	Legal (8.5 x 14")			
	Executive (7.25 x 10.5")			
	Monarch Env. (3.9 x 7.5")			
	DL Env. (110 x 220 mm)			
	C5 Env. (162 x 229 mm)			
	#10 Env. (4.1 x 9.5")			
	New Custom Size	**Width(x)**	210 mm*	Specifies the width of the custom size paper.
			77-215 mm	
		Length(y)	297 mm*	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
			127-355 mm	
inch series	**Letter (8.5 x 11")**[1]			
	Folio (8.5 x 13")			
	Legal (8.5 x 14")			
	A4 (210 x 297 mm)			
	A5 (148 x 210 mm)			
	B5 (182 x 257 mm)			
	Executive (7.25 x 10.5")			
	Monarch Env. (3.9 x 7.5")			
	DL Env. (110 x 220 mm)			
	C5 Env. (162 x 229 mm)			
	#10 Env. (4.1 x 9.5")			
	New Custom Size	**Width(x)**	8.3 inches*	Specifies the width of the custom size paper.
			3.0-8.5 inches	
		Length(y)	11.7 inches*	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
			5.0-14.0 inches	

Type	Plain[*]
	Other Type
	Lightweight Cardstock
	Heavyweight Cardstock
	Light Glossy Cardstock
	Heavy Glossy Cardstock
	Labels
	Envelope
	Letterhead
	Hole Punched
	Colored

[*1] The default for $Size$ varies depending on region-specific factory default.

NOTE:

- For more information on supported paper sizes, see also .

• Tray1

Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in the standard 550 sheet tray.

Values:

Display Tray Prompt	Enter a check to display a popup message that prompts to set Type and Size when paper is loaded in the standard 550 sheet tray. The factory default is on (check).			
Size	**A4 (210 x 297 mm)**[*1]			
mm series	**A5 (148 x 210 mm)**			
	B5 (182 x 257 mm)			
	Letter (8.5 x 11")			
	Folio (8.5 x 13")			
	Legal (8.5 x 14")			
	Executive (7.25 x 10.5")			
	New Custom Size	**Width(x)**	210 mm[*]	Specifies the width of the custom size paper.
			148-215 mm	
		Length(y)	297 mm[*]	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
			210-355 mm	
inch series	**Letter (8.5 x 11")**[*1]			
	Folio (8.5 x 13")			
	Legal (8.5 x 14")			
	A4 (210 x 297 mm)			
	A5 (148 x 210 mm)			
	B5 (182 x 257 mm)			
	Executive (7.25 x 10.5")			
	New Custom Size	**Width(x)**	8.3 inches[*]	Specifies the width of the custom size paper.
			5.8-8.5 inches	
		Length(y)	11.7 inches[*]	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
			8.3-14.0 inches	
Type	**Plain**[*]			
	Other Type			
	Lightweight Cardstock			
	Heavyweight Cardstock			
	Light Glossy Cardstock			
	Heavy Glossy Cardstock			
	Letterhead			
	Hole Punched			
	Colored			

*1 The default for `Size` varies depending on region-specific factory default.

NOTE:

• For more information on supported paper sizes, see also "Usable Print Media" on page 139.

• Tray2

NOTE:

• Tray2 is available only when the optional 550 sheet feeder is installed.

Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in the optional 550 sheet feeder.

Values:

Display Tray Prompt	Enter a check to display a popup message that prompts to set Type and Size when paper is loaded in the optional 550 sheet feeder. The factory default is on (check).			
Size	**Auto Detect**[*]			
	New Custom Size	**Width(x)**	210 mm[*] (8.3 inches[*])	Specifies the width of the custom size paper.
			148-215 mm (5.8-8.5 inches)	
		Length(y)	297 mm[*] (11.7 inches[*])	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
			210-355 mm (8.3-14.0 inches)	
Type	**Plain***			
	Other Type			
	Lightweight Cardstock			
	Heavyweight Cardstock			
	Light Glossy Cardstock			
	Heavy Glossy Cardstock			
	Letterhead			
	Hole Punched			
	Colored			

NOTE:

• For more information on supported paper sizes, see also "Usable Print Media" on page 139.

Tray Priority

Purpose:

To set the priority order of the paper trays for automatic tray selection. If paper trays loaded with the same paper size and type exists, the paper tray is selected according to this priority order.

Values:

1 First	Bypass Tray*	Sets the bypass tray as the first priority.
	Tray1	Sets the standard 550 sheet tray as the first priority.
	Tray2	Sets the optional 550 sheet feeder as the first priority.
2 Second	Bypass Tray	Sets the bypass tray as the second priority.
	Tray1*	Sets the standard 550 sheet tray as the second priority.
	Tray2	Sets the optional 550 sheet feeder as the second priority.
3 Third	Bypass Tray	Sets the bypass tray as the third priority.
	Tray1	Sets the standard 550 sheet tray as the third priority.
	Tray2*	Sets the optional 550 sheet feeder as the third priority.

NOTE:

- `Tray2` and `3 Third` are available only when the optional 550 sheet feeder is installed.
- The paper tray name is not displayed in the priority menu after once selected.

■ Panel Language

NOTE:

- Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Purpose:

To determine the language of the text on the LCD panel.

Values:

English*
Simplified Chinese
Traditional Chinese
Korean

Panel Lock Function

This feature prevents unauthorized personnel from changing the settings made by the administrator. However, you can select settings for individual print jobs using the print driver.

This section includes:

NOTE:
- Disabling the operator panel menus does not prevent access to the `Secure Print`, `Sample Print` and `Tray Settings` menus.

■ Enabling the Panel Lock

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab.

3 Select `Admin Settings`.

4 Select `Secure Settings`.

5 Select `Panel Lock`.

6 Select `Panel Lock Set`.

7 Select `Enable`, and then select `OK`.

8 Enter the new passcode, and then select `OK`.

9 Re-enter the passcode to confirm the passcode that you entered, and then select `OK`.

NOTE:
- The factory-default panel passcode is 0000.
- Be sure to remember the passcode. The procedure described below allows you to reset the passcode, but the settings for Address Book are cleared.
  - Turn off the printer. Then, while holding the ⓘ (**System**) button, turn on the printer.
- If you change the passcode while `Panel Lock Set` is `Enable`, perform steps 1 to 3. Enter the current passcode, and then select `OK`. Perform steps 4 and 5. Select `Change Passcode`, and then select `OK`. Enter the current passcode, and then select `OK`. Perform steps 8 and 9. This will change the passcode.

■ Disabling the Panel Lock

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab.

3 Select `Admin Settings`.

4 Enter the passcode, and then select `OK`.

5 Select `Secure Settings`.

6 Select `Panel Lock`.

7 Select `Panel Lock Set`.

8 Select `Disable`, and then select `OK`.

9 Enter the current passcode, and then select `OK`.

Limiting Access to Copy, Fax, Scan, and Print from USB Operations

Enabling the Copy Lock, Fax Lock, Scan Lock, and Print from USB Lock options limits access to copy, fax, scan, and print from USB operations by requiring a passcode to be entered before copying, scanning, faxing, or printing.

Taking Fax Lock as an example, the following procedure explains how to enable or disable the option. Use the same procedure to enable or disable Copy Lock, Scan Lock, or Print from USB Lock.

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab.

3 Select `Admin Settings`.

4 Select `Secure Settings`.

5 Select `Panel Lock`.

6 Select `Panel Lock Set`.

7 Select `Enable`, and then select `OK`.

8 Enter the new passcode using the number pad and then select `OK`.

9 Re-enter the passcode and then select `OK`.

> **NOTE:**
> • The default passcode is 0000.

10 Select the ◀ button twice.

11 Select `Service Lock`.

12 Select `FAX`.
   • `Enabled`
   • `Password Locked`
   • `Disable`
   • `Color Password Locked` (available only for Copy Lock and Print from USB Lock)

Changing the Language

To change language used on the operator panel:

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab, and then select `Panel Language`.

3 Select the desired language.

4 Select `OK`.

Setting the Energy Saver Option

You can set the Energy Saver for the printer. The printer switches to the Energy Saver mode after the specified time.

NOTE:
- If the `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable,` you need to enter the four digit passcode to enter the `Admin Settings` menu.

To set the Energy Saver:

1 Press the ⌷ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab.

3 Select `Admin Settings.`

4 Select `System Settings.`

5 Select `General.`
Select `Energy Saver.`

6 Select `Low Power Timer` or `Sleep Timer.`

7 Select the ⏤ or ＋ or enter the desired value using the number pad, and then select `OK.`
You can select from 1–60 minutes for `Low Power Timer` or 1–6 minutes for `Sleep Timer.`

8 To return to the previous screen, select ⬅.

About the Concurrent Jobs Feature

This feature enables you to start a concurrent job while a fax job is running. This is done by temporally displaying the Main Home screen and switching to a different function that can be run concurrently such as copy or scan.

1 While the printer is sending or receiving a fax, press ⌂ (**Service**) button.

2 Select `Copy` or `Scan` menu.

3 After setting the copy or scan options, press the ◇ (**Start**) button.

For details about `Copy` or `Scan` menu, see "Copying" on page 187 or "Scanning" on page 205.

Resetting to Factory Defaults

After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the address book or all the menu parameters, except the parameters for the network, are reset to their default values.

1 Press the ⊡ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab.

3 Select `Admin Settings`.

4 Select `Maintenance`.

5 Select `Initialize NVM`.

6 Select the desired setting.

7 Select `Initialize`.

The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.

Entering Characters

This section describes how to use the keyboard displayed on the operator panel and the number pad.

■ Using the Keyboard Displayed on the Operator Panel

During operations, a screen for entering text sometimes appears. The following describes how to enter text.

QWERTY   AZERTY   QWERTZ

You can enter the following characters: numerals, alphabets, and symbols.

Item	Description
Changing keyboards	Select ⌨ to change the keyboard layout on the operator panel, and then select from QWERTY, AZERTY, or QWERTZ.
Entering alphabets and numerals	To enter uppercase letters, select ⬆. To return to the lowercase letters, select ⬆ again.
Entering symbols	Select 123,!?.
Entering a space	Select Space or ⎵.
Deleting characters	Select ⊗ to delete one character at a time.

■ Using the Number Pad

As you perform various tasks, you may need to enter numbers. For example, when you specify the quantity of copies or when you enter fax number directly.
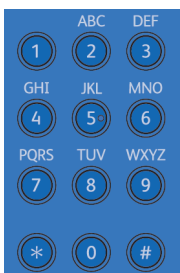
Available Characters

You can enter the characters as follows by using the number pad: 0 to 9, * and #.

Changing Numbers

If you make a mistake while entering a number, press the **CA** (**Clear All**) button to delete the last digit or character. Then enter the correct number.

Troubleshooting

This chapter includes:

Clearing Jams

This section includes:

Careful selection of appropriate print media and proper loading allow you to avoid most jams.

See also:

NOTE:
- Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.

■ Avoiding Jams

- Use only recommended print media.
- See "Loading Print Media in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray and the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder" on page 144 and "Loading Print Media in the Bypass Tray" on page 147 to load print media properly.
- Do not overload the print media sources. Ensure that the print media stack height does not exceed the maximum height indicated by the load-line in the tray.
- Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, or curled print media.
- Flex, fan, and straighten print media before you load it. If a jam occurs with print media, try feeding one sheet at a time through the bypass tray.
- Do not use print media that you have cut or trimmed.
- Do not mix print media sizes, weights, or types in the same print media source.
- Ensure that the recommended print side is face up when you load the print media.
- Keep print media stored in an acceptable environment.
- Do not remove the feeding tray during a print job.
- Push the tray in firmly after loading.
- Ensure that all cables that connect to the printer are correctly attached.
- Overtightening the guides may cause jams.
- Wipe the feed roller in the tray or bypass tray with a cloth moistened with water if jams caused by misfeeding paper occur frequently.

  See also:

■ Identifying the Location of Paper Jams

> ⚠ **CAUTION:**
>
> • **Do not attempt to remove a paper deeply jammed inside the product, particularly a paper wrapped around the fusing unit or the heat roller. Otherwise, it may cause injuries or burns. Switch off the product immediately and contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.**

IMPORTANT:

• Do not attempt to clear any jams using tools or instruments. This may permanently damage the printer.

The following illustration shows where paper jams may occur along the print media path.
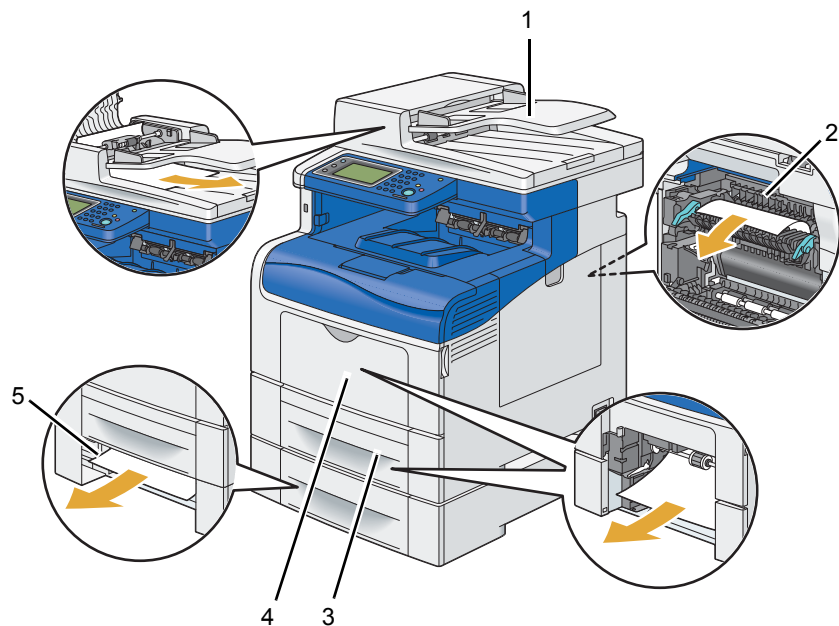
1	Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF)
2	Fusing Unit
3	Standard 550 Sheet Tray
4	Bypass Tray
5	Optional 550 Sheet Feeder

■ Clearing Paper Jams From the DADF

When a document jams while it passes through the DADF, remove the jam in the following procedure.

NOTE:

- To prevent document jams, use the document glass for thick, thin, or mixed documents.

1 Remove the remaining documents from the DADF.

If the document is jammed in the paper feed area:

a Open the DADF cover.
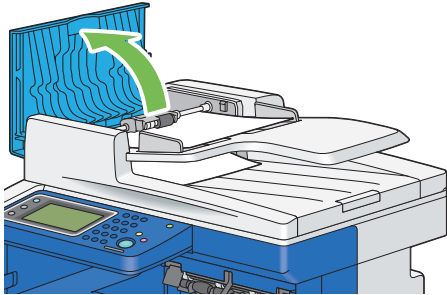
b Lift the release lever 90 degrees and remove the jammed document by carefully pulling the document in the direction of the arrow shown in the following illustration.
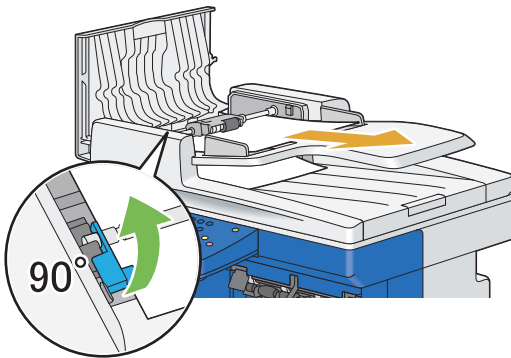
If you find it difficult to pull the document:

c Remove the DADF feed roller assembly and remove the document by gently pulling the document in the direction of the arrow shown in the following illustration.
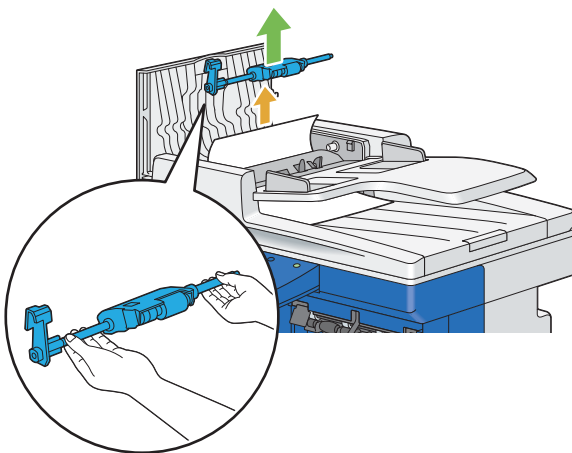
d Insert the DADF feed roller assembly and press down the release lever.
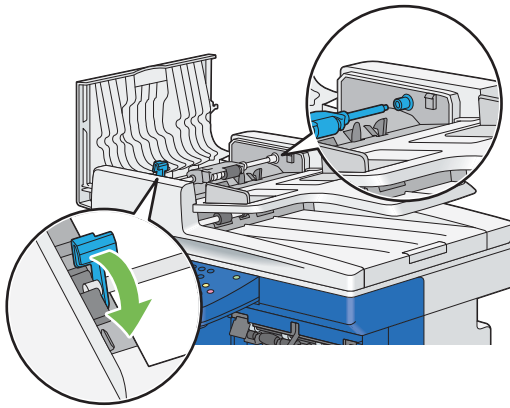
If the document is jammed in the paper exit area:

a Remove the jammed document from the document output tray.
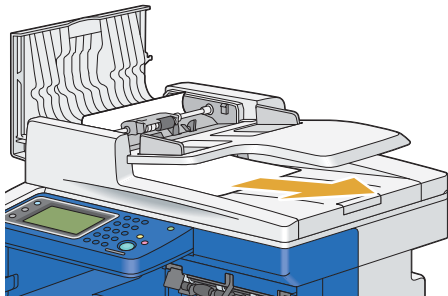
b Close the DADF cover, and then load the documents back into the DADF.
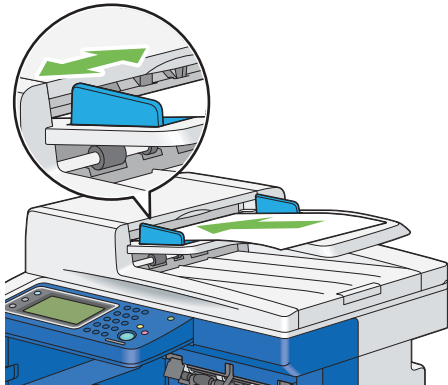
NOTE:
- Ensure that you adjust the document guides before printing a Legal-size document.

2 If you cannot remove the jammed document from the document output tray or cannot find any jammed document there, open the document cover.

3 Remove the document from the white sheet by carefully pulling it to the right.

4 Close the document cover, and then load the documents back into the DADF.

5 Press the ◇ (**Start**) button.

■ Clearing Paper Jams From the Bypass Tray

IMPORTANT:

- Protect the drums of the drum cartridges against bright light. If the side cover remains open for more than 3 minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

NOTE:

- To resolve the error displayed on the LCD panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

1 Remove the remaining documents from the bypass tray.
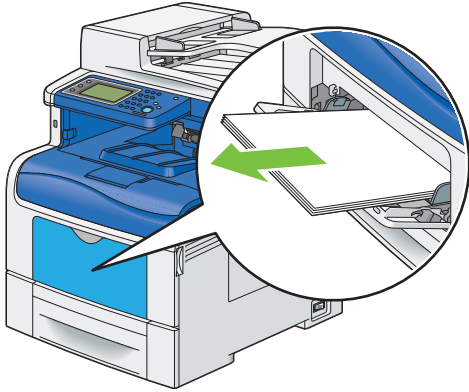
2 Grasp both sides of the bypass tray, and then pull the bypass tray from the printer.

3 Pull the standard 550 sheet tray from the printer about 200 mm.
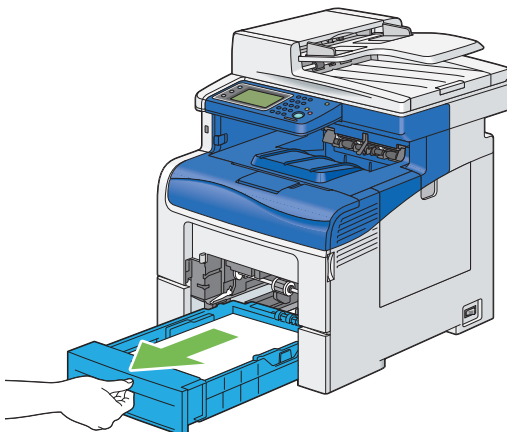
4 Hold the standard 550 sheet tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.
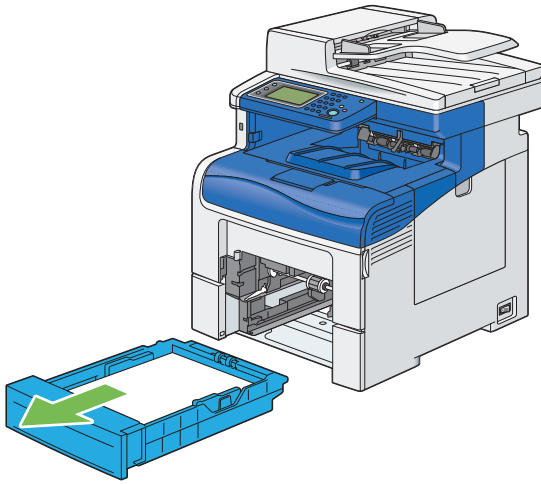
5 Remove the jammed paper.
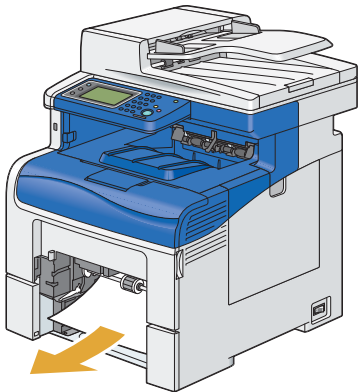
6 Insert the standard 550 sheet tray into the printer, and push until it stops.
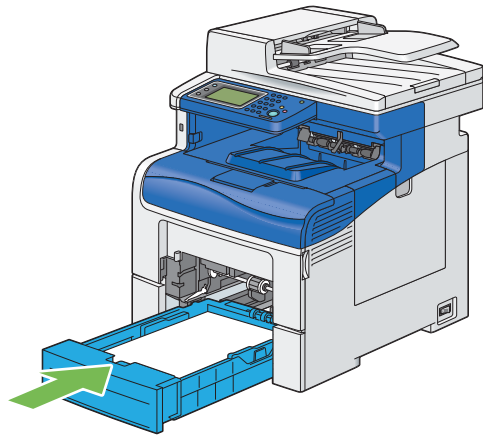
IMPORTANT:
• Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or the inside of the printer.

7 Insert the bypass tray into the printer, push until it stops, and close the cover.
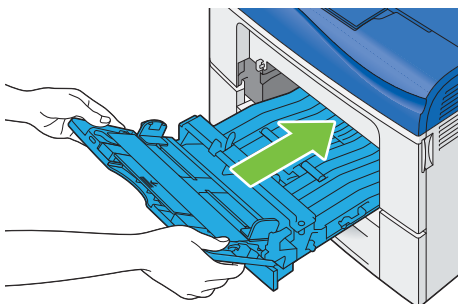
■ Clearing Paper Jams From the Standard 550 Sheet Tray

IMPORTANT:
- Protect the drums of the drum cartridges against bright light. If the side cover remains open for more than 3 minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

NOTE:
- To resolve the error displayed on the LCD panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

1 Open the bypass tray cover.

2 Grasp both sides of the bypass tray, and then pull the bypass tray from the printer.
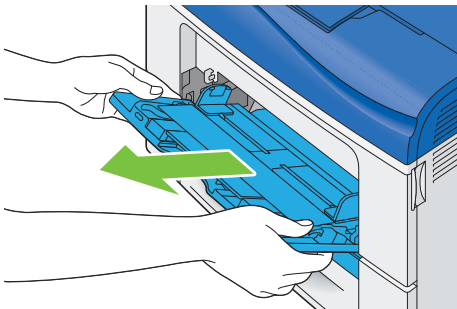
3 Pull the standard 550 sheet tray from the printer about 200 mm.
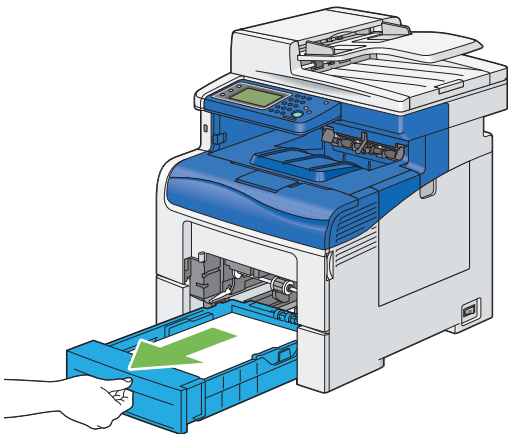
4 Hold the standard 550 sheet tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.
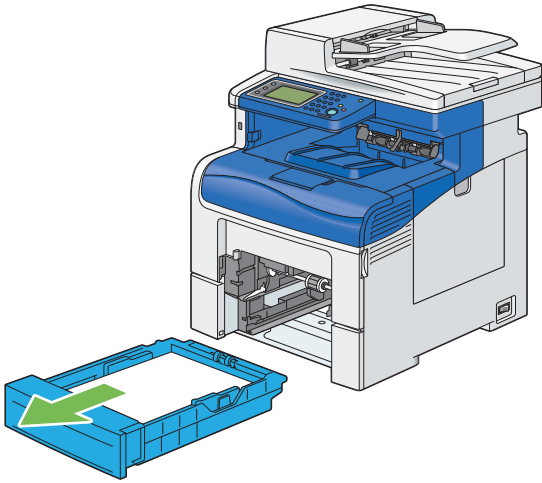
5 Remove the jammed paper.
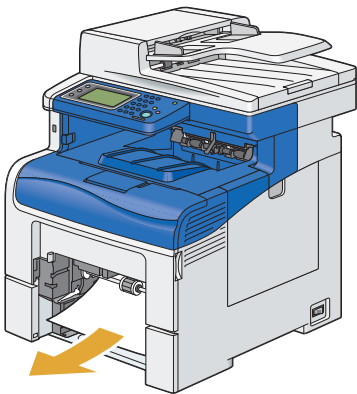
6 Insert the standard 550 sheet tray into the printer, and push until it stops.
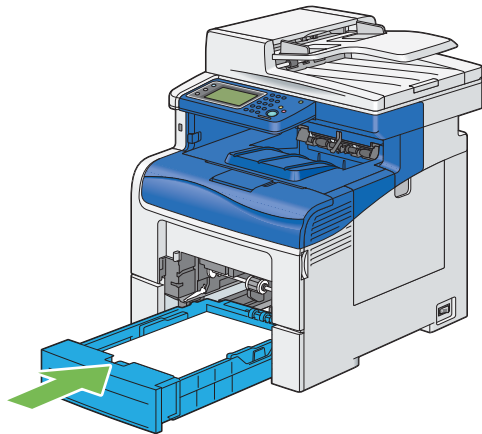
IMPORTANT:
- Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or the inside of the printer.

7 Insert the bypass tray into the printer, push until it stops, and close the cover.
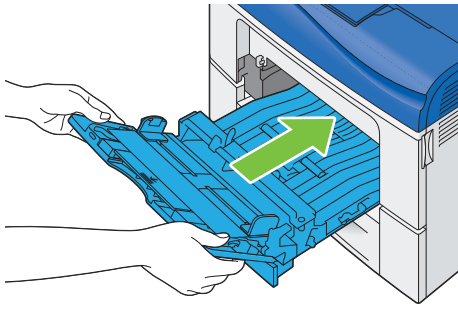
8 Press the ◇ (**Start**) button.

■ Clearing Paper Jams From the Fusing Unit

IMPORTANT:

- Ensure nothing touches or scratches the surface (black-colored film) of the belt unit. Scratches, dirt, or oil from your hands on the film of the belt unit may reduce print quality.
- Protect the drums of the drum cartridges against bright light. If the side cover remains open for more than 3 minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

NOTE:

- To resolve the error displayed on the LCD panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

1 Open the bypass tray cover, or remove the remaining documents from the bypass tray.
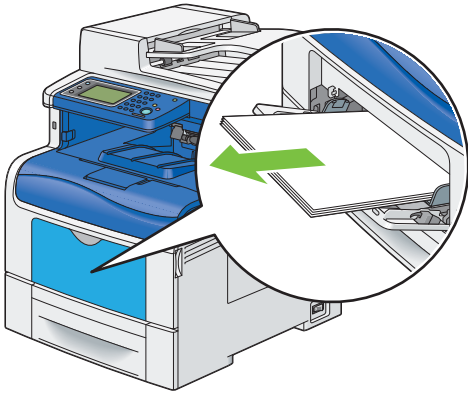
2 Grasp both sides of the bypass tray, and then pull the bypass tray from the printer.
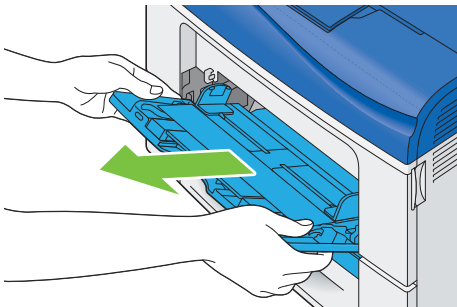
3 Pull the standard 550 sheet tray from the printer about 200 mm.
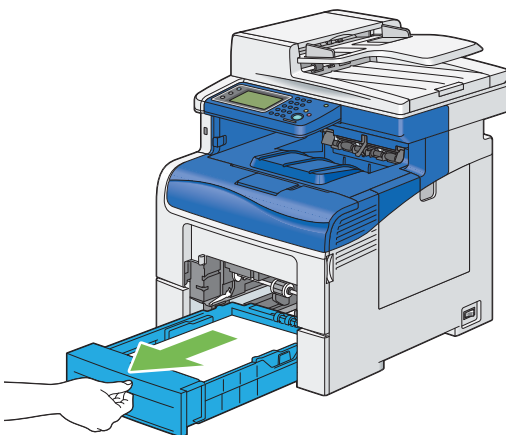
4 Hold the standard 550 sheet tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.
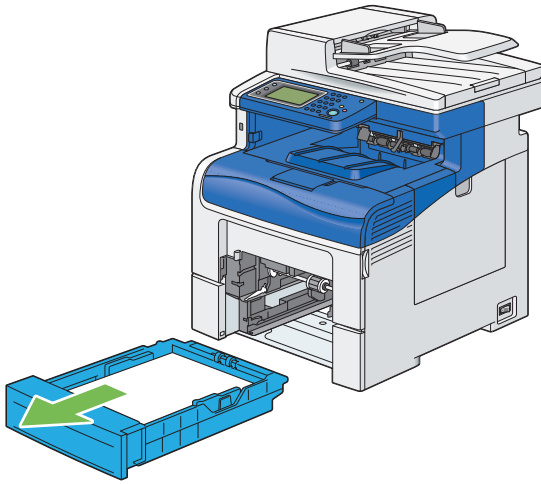
5 Push down the latch to open the rear cover.
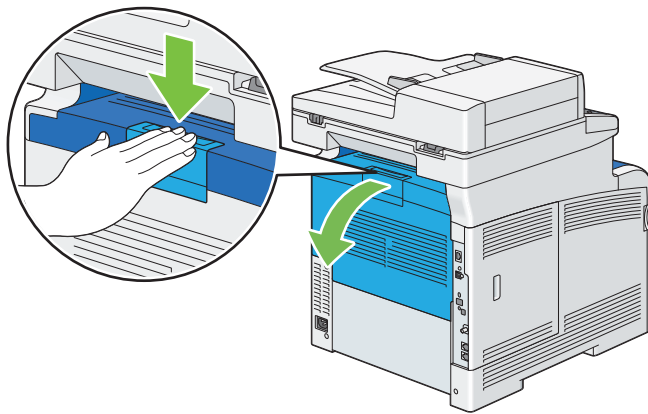
6 Lift the levers on both sides of the fusing unit.
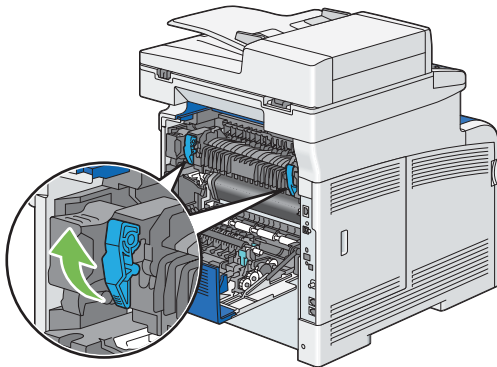
IMPORTANT:
*   The fusing unit is hot. Do not touch it, doing so may cause burns.

7 Hold and lower the tab to open the inner part.
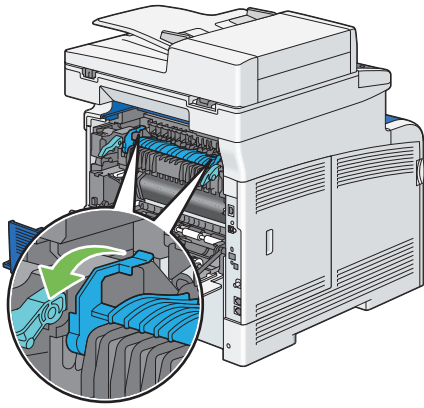
8 Remove the jammed paper.
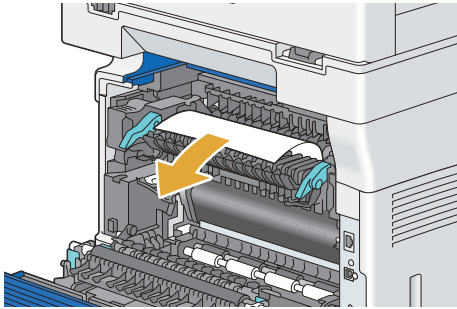
9 Replace the inner part.
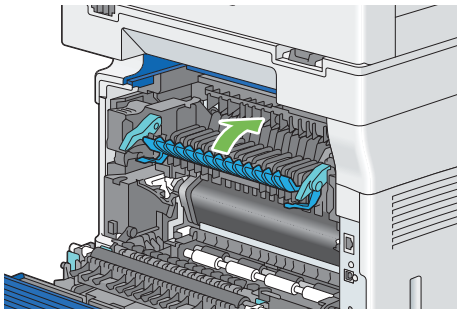
10 Insert the standard 550 sheet tray into the printer, and push until it stops.
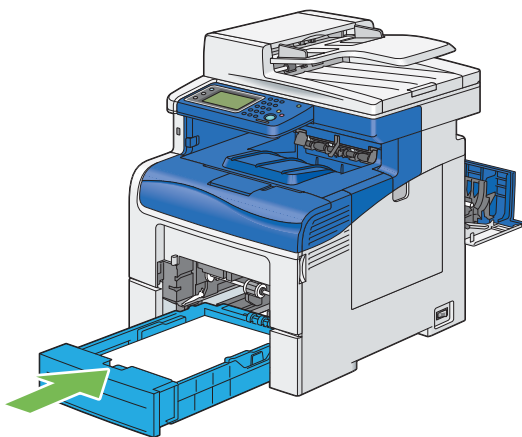
IMPORTANT:
- Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or the inside of the printer.

11 Insert the bypass tray into the printer, push until it stops, and close the cover.
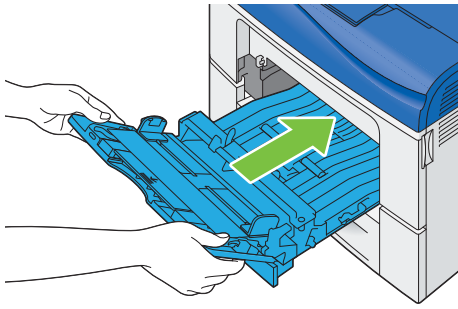
12 Press down the levers on both sides of the fusing unit, and then close the rear cover.
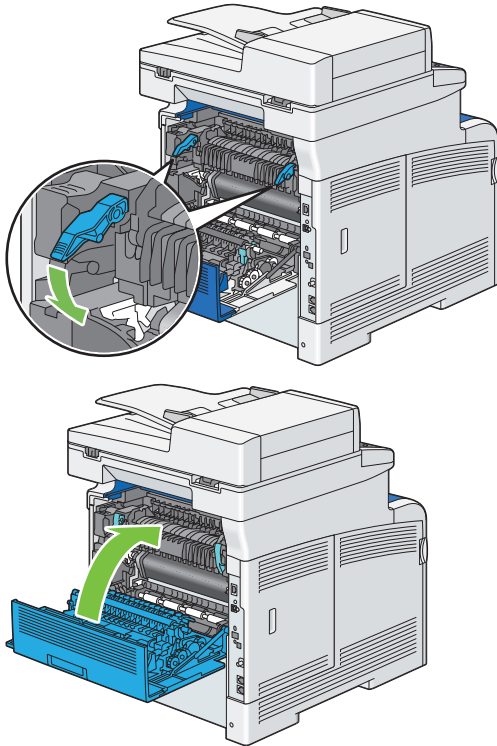
■ Clearing Paper Jams From the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder

NOTE:

- To resolve the error displayed on the LCD panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

1 Pull the optional 550 sheet feeder from the printer about 200 mm.
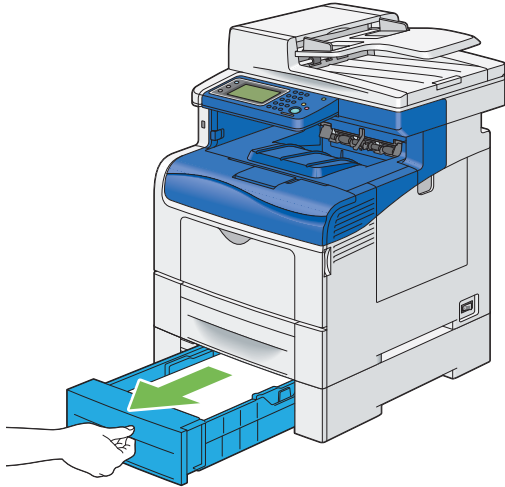
2 Hold the optional 550 sheet feeder with both hands, and remove it from the printer.
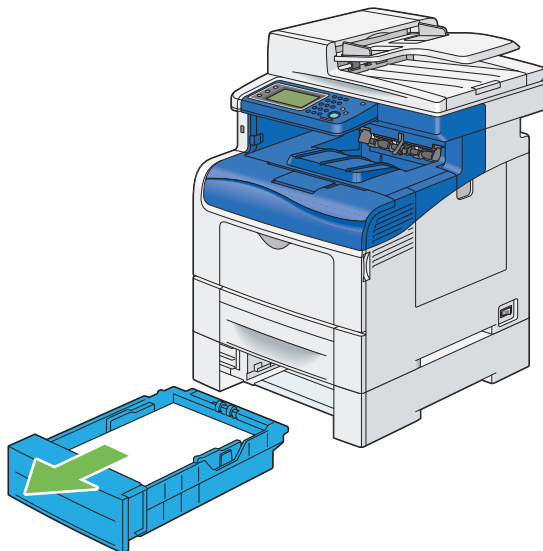
3 Remove the jammed paper.
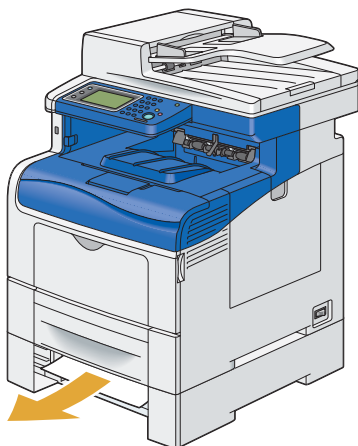
4 Insert the optional 550 sheet feeder into the printer, and push until it stops.
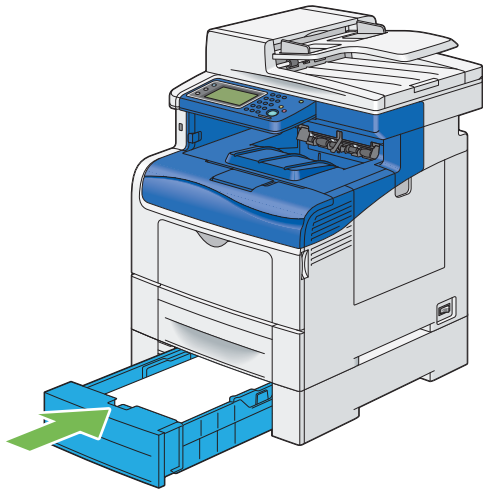
IMPORTANT:

- Do not use excessive force on the feeder. Doing so could damage the feeder or the inside of the printer.

■ Jam Problems

This section includes:

Standard 550 Sheet Tray/Optional 550 Sheet Feeder Misfeed Jam

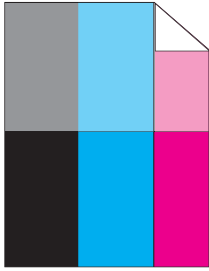| Problem	Action
Print media misfeeds occur in the standard 550 sheet tray or the optional 550 sheet feeder.	Ensure that the standard 550 sheet tray or the optional 550 sheet feeder is properly inserted. If the problem persists, verify that the correct print media is being used.
	Verify that the correct print media is being used. **See also:** • "Usable Print Media" on page 139 If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. If the problem persists, ensure that the print media is not curled.
	Ensure that the print media is not curled. If the problem persists, fan the print media.
	Ensure that the print media is not damp. If the print media is damp, turn over the print media. If the problem persists, use print media that is not damp. If the print media is not damp, fan the print media.
	Fan the print media. If the problem persists, wipe the feed roller in the standard 550 sheet tray or the optional 550 sheet feeder with a cloth moistened with water.
	Wipe the feed roller in the standard 550 sheet tray or the optional 550 sheet feeder with a cloth moistened with water. If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.
	Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges. **See also:** • "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426 If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Bypass Tray Misfeed Jam

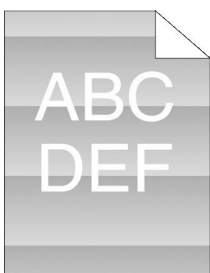| Problem	Action
Print media misfeeds occur in the bypass tray.	Ensure that the bypass tray is properly inserted. If the problem persists, verify that the correct print media is being used.
	Verify that the correct print media is being used. **See also:** • "Usable Print Media" on page 139 If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. If the problem persists, ensure that the print media is not damp.
	Ensure that the print media is not curled. If the problem persists, fan the print media.
	Ensure that the print media is not damp. If the print media is damp, turn over the print media. If the problem persists, use print media that is not damp. If the print media is not damp, fan the print media.
	Fan the print media. If the problem persists, wipe the feed roller in the bypass tray with a cloth moistened with water.
	Wipe the feed roller in the bypass tray with a cloth moistened with water. If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.
	Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges. **See also:** • "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426 If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Regi Jam (Exit Sensor On JAM)

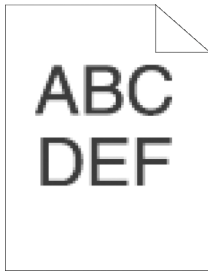| Problem	Action
Regi jam (Exit Sensor On JAM) occurs.	Ensure that the drum cartridges are installed correctly.
	If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges as instructed in "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426.
	Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges. **See also:** • "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426
	If the problem persists, ensure that the fusing unit is installed correctly.
	Ensure that the fusing unit is installed correctly.
	If the problem persists, replace the fusing unit as instructed in "Replacing the Fusing Unit" on page 432.
	Replace the fusing unit. **See also:** • "Replacing the Fusing Unit" on page 432
	If the problem persists, ensure that the belt unit is installed correctly.
	Ensure that the belt unit is installed correctly.
	If the problem persists, replace the belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller as instructed in "Replacing the Belt Unit, the 2nd BTR, and the Retard Roller" on page 435.
	Replace the belt unit, the 2nd BTR, and the retard roller. **See also:** • "Replacing the Belt Unit, the 2nd BTR, and the Retard Roller" on page 435
	If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Exit Jam (Exit Sensor Off JAM)

Problem	Action
Exit jam (Exit Sensor Off JAM) occurs.	Ensure that the fusing unit is installed correctly.
	If the problem persists, replace the fusing unit as instructed in "Replacing the Fusing Unit" on page 432.
	Replace the fusing unit. **See also:** • "Replacing the Fusing Unit" on page 432
	If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

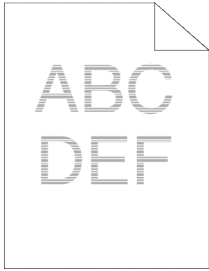## Standard 550 Sheet Tray/Optional 550 Sheet Feeder Multi-feed Jam

Problem	Action
Print media multiple feeds occur in the standard 550 sheet tray or optional 550 sheet feeder.	Ensure that the tray or feeder is properly inserted.
	If using coated paper, load coated paper one sheet at a time.
	If using other type of print media, use print media that is not damp.
	Load coated paper one sheet at a time.
	If the problem persists, fan the print media.
	Use print media that is not damp.
	If the problem persists, fan the print media.
	Fan the print media.
	If the problem persists, wipe the feed roller in the tray or feeder where the multifeed occurred with a cloth moistened with water.
	Wipe the feed roller in the tray or feeder where the multifeed occurred with a cloth moistened with water.
	If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Bypass Tray Multi-feed Jam

Problem	Action
Print media multiple feeds occur in the bypass tray.	Ensure that the media type you are using.
	If using coated paper, load coated paper one sheet at a time.
	If using other type of print media, use print media that is not damp.
	Load coated paper one sheet at a time.
	If the problem persists, fan the print media.
	Use print media that is not damp.
	If the problem persists, fan the print media.
	Fan the print media.
	If the problem persists, wipe the feed roller in the tray where the multifeed occurred with a cloth moistened with water.
	Wipe the feed roller in the tray where the multifeed occurred with a cloth moistened with water.
	If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Basic Printer Problems

Some printer problems can be easily resolved. If a problem occurs with your printer, check each of the following:

- The power cord is connected to the printer, and to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- The printer is turned on.
- The electrical outlet is not turned off at any switch or breaker.
- Other electrical equipment plugged into the outlet is working.
- All options are properly installed.

If you have checked all of the above and still have a problem, turn off the printer, wait for 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer. This often fixes the problem.

IMPORTANT:

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

NOTE:

- If error messages are displayed on the LCD panel or on your computer, follow the on-screen instructions to resolve the printer problems. For details about error messages and error codes, see "Understanding Printer Messages" on page 400.

Display Problems

Problem	Action
Menu settings changed from the operator panel have no effect.	Settings in the software program, the print driver, or the printer utilities have precedence over the settings made on the operator panel.

Printing Problems

NOTE:
- If `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`, you need to enter the four digit passcode to enter the `Admin Settings` menu.

Problem	Action
Job did not print or incorrect characters printed.	Ensure that the top menu appears on the LCD panel before you send a job to print. Press the ⌂ (**Services**) button to return to the top menu.
	Ensure that the print media is loaded in the printer. Press the ⌂ (**Services**) button to return to the top menu.
	Verify that the printer is using the correct page description language (PDL).
	Verify that you are using the correct print driver.
	Ensure that the correct USB cable, Ethernet cable or wireless printer adapter is securely connected to the printer.
	Verify that the correct print media size is selected.
	If you are using a print spooler, verify that the spooler has not stalled.
	Check the printer's interface from the `Admin Settings` menu.
	Determine the host interface you are using. Print a Panel Settings page to verify that the current interface settings are correct.
Print media misfeeds or multiple feeds occur.	Ensure that the print media you are using meets the specifications for your printer. **See also:** • "Usable Print Media" on page 139
	Fan the print media before loading it.
	Ensure that the print media is loaded correctly.
	Ensure that the width and length guides of the print media sources are adjusted correctly.
	Ensure that the standard 550 sheet tray, the optional 550 sheet feeder, or the bypass tray is securely inserted.
	Do not overload the standard 550 sheet tray, the optional 550 sheet feeder, or the bypass tray.
	Do not force print media into the bypass tray when you load it; otherwise, it may skew or buckle.
	Ensure that the print media is not curled.
	Face the recommended print side up. **See also:** • "Loading Print Media" on page 143
	Turn the print media over or around and try printing again to see if feeding improves.
	Do not mix print media types.
	Do not mix reams of print media.
	Remove the top and bottom curled sheets of a ream before loading the print media.
	Load print media only when the standard 550 sheet tray, the optional 550 sheet feeder, or the bypass tray is empty.
	Wipe the feed roller in the standard 550 sheet tray, the optional 550 sheet feeder, or the bypass tray with a cloth moistened with water.
The envelope is creased after printed.	Make sure that the envelope is loaded in the bypass tray as instructed in "Loading Envelope in the Bypass Tray" on page 148.
Page breaks in unexpected places.	Increase the value for the time-out on the operator panel or CentreWare Internet Services.

Problem	Action
Print media does not stack neatly in the output tray.	Turn the print media stack over in the standard 550 sheet tray or the bypass tray.
Cannot print from the standard 550 sheet tray or the optional 550 sheet feeder because the print media in the tray or feeder is curled.	Load the print media into the bypass tray.

Print Quality Problems

This section includes:

NOTE:

- In this section, some procedures use the operator panel, CentreWare Internet Services or PCL 6 driver.

See also:

■ The Output Is Too Light

ABC
DEF

Problem	Action
The output is too light.	The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner in each toner cartridge. **1** Check the toner level in the **Status Monitor** window. **2** Replace the toner cartridges as necessary. If the problem persists, disable **Toner Saver** in the print driver.
	Disable **Toner Saver** in the print driver. The following procedure uses the PCL 6 driver as an example. **1** On the **Image Options** tab, ensure that **Off** is selected in the **Toner Saver** drop-down menu. If the problem persists, try changing the **Paper Type** setting in the print driver.
	The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the **Paper Type** setting in the print driver. For example, change the plain paper to heavyweight using a PCL 6 driver. **1** On the **Paper/Output** tab, change the **Paper Type** setting. If the problem persists, verify that the correct print media is being used.
	Verify that the correct print media is being used. **See also:** • "Usable Print Media" on page 139 If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. If the problem persists, clean inside the printer by using the cleaning rod.
	Clean inside the printer by using the cleaning rod. **See also:** • "Cleaning the Raster Optical Scanner (ROS) Window" on page 418 If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.
	Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges. **See also:** • "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426 • "Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 429 If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Toner Smears or Print Comes Off

ABC
DEF

Problem	Action
Toner smears or print comes off.	The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the **Paper Type** setting in the print driver. For example, change the plain paper to heavyweight using a PCL 6 driver. **1** On the **Paper/Output** tab, change the **Paper Type** setting. If the problem persists, verify that the correct print media is being used.
	Verify that the correct print media is being used. **See also:** • "Usable Print Media" on page 139 If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.
	Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges. **1** Replace the drum cartridges. **See also:** • "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426 • "Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 429 **2** After you replace the drum cartridges, test print your document again. If the problem persists, replace the fusing unit as instructed in "Replacing the Fusing Unit" on page 432.
	Replace the fusing unit. **See also:** • "Replacing the Fusing Unit" on page 432 If the problem persists, replace the 2nd BTR, the belt unit, and the retard roller as instructed in "Replacing the Belt Unit, the 2nd BTR, and the Retard Roller" on page 435.
	Replace the 2nd BTR, the belt unit, and the retard roller. **See also:** • "Replacing the Belt Unit, the 2nd BTR, and the Retard Roller" on page 435 If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Random Spots/Blurred Images

ABC
DEF

Problem	Action
The printed result has random spots or is blurred.	Ensure that the toner cartridges are installed correctly. **See also:** • "Installing a Toner Cartridge" on page 424 If the problem persists, ensure that the drum cartridges are installed correctly.
	Ensure that the drum cartridges are installed correctly. **See also:** • "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426 • "Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 429 If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.
	Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges. **See also:** • "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426 • "Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 429 If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ The Entire Output Is Blank

Problem	Action
The entire output is blank.	The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner in each toner cartridge. **1** Check the toner level in the **Status Monitor** window. **2** Replace the toner cartridges as necessary. If the problem persists, disable **Toner Saver** in the print driver.
	Disable **Toner Saver** in the print driver. The following procedure uses the PCL 6 driver as an example. **1** On the **Image Options** tab, ensure that **Off** is selected in the **Toner Saver** drop-down menu. If the problem persists, try changing the **Paper Type** setting in the print driver.
	The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the **Paper Type** setting in the print driver. For example, change the plain paper to heavyweight using the PCL 6 driver. **1** On the **Paper / Output** tab, change the **Paper Type** setting. If the problem persists, verify that the correct print media is being used.
	Verify that the correct print media is being used. **See also:** • "Usable Print Media" on page 139 If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.
	Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges. **See also:** • "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426 • "Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 429 If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Streaks Appear on the Output

Problem	Action
Streaks appear on the output.	The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner in each toner cartridge. **1** Check the toner level in the **Status Monitor** window. **2** Replace the toner cartridges as necessary. If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.
	Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges. **See also:** • "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426 • "Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 429 If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Part or the Entire Output Is Black

Problem	Action
Part or the entire output is black.	Ensure that the drum cartridges are installed correctly. **See also:** • "Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 429 If the problem persists, ensure **Output Color** is set to **Color** in the print driver.
	Ensure **Output Color** is set to **Color** in the print driver. The following procedure uses the PCL 6 driver as an example. **1** On the **Color Options** tab, ensure that the **Output Color** is set to **Color**. If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.
	Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges. **See also:** • "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426 • "Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 429 If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Pitched Color Dots

ABC
DEF

Problem	Action
The printed result has pitched color dots.	Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges. **See also:** • "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426 • "Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 429 If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.
	Replace the fusing unit. **See also:** • "Replacing the Fusing Unit" on page 432 If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.
	Replace the 2nd BTR, the belt unit, and the retard roller. **See also:** • "Replacing the Belt Unit, the 2nd BTR, and the Retard Roller" on page 435 If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Vertical Blanks

Problem	Action
The printed result has vertical blanks.	Clean inside the printer by using the cleaning rod. **See also:** • "Cleaning the Raster Optical Scanner (ROS) Window" on page 418 If the problem persists, ensure the light path is not covered.
	Ensure the light path is not covered. **1** Remove the drum cartridges, and keep it in the dark place. **See also:** • "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426 **2** Check the light path, and then remove the shielding. **3** Re-install the drum cartridges. **See also:** • "Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 429 If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.
	Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges. **See also:** • "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426 • "Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 429 If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Mottle

Problem	Action
The printed result has mottled appearance.	Verify that the print media recommended for the printer is being used. If you use non-recommended print media, use the print media recommended for the printer. If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Ghosting

Problem	Action
The printed result has ghosting.	If the type of the ghosting is positive ghost: Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges. **See also:** • "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426 • "Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 429 If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.
	If the type of the ghosting is negative ghost: Verify that the print media recommended for the printer is being used. If you are using non-recommended print media, use the print media recommended for the printer. If the problem is solved, adjust the transfer bias. If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.
	Adjust the transfer bias. 1 On the operator panel, press the `i` (**System**) button and select the `Tools` tab and select `Admin Settings` → `Maintenance` → `Adjust 2nd BTR`. 2 Adjust the setting for the type of print media being used. If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Light-Induced Fatigue

Problem	Action
The printed result has light-induced fatigue pattern.	Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges. **See also:** • "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426 • "Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 429 If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Fog

Problem	Action
The printed result is foggy.	Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.
	See also:
	• "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426
	• "Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 429
	If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Bead-Carry-Out (BCO)

Problem	Action
Bead-Carry-Out (BCO) is happening.	Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.
	See also:
	• "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426
	• "Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 429
	If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Jagged Characters

ABC
DEF

Problem	Action
The printed result has jagged characters.	Set **Screen** to **Fineness** in the print driver. The following procedure uses the PCL 6 driver as an example. **1** On the **Advanced** tab, set **Screen** under **Image Options** to **Fineness**. If the problem persists, set **Image Quality** to **High Quality** in the print driver.
	Set **Image Quality** to **High Quality** in the print driver. The following procedure uses the PCL 6 driver as an example. **1** On the **Color Options** tab, select **High Quality** from **Image Quality**. If the problem persists, enable **Bitmap Smoothing** in the print driver.
	Enable **Bitmap Smoothing** in the print driver. The following procedure uses the PCL 6 driver as an example. **1** On the **Advanced** tab, set **Bitmap Smoothing** under **Image Options**: to **On**. If the problem persists, enable **Print Page Mode** in the print driver.
	Enable **Print Page Mode** in the print driver. The following procedure uses the PCL 6 driver as an example. **1** On the **Advanced** tab, set **Print Page Mode** under **Image Options**: to **On**. If the problem persists, check whether or not the downloaded font you are using is recommended.
	If using a downloaded font, ensure that the font is recommended for the printer, operating system, and the application being used. If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Banding

Problem	Action
The printed result has banding.	Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.
	See also: • "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426 • "Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 429
	If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.
	Replace the fusing unit if you have a spare unit.
	See also: • "Replacing the Fusing Unit" on page 432
	If the cause of the problem is not located, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.
	Replace the 2nd BTR, the belt unit, and the retard roller.
	See also: • "Replacing the Belt Unit, the 2nd BTR, and the Retard Roller" on page 435
	If the cause of the problem is not located, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Auger Mark

Problem	Action
The printed result has auger mark.	Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.
	See also: • "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426 • "Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 429
	If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Wrinkled/Stained Paper

Problem	Action
The output is wrinkled. The output is stained.	Verify that the correct print media is being used. **See also:** • "Usable Print Media" on page 139 • "About Print Media" on page 136 If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. If the problem with printing on an envelope persists, check the wrinkle of the envelope. If the problem with printing on a print media other than envelopes persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.
	Check whether the wrinkle of the four edges of the envelope is within 30 mm. If the wrinkle of the four edges of the envelope is within 30 mm, this type of wrinkle is considered normal. Your printer is not at fault. If not, load the envelopes in the bypass tray properly.
	Load the envelopes in the bypass tray properly. **See also:** • "Loading Envelope in the Bypass Tray" on page 148 If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Damage on the Leading Edge of Paper

ABC
DEF
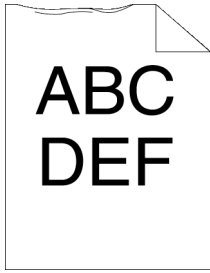
Problem	Action
The output is damaged on its leading edge.	When using the bypass tray, reverse the paper and then try again.
	If the problem persists, change the paper with another one and then try again.
	When using the standard 550 sheet tray or optional 550 sheet feeder, change the paper and then try again.
	If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.
	Change the paper with another one and then try again.
	If the problem persists, use the standard 550 sheet tray or optional 550 sheet feeder in place of the bypass tray.
	Use the standard 550 sheet tray or optional 550 sheet feeder in place of the bypass tray.
	If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ The Top and Side Margins Are Incorrect

ABC
DEF
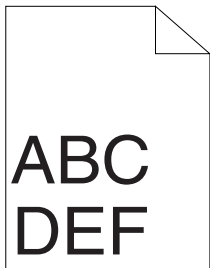
Problem	Action
The top and side margins are incorrect.	Ensure that the margins are set correctly on the application being used.
	If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Color Registration Is out of Alignment

Problem	Action
Color registration is out of alignment.	Adjust the settings of the paper type on the print driver to those of the tray or feeder.
	If the problem persists, execute auto color registration adjustment.
	Execute auto color registration adjustment.
	1 On the operator panel, press the ⓘ (**System**) button, select the `Tools` tab and select `Admin Settings → Maintenance → Color Registration → Auto Registration → Start`.
	If the problem persists, check whether or not you have spare drum cartridges.
	Check whether or not you have spare drum cartridges.
	If you have spare drum cartridges, replace the drum cartridges.
	If you do not have spare drum cartridges, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.
	Replace the drum cartridges if you have spare cartridges.
	See also: • "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426 • "Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 429
	If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Protrudent/Bumpy Paper

Problem	Action
Printed surface got protrudent/bumpy.	Clean up the fusing unit.
	1 Load one sheet of paper in the bypass tray, and then print a solid image all over paper.
	2 Load the printed sheet with the side to be printed on facing down, and then print a blank sheet of paper.
	If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

■ Images Are Skewed

Problem	Action
The printed result are skewed.	Adjust the paper guides properly.
	If the problem persists, install the belt unit according to an appropriate procedure.
	Install the belt unit according to an appropriate procedure.
	See also: • "Installing a Belt Unit" on page 439
	If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Noise

Problem	Action
The printed result has the noise.	To specify the cause of the noise, perform the Auto Registration. If the problem is solved, replace the 2nd BTR, the belt unit, and the retard roller. If the problem persists, replace the fusing unit.
	Replace the 2nd BTR, the belt unit, and the retard roller. **See also:** • "Replacing the Belt Unit, the 2nd BTR, and the Retard Roller" on page 435 If the problem persists, replace the waste toner box.
	Replace the fusing unit. **See also:** • "Replacing the Fusing Unit" on page 432 If the problem persists, replace the black toner cartridge.
	Replace the waste toner box. **See also:** • "Replacing the Waste Toner Box" on page 444 If the problem persists, replace the drum cartridges.
	Replace the drum cartridges. **See also:** • "Replacing the Drum Cartridges" on page 426 • "Installing the Drum Cartridges" on page 429 If the problem persists, replace the black toner cartridge.
	Replace the black toner cartridge. **See also:** • "Replacing the Toner Cartridges" on page 423 If the problem persists, replace the yellow toner cartridge.
	Replace the yellow toner cartridge. **See also:** • "Replacing the Toner Cartridges" on page 423 If the problem persists, replace the magenta toner cartridge.
	Replace the magenta toner cartridge. **See also:** • "Replacing the Toner Cartridges" on page 423 If the problem persists, replace the cyan toner cartridge.
	Replace the cyan toner cartridge. **See also:** • "Replacing the Toner Cartridges" on page 423 If the problem persists, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Copy Problem

Problem	Action
A document loaded in the DADF cannot be copied.	Ensure that the DADF cover is firmly closed.
	Ensure that the release lever is properly positioned.
Vertical blanks or streaks appear on the output when scanned using the DADF.	Clean the DADF glass.
	Clean inside the printer by using the cleaning rod. **See also:** • "Cleaning the Raster Optical Scanner (ROS) Window" on page 418
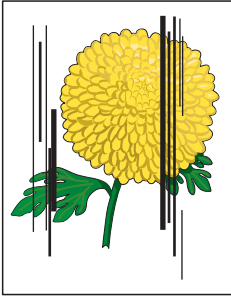
Copy Quality Problems

Problem	Action
There are lines or streaks in copies made from the DADF.	There is debris on the DADF glass. When scanning, the paper from the DADF passes over the debris creating lines or streaks. Clean the DADF glass with a lint free cloth. **See also:** • "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 410
There are spots in copies taken from the document glass.	There is debris on the document glass. When scanning, the debris creates a spot on the image. Clean the document glass with a lint free cloth. **See also:** • "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 410
The reverse side of the original is showing on the copy.	Use the `Lighten / Darken` option on the Copy menu. For information on making the image lighter, see "Lighten / Darken" on page 195.
Light colors are washed out or white on the copy.	On the Copy menu, disable `Auto Background Suppression`. For information on turning `Auto Background Suppression` on and off, see "Auto Background Suppression" on page 197.
Image is too light or dark.	Use the `Lighten / Darken` option on the Copy menu. For information on making the image lighter or darker, see "Lighten / Darken" on page 195.

NOTE:

• If the problem continues even though you have taken suggested actions described above, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Adjusting Color Registration

This section describes how to adjust the color registration when you first install the printer or after moving it to a new location.

This section includes:

NOTE:
- • If `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`, you need to enter the four digit passcode to enter the `Admin Settings` menu.

■ Performing Auto Adjust

Auto Adjust allows you to correct the color registration automatically.

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab.

3 Select `Admin Settings`.

4 Select `Maintenance`.

5 Select `Color Registration`.

6 Select `Auto Registration`.

7 Select `Start`.
    Auto Adjust is performed.

■ Printing the Color Registration Chart

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab.

3 Select `Admin Settings`.

4 Select `Maintenance`.

5 Select `Color Registration`.

6 Select `Print Registration Chart`.

7 Select `Print`.
    The color registration chart is printed.

■ Determining Values

On the color registration chart, there are two types of charts: Chart 1 (fast scan) and Chart 2 (slow scan).

Chart 1 (fast scan)
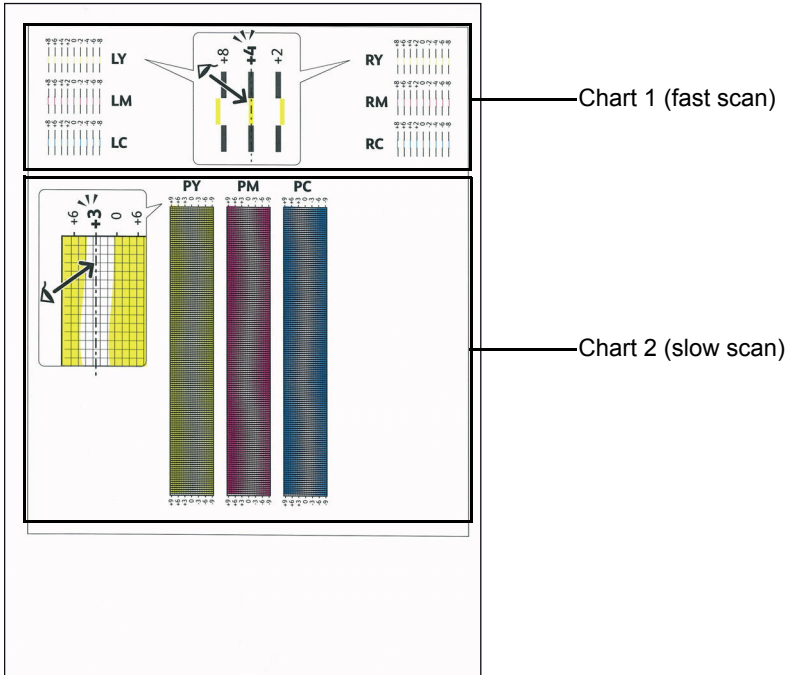
Chart 2 (slow scan)

The Chart 1 is used to adjust the color registration for the fast scan direction, which is vertical to paper feed direction. The Chart 2 is used to adjust the color registration for the slow scan direction, which is horizontal to paper feed direction.

The following sections explain how to determine the adjustment values for the fast scan and the slow scan using Chart 1 and Chart 2.

Fast Scan

On the Chart 1 of the color registration chart, find the straightest lines where the two black lines and the colored line are most closely aligned for each color (**LY**, **LM**, **LC**, **RY**, **RM**, and **RC**). If you find the straightest line, make a note of the value (**-8** to **+8**) indicated by the straightest line for each color.

When the value is **0** for each color, you do not need to adjust the color registration for the fast scan.

When the value is not **0**, enter the value using the procedure in .

Straightest line

Slow Scan

On the Chart 2 of the color registration chart, find the medium line within the range of white area for each color pattern (**PY**, **PM**, and **PC**). If you find the medium line, make a note of the value (**-9** to **+9**) indicated by the medium line for each color.

When the value is **0** for each color, you do not need to adjust the color registration for the slow scan.

When the value is not **0**, enter the value using the procedure in "Entering Values" on page 391.

Lattice pattern
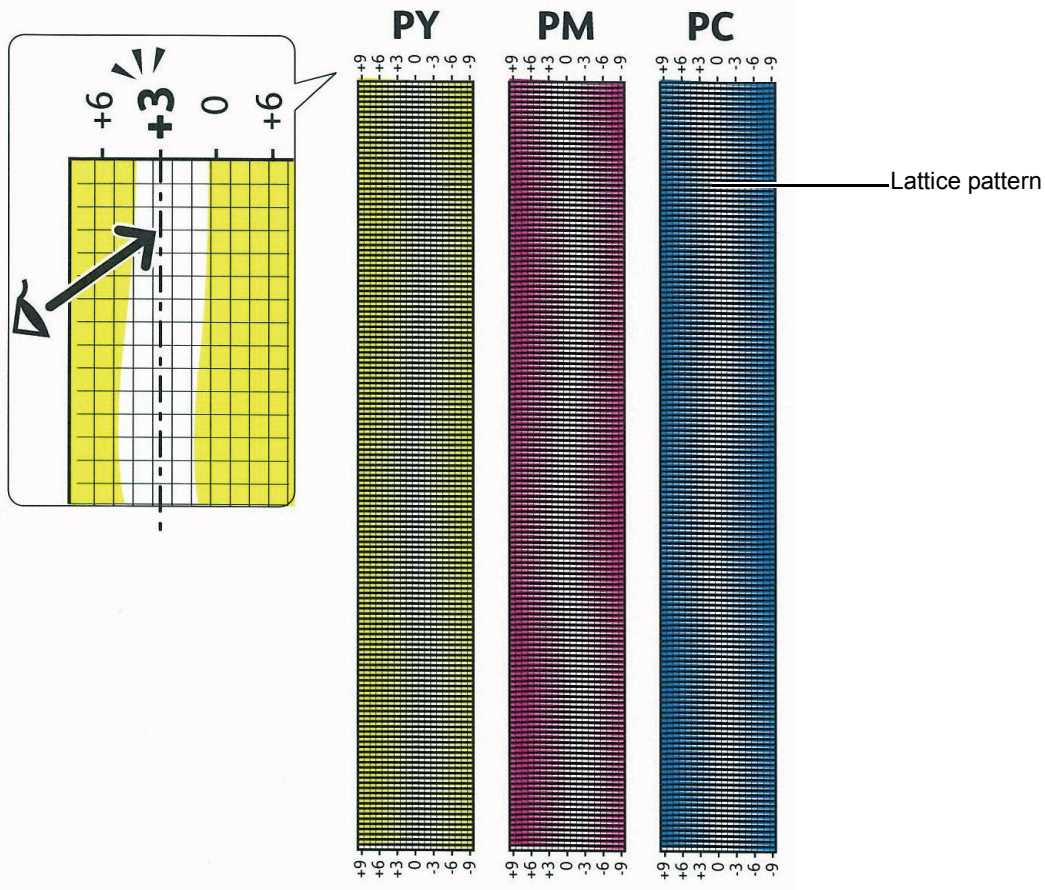
■ Entering Values

Using the operator panel, enter the values found in the color registration chart to make adjustments.

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab.

3 Select `Admin Settings`.

4 Select `Maintenance`.

5 Select `Color Registration`.

6 Select `Enter Registration Values`.

7 Ensure that `LY`, `LM`, and `LC` appear.

8 Select `+` or `-` to specify the values for `LY`, `LM`, and `LC`.

9 Select `Next`.

10 Ensure that `RY`, `RM`, and `RC` appear.

11 Select `+` or `-` to specify the values for `RY`, `RM`, and `RC`.

12 Select `Next`.

13 Ensure that `PY`, `PM`, and `PC` appear.

14 Select `+` or `-` to specify the values for `PY`, `PM`, and `PC`.

15 Select `OK`.

> **NOTE:**
> • The registration values are always shown as `0` the next time you enter the menu.

16 Select `Print Registration Chart`.

17 Select `Print`.

The color registration chart is printed with the new values.

If the straightest line is not at the value of 0, adjust the values again. Checking the charts before and after the adjustments will help you to determine the values to enter.

After printing the color registration chart, do not turn off the printer until the printer motor has stopped running.

IMPORTANT:
• If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

Fax Problems

Problem	Action
The printer is not working, there is no display and the buttons are not working.	Unplug the power cord and plug it in again.
	Ensure that there is power to the electrical receptacle.
No dial tone sounds.	Check that the phone line is connected properly. **See also:** • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 248
	Check that the phone socket in the wall is working by plugging in another phone.
The numbers stored in the memory do not dial correctly.	Ensure that the numbers are stored in the memory correctly.
	Print an Address Book list.
The document does not feed into the printer.	Ensure that the document is not wrinkled and you are putting it in correctly. Check that the document is of the right size, not too thick or thin.
	Ensure that the DADF cover is firmly closed.
Faxes are not received automatically.	Check that the phone line is connected properly. **See also:** • "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 248
	The Fax mode should be selected.
	Ensure that there is paper in the paper tray.
	Check to see if the display shows `Memory Full`.
	If the time interval specified for the following features is too long, change the time interval shorter such as 30 seconds. • Auto Answer Fax • Auto Ans. TEL/FAX • Auto Ans. Ans/FAX
The printer does not send faxes.	`Sending Fax` should show up on the display.
	Check the other fax machine you are sending to, to see if it can receive your fax.
	Check the `Dialing Type` for `PB`, `DP(10PPS)` or `DP(20PPS)`.
	Ensure that the document is loaded in the DADF or on the document glass.
The incoming fax has blank spaces or is received in poor quality.	Check your printer by making a copy.
	The toner cartridge may be empty. Replace the toner cartridge. **See also:** • "Replacing the Toner Cartridges" on page 423
	A noisy phone line can cause line errors. Set the fax modem speed to a slower speed.
	The fax machine sending you the fax may be faulty.
Some of the words on an incoming fax are stretched.	The fax machine sending you the fax had a temporary document jam.
There are lines on the documents you send.	Check the surface of the document glass and DADF glass for marks and clean it. **See also:** • "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 410
The printer dials a number, but the connection with another fax machine fails.	The other fax machine may be turned off, out of paper, or cannot answer incoming calls. Speak with the other machine operator and ask her/him to sort out the problem.
Documents are not stored in the memory.	There may not be enough memory to store the document. If the display shows a `Memory Full` message, delete any documents you no longer need from the memory and then restore the document, or wait for the job in progress (e.g., a fax transmission or reception) to complete.

Blank areas appear at the bottom of each page or on other pages, with a small strip of text at the top.	You may have chosen the wrong paper settings in the user option setting. **See also:** • "Supported Print Media" on page 139
The printer will not send or receive faxes.	Ensure that the region code is set correctly under `i` (**System**) → `Tools` → `Admin Settings` → `Fax Settings` → `Fax Line Settings` → `Region`.
	Check the `Dialing Type` for `PB`, `DP(10PPS)` or `DP(20PPS)`.
	Check that the cables are connected properly.
	If the telephone line cord is connected to the printer via any device such as an answering machine and a computer, remove the device and directly connect the telephone line cord to the printer.
An error often occurs during a fax transmission or reception.	Reduce the modem speed under `i` (**System**) → `Tools` → `Admin Settings` → `Fax Settings` → `Transmission Defaults` → `Modem Speed`.
The printer receive faxes, but it does not print.	Check the toner level.
	Ensure that there is paper in the paper tray.
	Ensure that `Forward Settings` is set to `Off`.
	Ensure that `Junk Fax Filter` is set to `Off`.
	Ensure that `Secure Receive Set` is set to `Disable`.
	Execute `Initialize NVM`.

Scanning Problems

Problem	Action
The scanner does not work.	Ensure that you place the document to be scanned facing down from the document glass, or facing up in the DADF.
	There may not be enough available memory to hold the document you want to scan. Try the Preview function to see if that works. Try lowering the scan resolution rate.
	Check that the USB cable, Ethernet cable or wireless printer adapter is connected properly.
	Ensure that the USB cable, Ethernet cable or wireless printer adapter is not defective. Switch the cable or adapter with a known good cable or adapter. If necessary, replace it.
	If using the network TWAIN (WIA) driver, check that the Ethernet cable or wireless printer adapter is connected properly and the IP address of the printer is set correctly. To check the IP address, see "Verifying the IP Settings" on page 97.
	Check that the scanner is configured correctly. Check the application you want to use to make certain that the scanner job is being sent to the correct port.
	Ensure that the scanner sharing feature is disabled when you use Mac OS® X before you scan documents via an ICA compatible application such as Image Capture. The printer does not support the scanner sharing feature of Mac OS X. Select a printer which is directly connected to the computer via USB or wired / wireless LAN and scan documents.
The printer scans very slowly.	Graphics are scanned more slowly than text when you use the E-mail or Scan To Network feature.
	Communication speed becomes slow in scan mode because of the large amount of memory required to analyze and reproduce the scanned image.
	Scanning images at a high resolution takes more time than scanning at a low resolution.
Document misfeeds or multiple feeds occur in the DADF.	Check whether the DADF feed roller assembly is installed properly.
	Ensure the document's paper type meets the specifications for the printer. **See also:** • "Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF) Guidelines" on page 138
	Check whether the document is properly loaded in the DADF.
	Ensure that the document guides are adjusted properly.
	Ensure that the number of document sheets do not exceed the maximum capacity of the DADF.
	Ensure that the document is not curled.
	Fan the document well before loading it in the DADF.
Vertical stripes appear on the output when scanned using the DADF.	Clean the DADF glass. **See also:** • "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 410
	Clean inside the printer by using the cleaning rod. **See also:** • "Cleaning the Raster Optical Scanner (ROS) Window" on page 418
A smear appears at the same location on the output when scanned using the document glass.	Clean the document glass. **See also:** • "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 410
Images are skewed.	Ensure that the document is loaded straight in the DADF or on the document glass.
Diagonal lines appear jagged when scanned using the DADF.	If the document uses thick media, try scanning it from the document glass.

Message appears on your computer screen: • **Device can't be set to the H/W mode you want.** • **Port is being used by another program.** • **Port is Disabled.** • **Scanner is busy receiving or printing data. When the current job is completed, try again.** • **Invalid handle.** • **Scanning has failed.**	There may be a copying or printing job in progress. When the current job is complete, try the job again.
	The selected port is currently being used. Restart your computer and try again.
	The cable may be improperly connected or the power may be off.
	The scan driver is not installed or an operating environment is not set up properly.
	Ensure that the port is properly connected and the power is turned on. Then restart your computer.
	Check that the USB cable, Ethernet cable or wireless printer adapter is connected properly.
The printer does not properly transfer scan data to a specified destination via the Scan to Email or Scan To Network feature.	Check if the following settings have been set correctly on the CentreWare Internet Services. **Scan To Network** Check the following settings under **Address Book → Computer/Server Address Book → Edit Network Scan Address:** • **Server Address** • **Login Name** • **Login Password** • **Share Name** (Displays only when **Server Type** is set to **SMB**) • **Server Path** **Scan to Email** Check the following setting under **Address Book → Email Address Book:** • **Address**
Cannot scan using WIA on a Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 computer.	Enable WIA on the computer. To enable WIA: **1** Click **Start**, point to **Administrative Tools**, and then click **Services**. **2** Right-click **Windows Image Acquisition (WIA)**, and then click **Start**.
Cannot scan using TWAIN or WIA on a Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2 computer.	Install the Desktop Experience feature on the computer. To install Desktop Experience: **1** Click **Start**, point to **Administrative Tools**, and then click **Server Manager**. **2** Under **Features Summary**, click **Add Features**. **3** Select the **Desktop Experience** check box, click **Next**, and then click **Install**. **4** Restart the computer.

Digital Certificate Problem

Problem	Action
The **LDAP-SSL/TLS Communication** setting and the **Upload Signed Certificate** button are not displayed.	Confirm whether the optional hard disk unit is connected correctly, and confirm whether data encryption is enabled from the operator panel.
The certificate import button is disabled.	Create a self-signed certificate and enable SSL.
The **Certificate Management** button is disabled.	
The certificate cannot be imported.	Confirm validity period of the certificate as well as the time setting of the device.
	Confirm whether the password is correct.
	Confirm whether the file type is PKCS#7/#12 or x509CACert (extension: p7b/p12/pfx/cer/crt).
	Confirm whether the attribute information (key Usage/Extended key usage) of the certificate to be imported is set correctly.
	Use Internet Explorer.
016-404 is displayed when setting the encryption of the optional hard disk unit to off.	After initializing, import the certificate and enable the security settings again. The action is the same when formatting the optional hard disk unit.
016-404 is displayed when formatting the optional hard disk unit.	
Security is set to off when setting encryption of the optional hard disk unit to off.	
Security is set to off when formatting the optional hard disk unit.	
A certificate is deleted when setting encryption of the optional hard disk unit to off.	
A certificate is deleted when formatting the optional hard disk unit.	
A certificate cannot be set in **Certificate Details** page.	The validity period of the certificate is invalid.
	Confirm whether the time setting of the machine is correct, and whether the validity period of the certificate has expired.
	The certificate chain (path validation) of the imported certificate may not be correctly validated.
	Confirm whether all of the high-level certificates (Trusted/Intermediate) have been imported and are not deleted, and whether the validity period has expired.
Although a certificate was imported, it is not displayed when selecting **Local Device** for **Category** in **Certificate Management** page.	To import a certificate for use with the device (own device), import the secret key and a certificate of the PKCS#12 (p12/pfx) format as a pair.
Server validation is not operating correctly.	Although importing a root certificate (Trusted) to use for server authentication, an Intermediate certificate may be required when validating the path.
	When executing a certificate file with the certification authority, create the certificate with a format including all paths and then import that certificate.
Digital Signature cannot be selected with the IPsec setting.	Either the certificate has not been imported or the certificate has not been associated for use with **Digital Signature** mode of IPsec. See "Using Digital Certificates" on page 174 to set a certificate of IPsec.

Problems With Installed Optional Accessories

If an option does not operate correctly following installation or stops working:

- Turn off the printer, wait for 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer. If this does not fix the problem, unplug the printer, and check the connection between the option and the printer.

IMPORTANT:

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.
- Ensure the option is selected in the print driver you are using.
- Print the System Settings page to see if the option is listed in the **Printer Options** list. If the option is not listed, re-install it.

  See also:
  - "Report / List" on page 280

The following table lists printer's option and corrective action for related problem. If the suggested corrective action does not correct the problem, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

Problem	Action
The optional 550 sheet feeder does not work correctly.	Ensure that the optional 550 sheet feeder is correctly installed on the printer. Re-install the optional 550 sheet feeder. **See also:** • "Removing the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder (without the Cabinet)" on page 465 • "Installing the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder (without the Cabinet)" on page 63 If the problem persists, contact customer support.
	Ensure that the print media is loaded correctly. **See also:** • "Loading Print Media in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray and the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder" on page 144 If the problem persists, contact customer support.
The optional 512MB memory does not work correctly.	Ensure that the optional 512MB memory is securely connected to the memory connector. If the problem persists, contact customer support.
The optional hard disk unit does not work correctly.	Ensure that the optional hard disk unit is securely inserted to the correct slot.
The optional wireless printer adapter does not work correctly.	Ensure that the optional wireless printer adapter is securely inserted to the correct slot.

Scan Driver/Printer Utility Problems

Problem	Action
Unable to retrieve the Address Book data from the printer on the Address Book Editor.	Check that the USB cable, Ethernet cable or wireless printer adapter is connected properly.
	Ensure that the printer is turned on.
	Ensure that the scan driver is installed on your computer. (The Address Book Editor retrieves the Address Book data via the scan driver when the printer is connected using a USB cable.)
The TWAIN driver cannot connect to the printer.	Check that the USB cable, Ethernet cable or wireless printer adapter is connected properly.
	If using the network connection, check that IP address of the printer is set correctly. To check the IP address, see "Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver" on page 211.
	Check whether the printer is on. If the printer is on, reboot it by turning the power switch off and then on again. **IMPORTANT:** • If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.
	If a scan application is running, close the application once, restart the application, and then try scanning again.
The scan driver has not been registered on your computer and cannot be accessed from Express Scan Manager.	Install the scan driver. If the scan driver is installed, uninstalled it and then re-install it. After the installation of the scan driver is completed, re-install the Express Scan Manager.
Failed to scan your document on the printer via Express Scan Manager.	Ensure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the USB cable.
	Check whether the printer is on. If the printer is on, reboot it by turning the power switch off and then on again. **IMPORTANT:** • If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.
	If a scan application is running, close the application once, restart the application, and then try scanning again.
	Network connection cannot be used. Connect with the USB cable.
	Uninstall Express Scan Manager on your computer and then re-install it.
Failed to create an image file via Express Scan Manager.	Ensure there is sufficient space in your hard disk.
	Uninstall Express Scan Manager on your computer and then re-install it.
Failed to initialize Express Scan Manager.	Uninstall Express Scan Manager on your computer and then re-install it.
Failed to execute Express Scan Manager.	Uninstall Express Scan Manager on your computer and then re-install it.
An unexpected error occurred on Express Scan Manager.	Uninstall Express Scan Manager on your computer and then re-install it.

Other Problems

Problem	Action
Condensation has occurred inside the printer.	This usually occurs within several hours after you heat the room in winter. This also occurs when the printer is operating in a location where relative humidity reaches 85% or more. Adjust the humidity or relocate the printer to an appropriate environment.

Understanding Printer Messages

The printer LCD panel displays messages describing the current state of the printer and indicates possible printer problems you must resolve. This section describes messages, their meanings, and how to clear the messages.

When you contact the customer support about an error, have the error codes and messages ready.

IMPORTANT:
- When an error code is displayed, the print data remaining on the printer and the information accumulated in the memory of the printer are not secured.
- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.
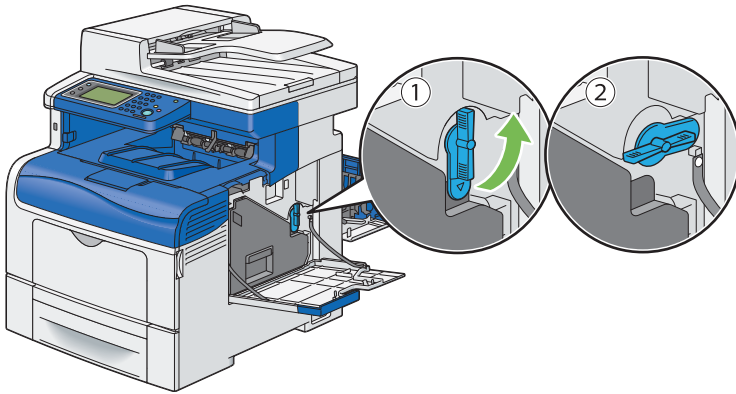
NOTE:
- An error code is listed in an error message.
- For error messages that are not listed in this chapter, refer to instructions in each error messages.

Error-Code	What You Can Do
010-317	Turn off the printer and wait for 30 minutes. Open the rear cover and make sure that the fusing unit is fully installed, and turn on the printer.
010-397	Turn off the printer. Confirm that the fusing unit is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
016-404	Contact your system administrator.
016-405	
016-500	Turn off the printer, and turn it on again.
016-501	
016-502	
016-503	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if SMTP server and DNS server are set correctly on CentreWare Internet Services.
016-504	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if POP server and DNS server are set correctly on CentreWare Internet Services.
016-505	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if user name and password used for POP3 server are set correctly on CentreWare Internet Services.
016-506	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if SMTP server or POP server is set on CentreWare Internet Services.
016-507	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if user name and password used for SMTP server are set correctly on CentreWare Internet Services.
016-520	Contact your system administrator.
016-521	
016-522	
016-523	
016-524	
016-527	
016-570	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover.
016-571	
016-572	
016-573	
016-718	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. The file size exceeds the maximum for the printer to process. Print the file from your computer.
016-720	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover.
016-737	Turn off the printer, and turn it on again.
016-741	
016-744	
016-746	Select `Close` to recover the printer.

016-750	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover.
016-753	
016-755	
016-757	
016-758	
016-759	
016-764	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Contact SMTP server administrator.
016-765	
016-766	
016-767	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check e-mail address, and try scanning again.
016-768	
016-786	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if the network cable is connected properly. If there is no problem with the network cable, contact server administrator.
016-790	
016-791	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover.
016-799	Select `Close` or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover.
016-920	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. And try it again.
016-921	
016-922	
016-923	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Modify the setting of WEP key or WPA pass phrase.
016-930	The device is not supported. Remove it from the USB port.
016-931	The USB hub is not supported. Remove it from the USB port.
016-982	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover.
016-985	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Retry scanning by lowering the resolution setting or changing the file format of the scanned image.
016-986	
026-720	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover.
026-721	Check your USB storage device: • If the file size or the number of files exceeds the limit of your USB storage device. • If your USB storage device is write-protected.
031-521	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Confirm login-able computer with your system administrator.
031-522	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if login name (domain name and user name) and password are correct.
031-523	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check the share name you specified.
031-524	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check the number of users who use the server at the same time is not exceeding the upper limit.
031-525	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if the specified user can read and write file at the storage location.
031-526	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check DNS connection, or check if forwarding destination server is registered with DNS.
031-527	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Set DNS address, or set forwarding destination server address as IP address.
031-528	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if the printer can communicate via network with the forwarding destination SMB server. For example, check the following: • Connection of a network cable • TCP/IP setting • Communication with Port 137 (UDP), 138 (UDP), and 139 (TCP) For communication beyond the subnet, check setting of the WINS server and if server name can be resolved correctly.
031-529	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if password is correct.

031-530	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if storage location is correct. Storage location you specified is DFS setting, and check if it is linked to other server. Specify directly linked server, share name, and storage location.
031-531	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check access right of the folder you specified.
031-532	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Change file name and forwarding destination folder, or move or delete file in forwarding destination folder.
031-533	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check the following: • If the file name you specified can be created in the storage location. • If the file name you specified is not used by other users. • If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.
031-534	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check the following: • If the file name you specified can be created in the storage location. • If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.
031-535 031-536	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if other user is not operating file in storage location you specified.
031-537	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if storage location has free space.
031-539	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if server name is correct.
031-540	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if domain name is correct.
031-541	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if login name (user name) is correct.
031-542	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Wait for a while and try the same operation again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
031-543	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check login permitted time with your system administrator.
031-544	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check the password valid period with your system administrator.
031-545	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check necessity of password change with your system administrator.
031-546	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check user invalid setting with your system administrator.
031-547	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check user lock-out status with your system administrator.
031-548	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check user valid period with your system administrator.
031-549	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. On server security settings, check access permission of null password user.
031-550	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check append access right to the file. Check if server supports the SMB append command.
031-551	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check rename access right to the file. Check if server supports SMB rename command.
031-552	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Set other than "Cancel" for processing in the case of file name duplication, or change/delete file name the same as the one specified in sending destination folder.
031-574	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check DNS connection, or check if name of forwarding destination server is registered with DNS.
031-575	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Set DNS address, or set forwarding destination server address as IP address.
031-576	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if the printer communicates with forwarding destination FTP server. For example, check connection of network cable and if the IP address of the server is correct.

031-578	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if login name (user name) and password are correct.
031-579	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if storage location is correct.
031-580	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check server access right.
031-581	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Change file name and forwarding destination folder, or move or delete file in forwarding destination folder.
031-582	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if the file name you specified can be created in storage location. Check if storage location has free space.
031-584	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if the folder name you specified can be created in storage location. Check if the folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.
031-585 031-587	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check server access rights.
031-588	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if storage location has free space.
031-590	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Set other than "Cancel" for processing in the case of file name duplication, or change/delete file name the same as the one specified in sending destination folder.
031-594 031-595	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Try the same operation again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
031-598	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check append access right to the file and if server supports the FTP append command.
031-599	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check rename access right to the file. Check if server supports the FTP rename command.
033-513	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Try the following: • Print the received fax, or wait for a while until sending a fax is completed. • Print the fax job stored using the Secure Receive feature. **NOTE:** • For more information on the Secure Receive feature, see "Using the Secure Receiving Mode" on page 270.
033-762	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. The printer rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers. **See also:** • "Junk Fax Filter" on page 300
033-788	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Try the following: • Remove the received fax, or wait for a while until sending a fax is completed. • Print the fax job stored using the Secure Receive feature. **NOTE:** • For more information on the Secure Receive feature, see "Using the Secure Receiving Mode" on page 270.
034-515	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Try the following: • Try the same operation. • Check the printer or remote machine if the memory is full.
034-791	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if the telephone line cord is connected properly. If the line connection is correct, check the following: • If tone/pulse setting is correct. **NOTE:** • For more information on tone/pulse setting, see "Dial Type" on page 302. If tone/pulse setting is correct, check the following: • If the remote machine can receive a fax.

035-701	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check the following: • Status of the remote machine • tone/pulse setting **NOTE:** • For more information on tone/pulse setting, see "Dial Type" on page 302.
035-702	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Try the same operation.
035-708	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Try the following: • Try the same operation. • Reduce the modem speed. **NOTE:** • For more information on modem speed, see "Modem Speed" on page 303.
035-717	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Reduce the modem speed. **NOTE:** • For more information on modem speed, see "Modem Speed" on page 303.
035-718	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check the status of the remote machine.
035-720	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check the features of the remote machine.
035-781	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover. Check if the remote machine is busy.
042-700	Wait for a while until the printer cools down.
077-215	Turn off the printer. Confirm that the duplexer is correctly installed, and turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
093-925	Turn off the printer. Confirm the black toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer.
093-950	Turn off the printer. Confirm the yellow toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer.
093-951	Turn off the printer. Confirm the magenta toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer.
093-952	Turn off the printer. Confirm the cyan toner cartridge is correctly installed, and turn on the printer.
116-316	Turn off the printer. Remove the optional 512MB memory from the slot, and then reattach it firmly. Turn on the printer. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
116-317	Turn off the printer, and turn it on again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
116-320	Remove the unsupported additional memory module. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.
116-721	Select `Close`, or wait for the time set in `Fault Timeout` for the printer to recover.
116-722	
117-361	Turn off the printer, and turn it on again. Contact customer support if this failure is repeated.

Contacting Service

When you call for printer service, be prepared to describe the problem you are experiencing or the error message on the LCD panel.

You need to know the model type and service tag of your printer. See the label located on the rear of your printer.

Getting Help

This section includes:

Fuji Xerox provides several automatic diagnostic tools to help you produce and maintain print quality.

■ LCD Panel Messages

The LCD panel provides you with information and troubleshooting help. When an error or warning condition occurs, the LCD panel displays a message informing you of the problem.

See also:

■ SimpleMonitor Alerts

The SimpleMonitor is a tool that is included on the *Driver CD Kit*. It automatically checks the printer status when you send a print job. If the printer is unable to print your job, the SimpleMonitor automatically displays an alert on your computer screen to let you know that the printer needs attention.

■ Obtaining the Product Information

Obtaining the Latest Print Driver

The latest print driver can be obtained by downloading it from our web site.

The following procedure uses the PCL 6 driver as an example.

NOTE:
- The communication fee shall be borne by users.

1 In your print driver's **Printing Preferences** dialog box, select the **Advanced** tab and then click **About**.

2 Click **Fuji Xerox Web Site**.

Your web browser launches and our web site is displayed.

3 Follow the instructions on the web site and download an appropriate print driver.

NOTE:
- You can browse our web site also on the *Driver CD Kit* included with the printer. To access the web site, click **Fuji Xerox Web Site** on the installation startup window of the CD-ROM.
- The URL of the driver download service page is as follows: http://www.fujixeroxprinters.com/
- For the latest information about the print driver features, refer to the Help provided for the print driver.

Updating the Printer's Firmware

Our web site also provides a tool that allows you to update the printer's firmware (software embedded within the printer) from your computer.

The latest firmware and updating tool can be downloaded from the following URL.

Follow the instructions on the web site and download the correct firmware update.

http://www.fujixeroxprinters.com/

NOTE:
- The communication fee shall be borne by users.

Non-Genuine Mode

When toner within a toner cartridge is empty, the `Out of Toner` message appears.

When you want to use the printer in Non-Genuine mode, program the mode and replace the toner cartridge.

IMPORTANT:

• If you use the printer in the Non-Genuine mode, the performance of the printer may not be at its optimum. And any problems that may arise from the use of the Non-Genuine mode are not covered by our quality guarantee. The continuous use of the Non-Genuine mode can also cause the printer to break down, and any repair charges for such break down will be incurred by users.

NOTE:

• Before starting the operation described below, confirm that `Ready` is displayed on the LCD panel.

1 Press the ⓘ (**System**) button.

2 Select the `Tools` tab.

3 Select `Admin Settings`.

4 Select `Maintenance`.

5 Select `Non-Genuine Toner`.

6 Select `On`, and then select `OK`.

The printer switches to the Non-Genuine mode.

Maintenance

This chapter includes:

Cleaning the Printer

This section describes how to clean the printer in order to maintain it in good condition and print clean printouts all the time.

⚠️ **WARNING:**

- When cleaning this product, use the designated cleaning materials exclusive to it. Other cleaning materials may result in poor performance of the product. Never use aerosol cleaners to avoid catching fire and explosion.

⚠️ **CAUTION:**

- When cleaning this product, always switch off and unplug it. Access to a live machine interior may cause electric shock.

This section includes:

■ Cleaning the Scanner

Keep the scanner clean to ensure the best possible copies. Clean the scanner at the start of each day and during the day, as needed.

1 Slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with water.

2 Open the document cover.
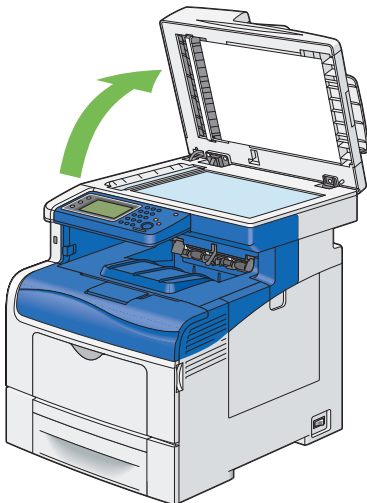
3 Wipe the surface of the document glass and Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF) glass until they are clean and dry.
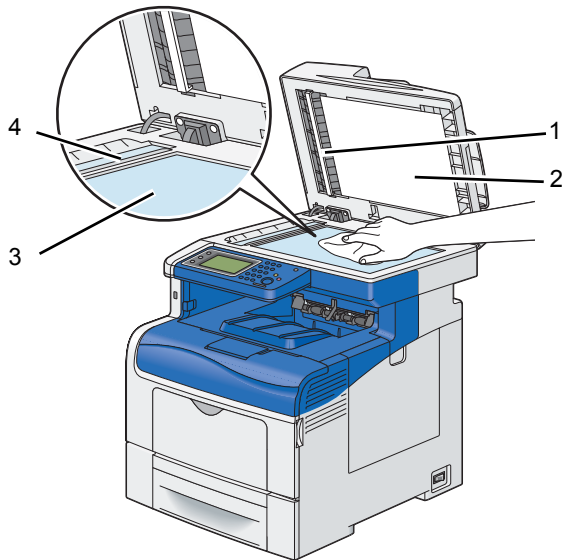
1	White Sheet
	NOTE:
	• Handle with care.
2	White Document Cover
3	Document Glass
4	DADF Glass

4 Wipe the underside of the white document cover and white sheet until they are clean and dry.
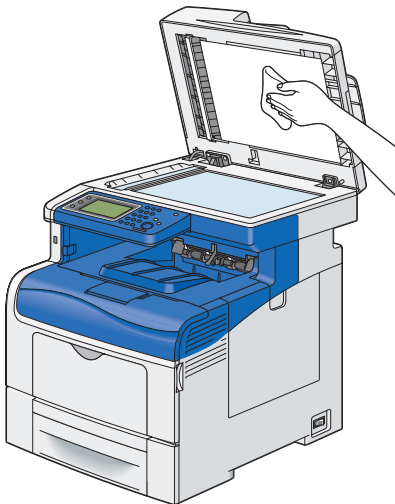
5 Close the document cover.

■ Cleaning the DADF Feed Roller

Keep the DADF feed roller clean to ensure the best possible copies. Clean the DADF feed roller regularly.

1 Open the DADF cover.
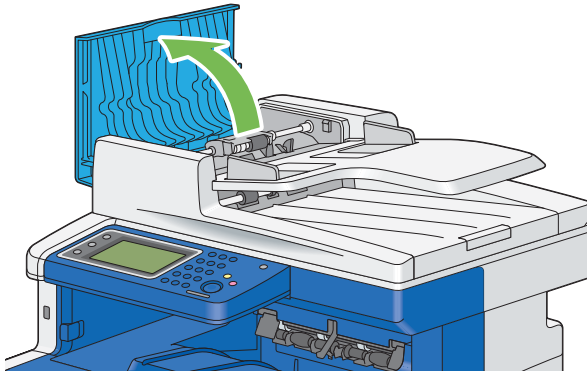
2 Wipe the DADF feed roller with a dry soft lint-free cloth or paper towel until it is clean.

If the DADF feed roller gets soiled with ink stains, paper from the DADF may also be soiled. In this case, slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with a neutral detergent or water, and then remove the contamination from the DADF feed roller until it is clean and dry.
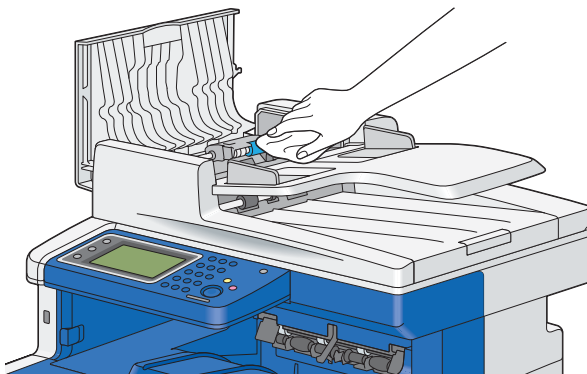
■ Cleaning Inside the Printer

Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor

Clean the Color Toner Density (CTD) sensor only when an alert for the CTD sensor is shown on the Printer Status window or operator panel.

1 Turn off the printer and disconnect the power cord.
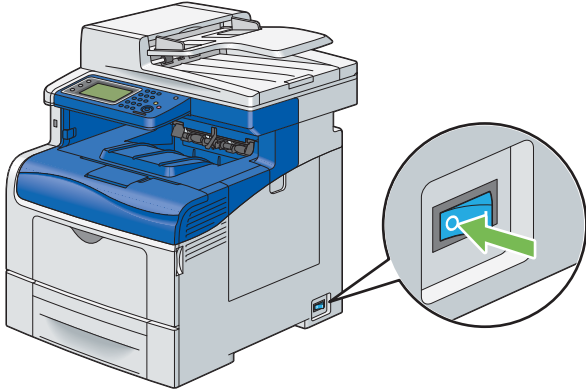
IMPORTANT:
- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

2 Push down the latch to open the rear cover.
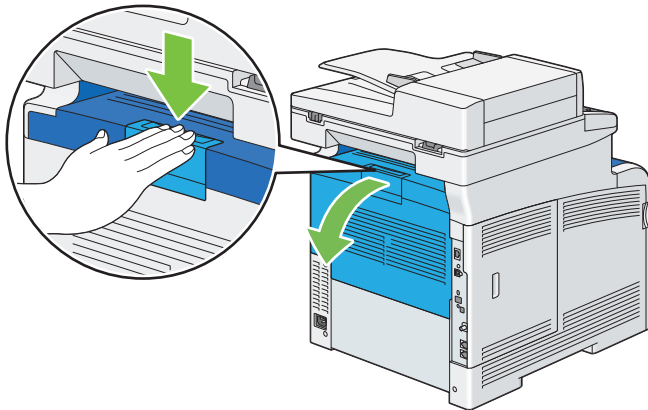
3 Open the side cover.
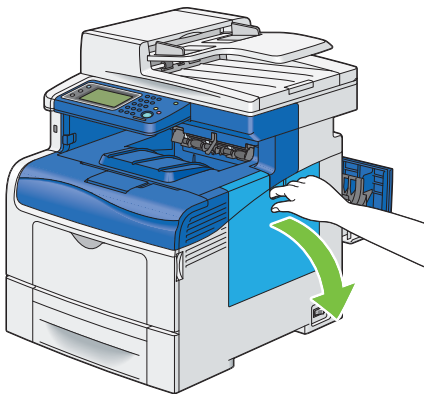
4 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees counterclockwise to unlock the waste toner box.

5 Grasp the handle on the waste toner box and pull it out making sure to hold it upright so that the waste toner does not spill out.
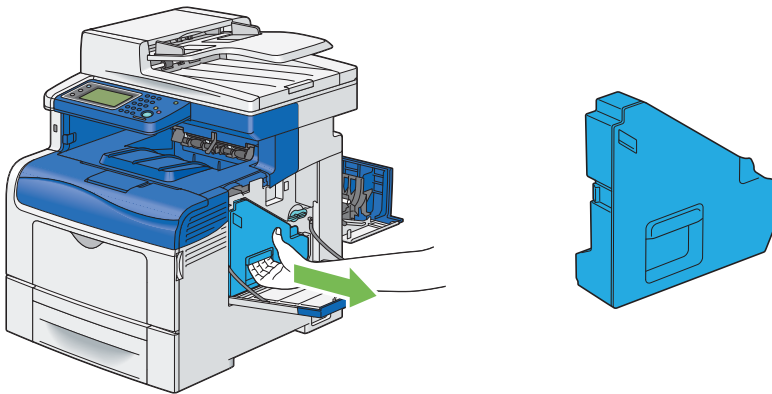
NOTE:
- Take care not to drop the waste toner box while you are removing it.
- After removing the waste toner box, do not touch the parts shown in the illustration. Toner can dirty or stain your hands.
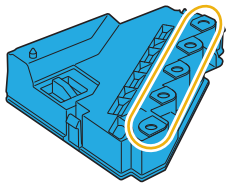
6 Place the removed waste toner box on a level surface.
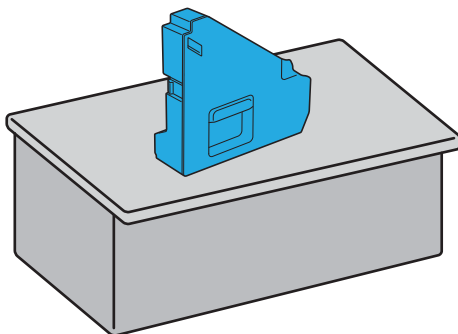
IMPORTANT:
- Never lay the waste toner box on its side as this may cause its malfunction or toner spills.
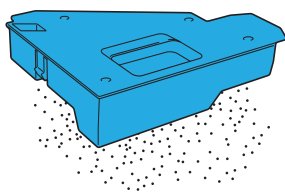
7 Lift the operator panel.
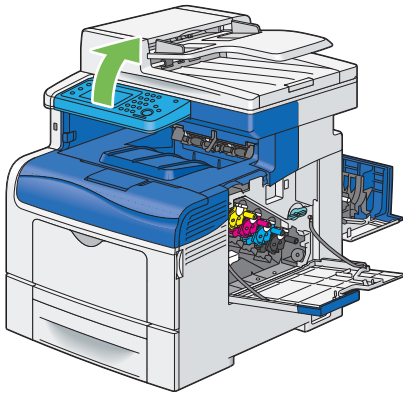
8 Open the top cover.
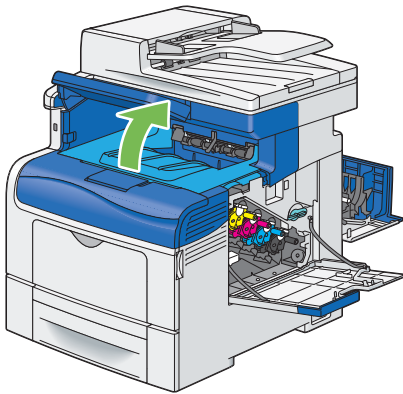
9 Put your fingers through the loops on both sides of the belt unit, and then pull it out.
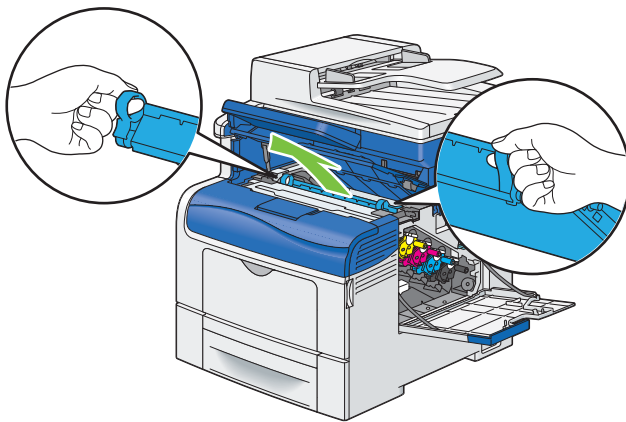
10 At the rear of inside the printer, clean the CTD sensor with a clean dry cotton swab.
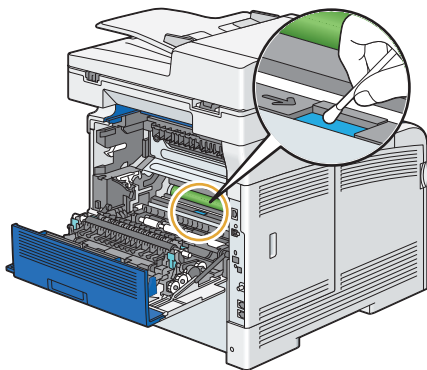
11 Reinsert the belt unit into the printer.
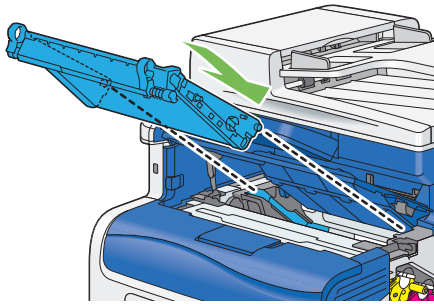
12 Close the top cover.
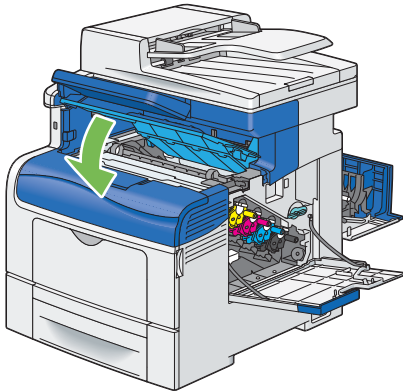
13 Lower the operator panel back in place.
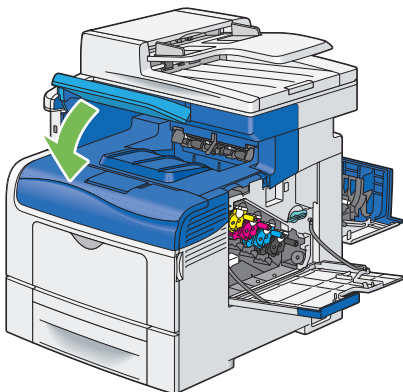
14 Reinsert the removed waste toner box.
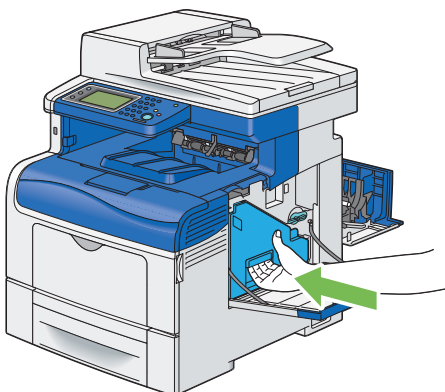
NOTE:
• If the waste toner box does not fit into place properly, make sure that the belt unit is fully inserted.

15 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees clockwise to lock the waste toner box.
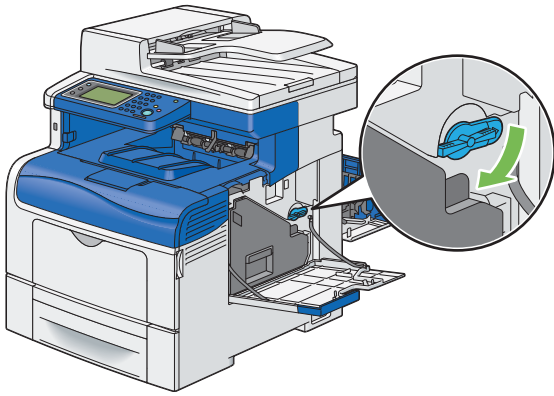
16 Close the side cover.
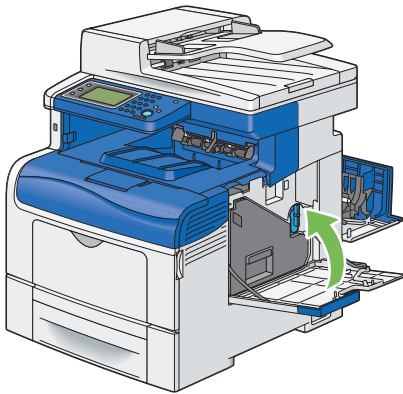
17 Close the rear cover.
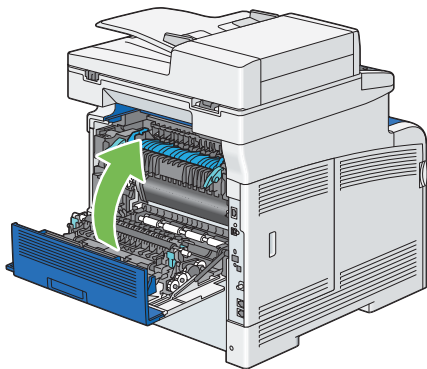
Cleaning the Raster Optical Scanner (ROS) Window

To prevent deterioration of printing quality due to stains inside the printer, clean inside the printer regularly by using the cleaning rod whenever you replace drum cartridges.
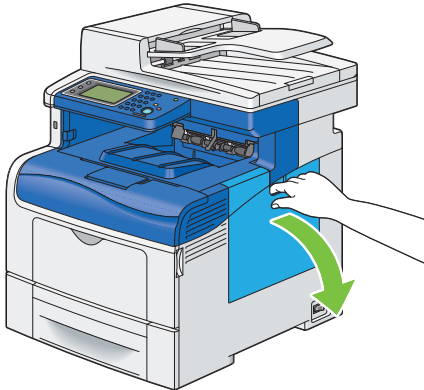
1   Open the side cover.

2   Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees counterclockwise to unlock the waste toner box.

3   Grasp the handle on the waste toner box and pull it out making sure to hold it upright so that the waste toner does not spill out.

NOTE:
- Take care not to drop the waste toner box while you are removing it.
- After removing the waste toner box, do not touch the parts shown in the illustration. Toner can dirty or stain your hands.

4   Place the removed waste toner box on a level surface.

IMPORTANT:

• Never lay the waste toner box on its side as this may cause its malfunction or toner spills.
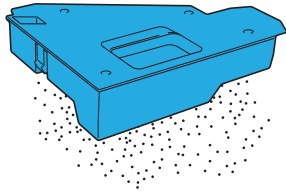
5   Remove the cleaning rod from inside the printer.
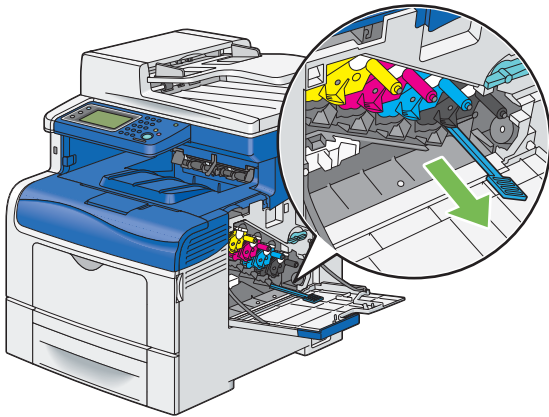
6   Insert the cleaning rod fully into one of the four holes until it clicks into the interior of the printer as illustrated below, and then pull it out.
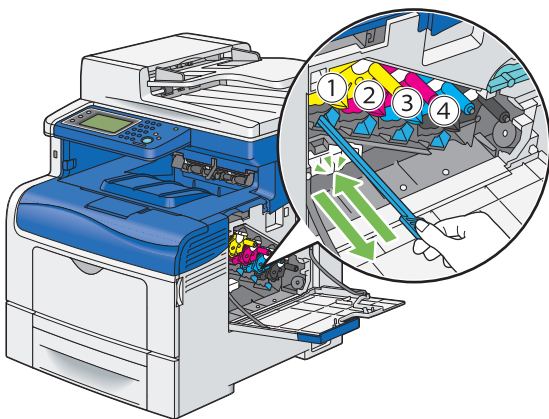
7 Repeat step 6 also on the other three holes. One time insertion is enough for each hole.

8 Return the cleaning rod to its original location.
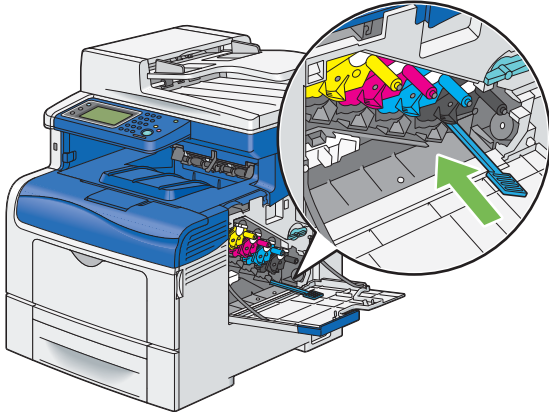
9 Reinsert the removed waste toner box.
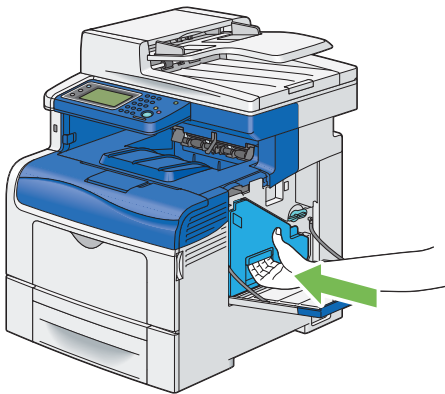
NOTE:

• If the waste toner box does not fit into place properly, make sure that the belt unit is fully inserted.

10 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees clockwise to lock the waste toner box.
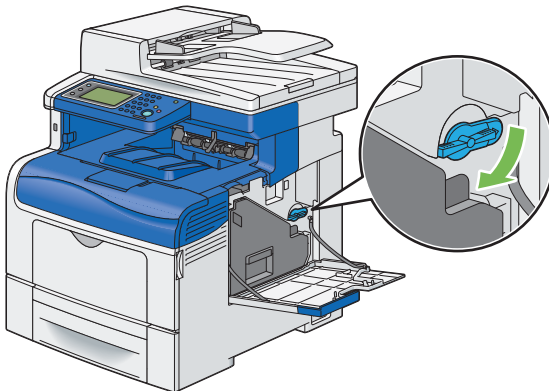
11 Close the side cover.
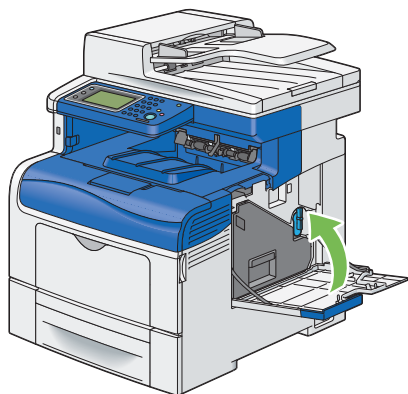
Replacing Consumables

This section describes how to replace consumables.

The following comsumables are supplied as the replacable items.

- Toner cartridge
- Drum cartridge
- Fusing unit
- Belt unit
- 2nd BTR
- Retard Roller
- Waste toner box

⚠ **WARNING:**

- **Use a broom or a wet cloth to wipe off spilled toner. Never use a vacuum cleaner for the spills.**
 **It may catch fire by electric sparks inside the vacuum cleaner and cause explosion. If you spill a large volume of toner, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.**
- **Never throw a toner cartridge into an open flame. Remaining toner in the cartridge may catch fire and cause burn injuries or explosion.**
  If you have a used toner cartridge no longer needed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its disposal.
- **Never throw a waste toner bottle into an open flame. Toner may catch fire and cause burn injuries or explosion.**
  If you have a used waste toner bottle no longer needed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its disposal.

⚠ **CAUTION:**

- **Keep drum cartridges and toner cartridges out of the reach of children. If a child accidentally swallows toner, spit it out, rinse mouth with water, drink water and consult a physician immediately.**
- **When replacing drum cartridges and toner cartridges, be careful not to spill the toner. In case of any toner spills, avoid contact with clothes, skin, eyes and mouth as well as inhalation.**
- **If toner spills onto your skin or clothing, wash it off with soap and water.**
  If you get toner particles in your eyes, wash it out with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes until irritation is gone. Consult a physician if necessary.
  If you inhale toner particles, move to a fresh air location and rinse your mouth with water.
  If you swallow toner, spit it out, rinse your mouth with water, drink plenty of water and consult a physician immediately.

■ Replacing the Toner Cartridges

Fuji Xerox toner cartridges are available only through Fuji Xerox.

It is recommended that you use Fuji Xerox toner cartridges for your printer. Fuji Xerox does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Fuji Xerox.

IMPORTANT:

- Do not shake the used toner cartridge to avoid spilling of the toner.

This section includes:

Overview

The printer has toner cartridges of four colors: black (K), yellow (Y), magenta (M), and cyan (C).

When a toner cartridge reaches its usable life-span, the following messages appear on the LCD panel.

Message	Remaining Page Yield	Printer Status and Action
`Order Toner: XXXX`[1]	1,400 pages (K) 1,000 pages (Y/M/C)[2]	The toner cartridge has become low. Prepare a new one.

`Out of Toner`
`Open the Front Cover.`
`Then, Replace the XXXX`
`Cartridge.`
	-	The toner cartridge has become empty. Replace the old toner cartridge with a new one.

[1]: This warning appears only when Fuji Xerox toner cartridge is used (`Non-Genuine Toner` mode is set to `Off`).

[2]: When a high capacity toner cartridge is set, the remaining page yield is approx. 2,200 pages. The remaining page yield differs depending on printing conditions, contents of the documents, and frequency of turning on/off the printer. For more information, see IMPORTANT of "Consumables" on page 447.

IMPORTANT:

- When placing a used toner cartridge on the floor or on a table, place a few sheets of paper under the toner cartridge to catch any toner that may spill.
- Do not reuse old toner cartridges once you remove them from the printer. Doing so can impair print quality.
- Do not shake or pound the used toner cartridges. The remaining toner may spill.
- We recommend you to use up the toner cartridges within one year after removing them from the packaging.

Removing the Toner Cartridge

1 Grasp the grips on both sides of the front cover, and then pull it down to open.
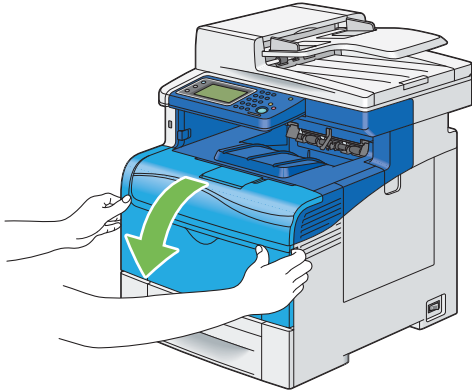
2 Grasp the handle on the toner cartridge that you want to replace as shown in the following illustration, and then pull it out.
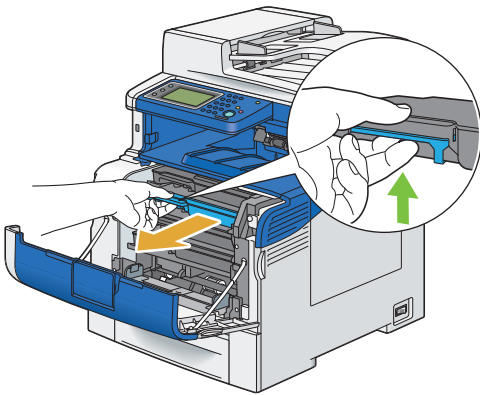
IMPORTANT:
- Do not shake the toner cartridge as it may cause toner spills.

Installing a Toner Cartridge

1 Unpack a new toner cartridge of the desired color.

NOTE:
- Ensure that the color of the new toner cartridge matches that on the handle before replacing it.
- Handle the toner cartridge carefully to avoid spilling of the toner.

2 Shake the new toner cartridge five or six times to distribute the toner evenly.
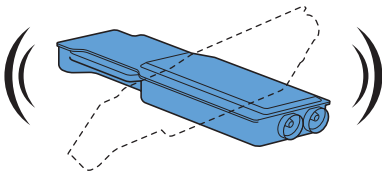
3 Insert the toner cartridge into the associated cartridge slot, and then push until it stops.
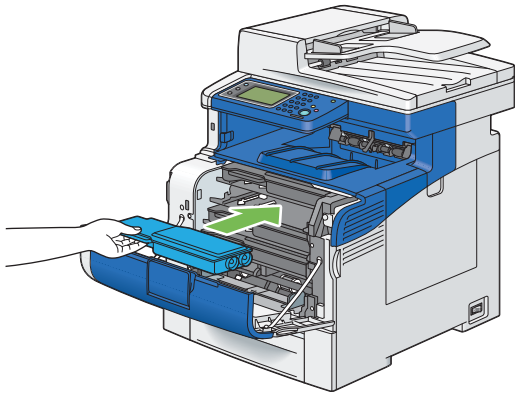
4 Close the front cover.
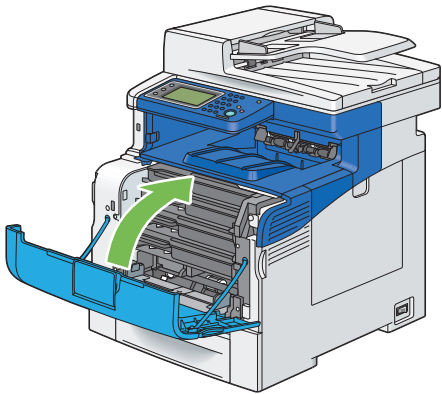
■ Replacing the Drum Cartridges

This section describes how to replace the drum cartridges.

You need to replace all drum cartridges (yellow, magenta, cyan, and black) at a time.

IMPORTANT:

- Protect the drums of the drum cartridges against bright light. If the side cover remains open for more than 3 minutes, print quality may deteriorate.

This section includes:

Overview

The printer has drum cartridges of four colors: black (K), yellow (Y), magenta (M), and cyan (C).

When a drum cartridge reaches its usable life-span, the following messages appear on the LCD panel.

Message	Remaining Page Yield	Printer Status and Action
`Order Drum Cartridge Kit`	12,000 pages	The drum cartridge is near the end of its life. Prepare a new one.

`Drum Cartridge Life Over`
 	
`Open the Right Side Door.`
 	
`Then, replace the Drum Cartridge Kit.`
	-	The drum cartridge has reached the end of its life. Replace the old drum cartridge with a new one.

Removing the Drum Cartridges
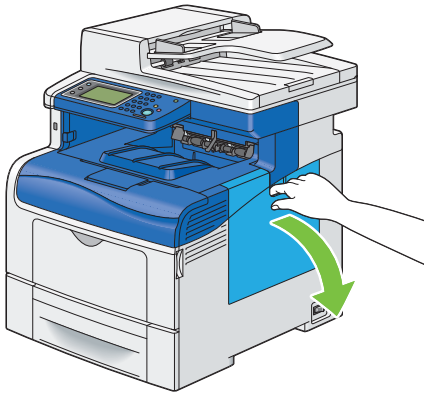
1 Open the side cover.

2 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees counterclockwise to unlock the waste toner box.

3 Grasp the handle on the waste toner box and pull it out making sure to hold it upright so that the waste toner does not spill out.

NOTE:

• Take care not to drop the waste toner box while you are removing it.

• After removing the waste toner box, do not touch the parts shown in the illustration. Toner can dirty or stain your hands.

4 Place the removed waste toner box on a level surface.

IMPORTANT:
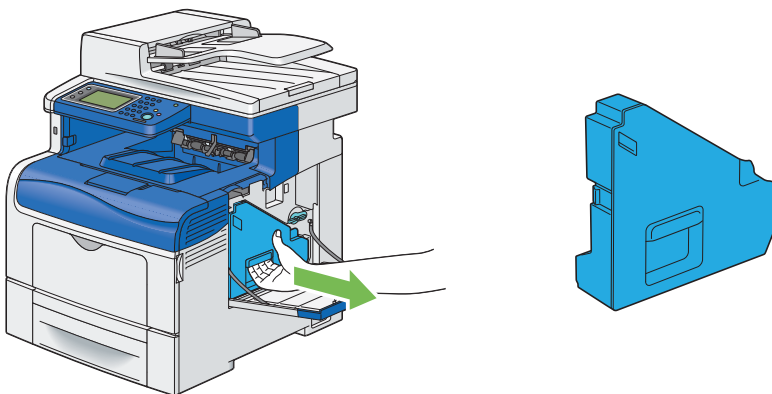
• Never lay the waste toner box on its side as this may cause its malfunction or toner spills.

5 Slightly pressing down the tab on the drum cartridge that you want to replace, pull it out halfway with one hand.
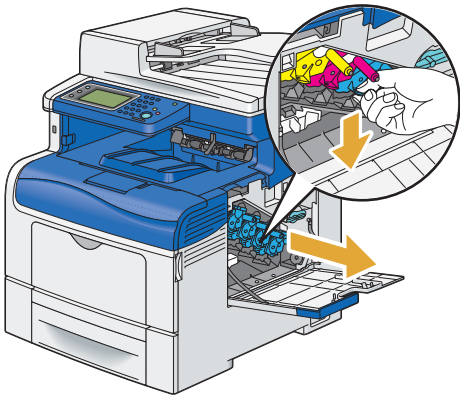
6 Support the drum cartridge with the other hand from underneath, and then pull it out completely.
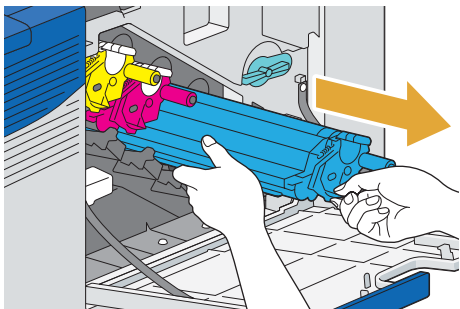
7 Repeat the steps 5 and 6 to remove the other three cartridges.

Installing the Drum Cartridges

1 Unpack a new drum cartridge of the desired color.

2 Remove the orange protective cover from the drum cartridge.
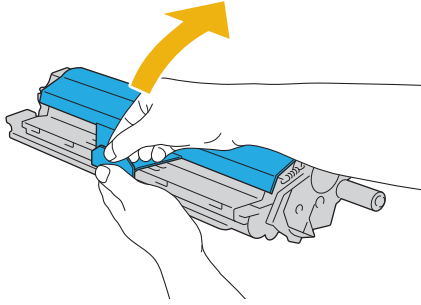
3 Insert the drum cartridge into the associated cartridge slot, and then push until it stops.
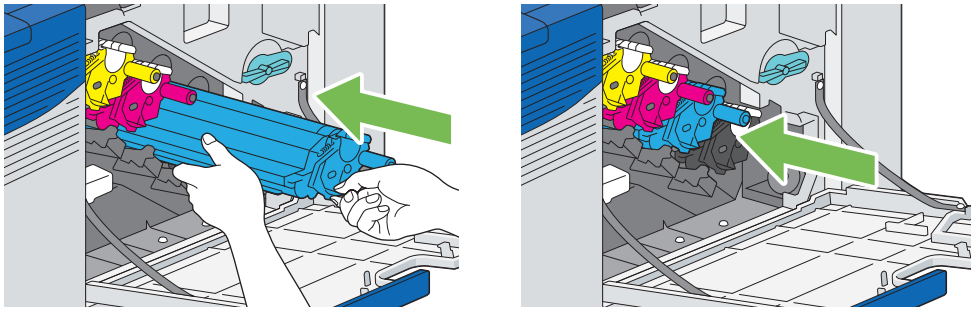
4 Repeat the steps 1 to 3 to insert the other three cartridges.

5 Remove the cleaning rod from inside the printer.
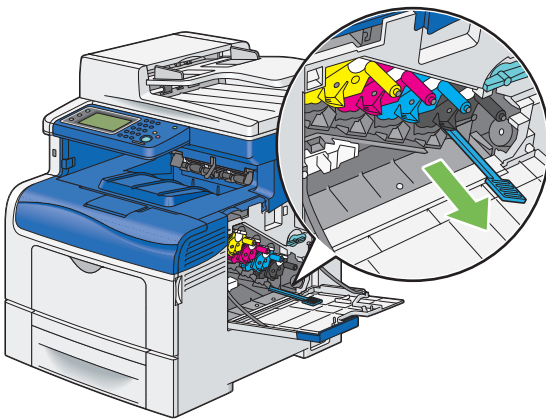
6 Remove the cleaning pad by pressing the white tabs between your thumb and index finger.
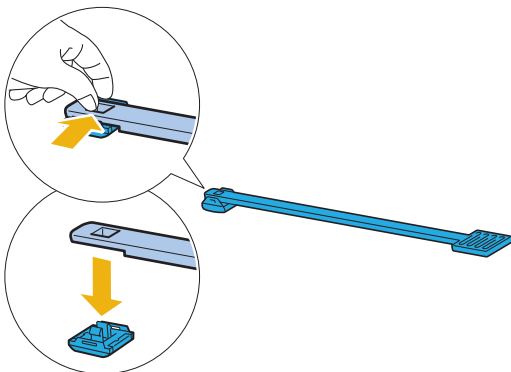
7 Unpack a new cleaning pad.

8 Attach the new cleaning pad to the cleaning rod.
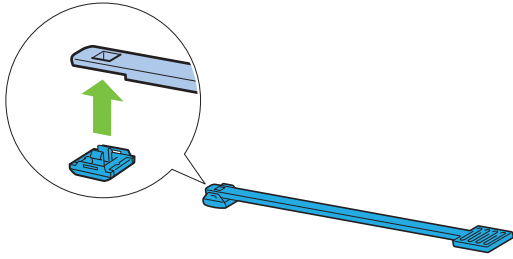
9 Insert the cleaning rod fully into one of the four holes until it clicks into the interior of the printer as illustrated below, and then pull it out.
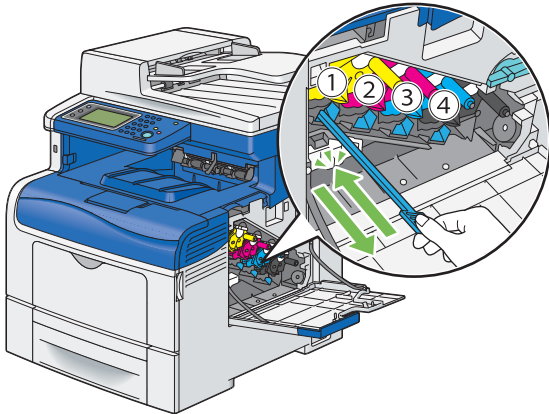
10 Repeat step 9 also on the other three holes. One time insertion is enough for each hole.

11 Return the cleaning rod to its original location.
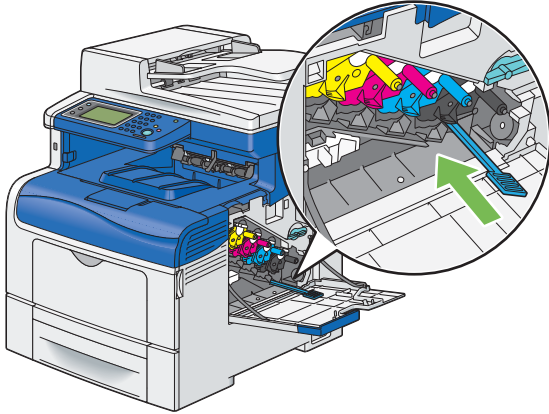
12 Reinsert the removed waste toner box.
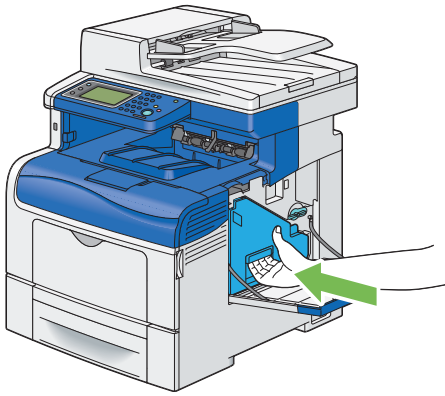
NOTE:
- If the waste toner box does not fit into place properly, make sure that the drum cartridges are fully inserted in the previous steps.

13 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees clockwise to lock the waste toner box.
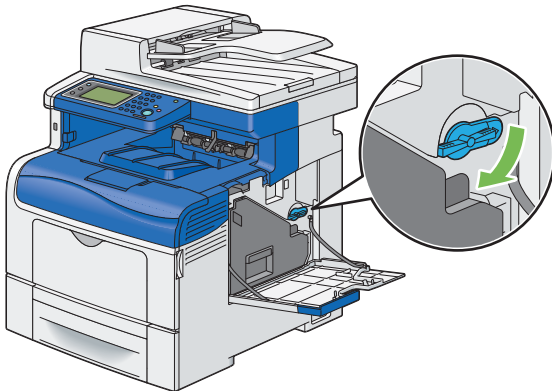
14 Close the side cover.
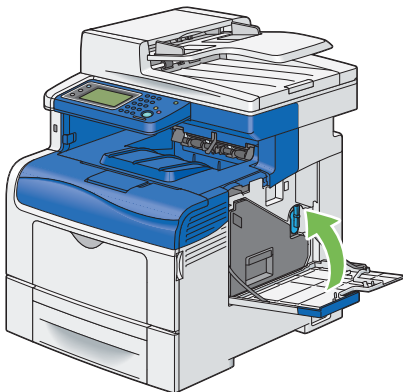
■ Replacing the Fusing Unit

This section describes how to replace the fusing unit.

IMPORTANT:

• Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in "Safety Notes" on page 15.

This section includes:

Overview

When a fusing unit reaches its usable life-span, the following messages appear on the LCD panel.

Message	Remaining Page Yield	Printer Status and Action
`Replace Fusing Unit`	5,000 pages	The fusing unit is near the end of its life. Prepare a new one.

`Fusing Unit Life Over 010-351`
 	
 `Turn off the printer and replace the Fusing Unit.`
	-	The fusing unit has reached the end of its life. Replace the old fusing unit with a new one.

Removing the Fusing Unit

1 Turn off the printer, and wait for 30 minutes.

IMPORTANT:
- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

2 Push down the latch to open the rear cover.
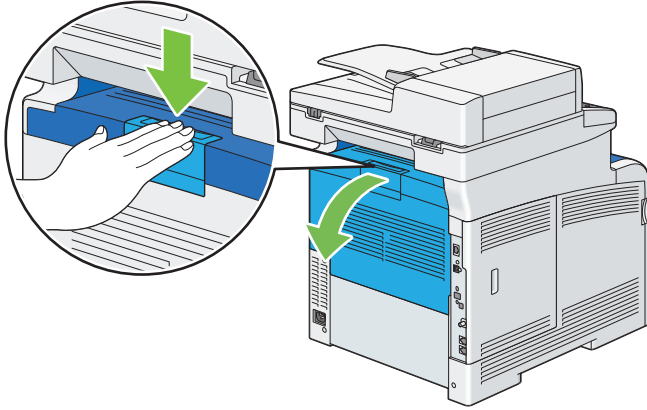
3 Grasp the grips on both sides of the fusing unit with the lever under the left side grip squeezed, and then pull out the unit.
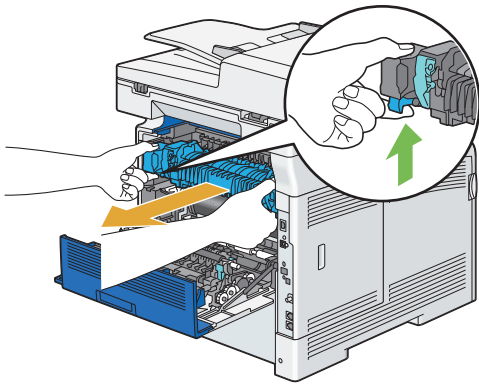
Installing a Fusing Unit

1 Unpack a new fusing unit.

2 Remove the packing material from the fusing unit.

3 Make sure that the two tabs of the fusing unit align with the grooves on the printer, and then insert it into the printer until it clicks.

> **NOTE:**
> • Hold both sides of the fusing unit with your hands.
> • Make sure that the fusing unit is firmly set in the slots and cannot be moved easily.
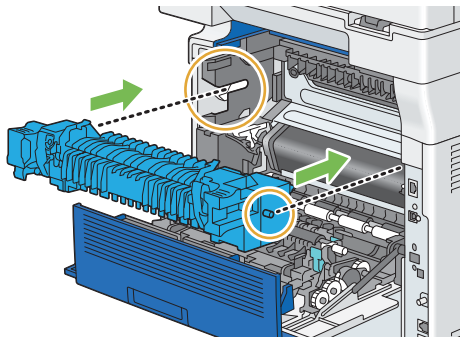
4 Close the rear cover.
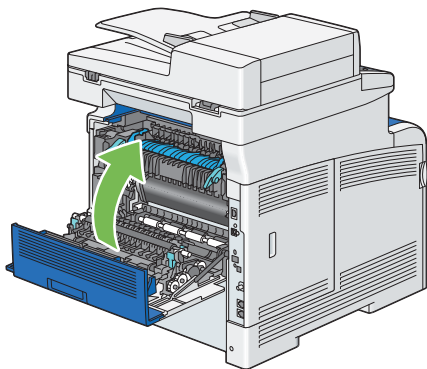
5 Reconnect the power cord to the power connector and turn on the printer.

■ Replacing the Belt Unit, the 2nd BTR, and the Retard Roller

You need to replace three parts (belt unit, 2nd BTR, and retard roller) at a time. Both the 2nd BTR and the retard roller for replacement come with a new belt unit.

Fuji Xerox belt unit, 2nd BTR, and retard roller are available only through Fuji Xerox. To order by phone, see also "Online Services" on page 475.

It is recommended that you use Fuji Xerox 2nd BTR, belt unit, and retard roller for your printer. Fuji Xerox does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Fuji Xerox.

IMPORTANT:

- Ensure nothing touches or scratches the surface (black-colored film) of the belt unit. Scratches, dirt, or oil from your hands on the film of the belt unit may reduce print quality.

This section includes:

Overview

When a belt unit reaches its usable life-span, the following messages appear on the LCD panel.

Message	Remaining Page Yield	Printer Status and Action
`Replace Transfer Unit Soon.`	5,000 pages	The belt unit has become low. Prepare a new one.
`Transfer Unit Life Over`	-	The belt unit has become empty. Replace the old belt unit with a new one.

`Open all covers.`
`Then, replace the Transfer Unit.`
`Pressing [OK] will reset the counter due to the use of a new Transfer Unit.`
 	
`When the replacement is done, press [OK].`
		Select `OK` to reset the belt unit counter.

Removing the Belt Unit

1 Push down the latch to open the rear cover.
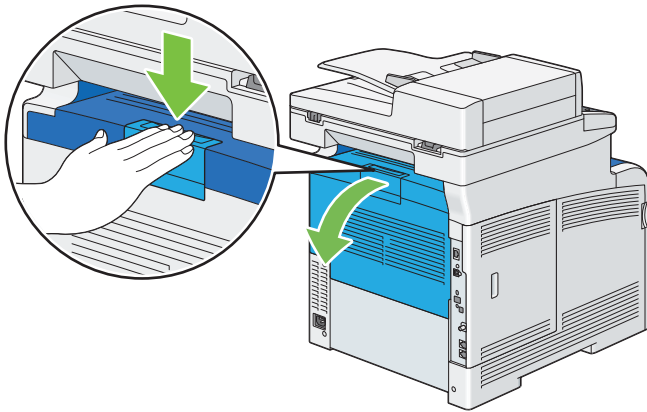
2 Open the side cover.
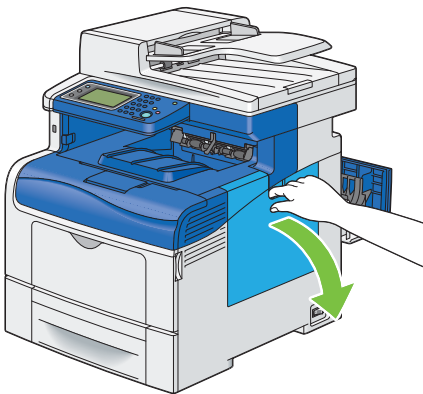
3 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees counterclockwise to unlock the waste toner box.
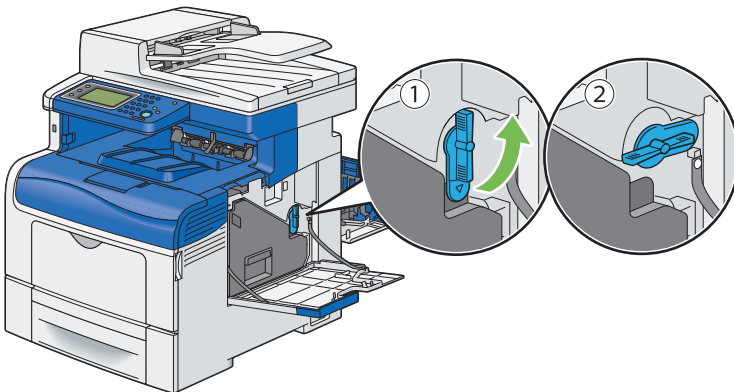
4 Grasp the handle on the waste toner box and pull it out making sure to hold it upright so that the waste toner does not spill out.
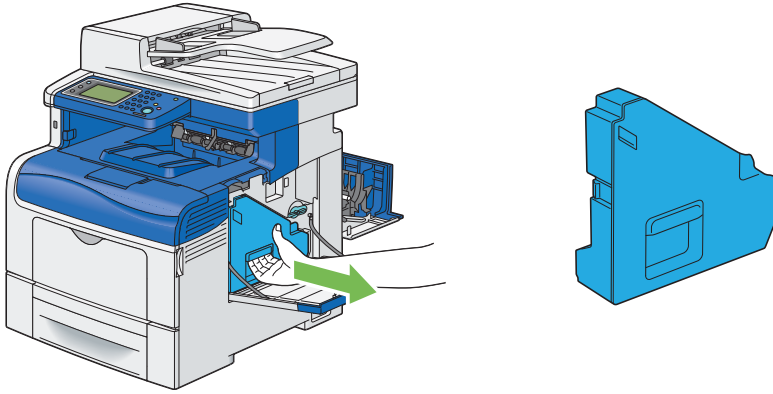
NOTE:
- Take care not to drop the waste toner box while you are removing it.
- After removing the waste toner box, do not touch the parts shown in the illustration. Toner can dirty or stain your hands.
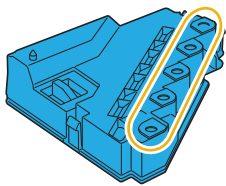
5 Place the removed waste toner box on a level surface.
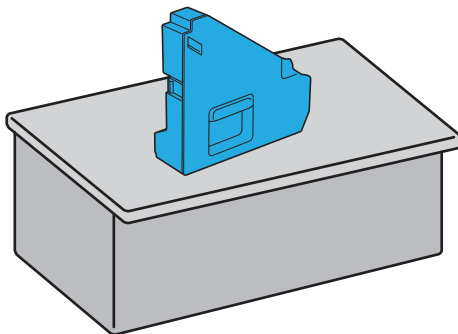
IMPORTANT:
- Never lay the waste toner box on its side as this may cause its malfunction or toner spills.
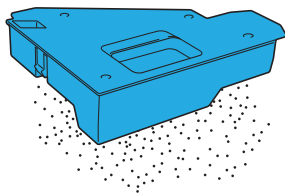
6 Lift the operator panel.
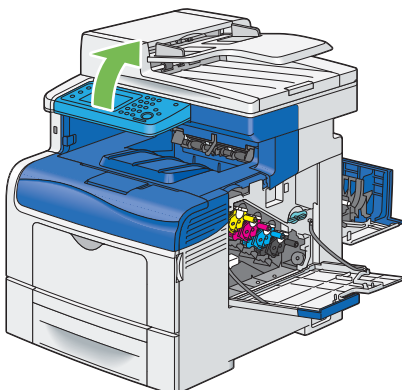
7   Open the top cover.
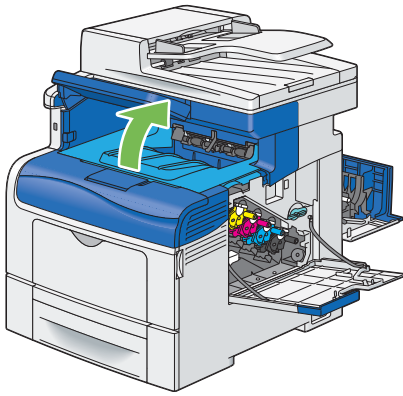
8   Put your fingers through the loops on both sides of the belt unit, and then pull it out.
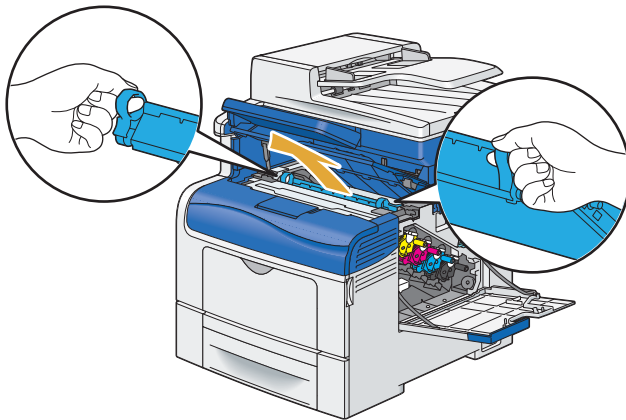
> **IMPORTANT:**
> • If you cannot pull out the unit from the printer, make sure that all of the above procedures are performed properly.

9   At the rear of inside the printer, clean the CTD sensor with a clean dry cotton swab.
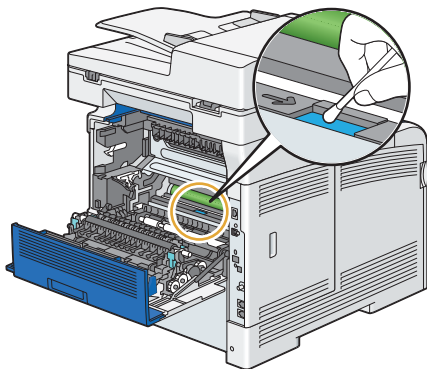
Installing a Belt Unit

1 Unpack a new belt unit.

2 Remove the two orange packing materials first, and then the protective sheet from the belt unit.

3 Make sure that the arrow marks on the belt unit, and the printer face each other, and then insert the unit into the printer until it clicks.
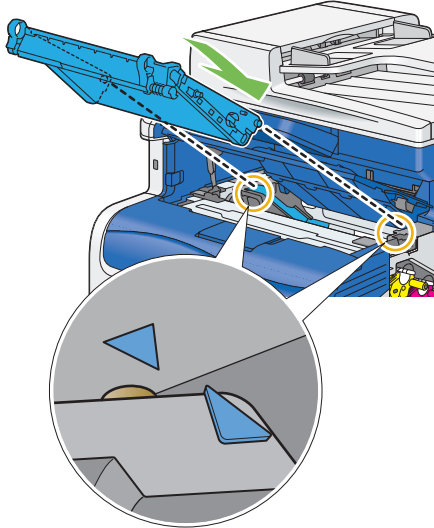
4 Close the top cover.
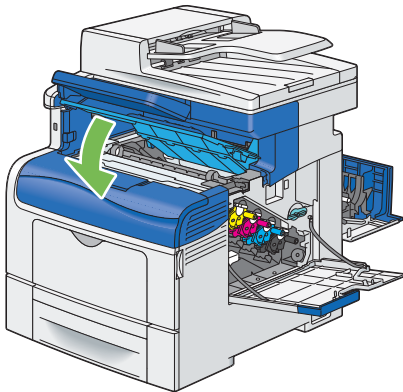
5 Lower the operator panel back in place.
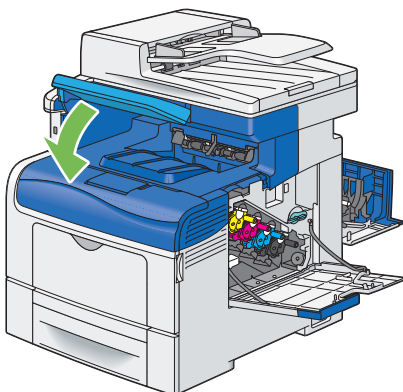
6 Reinsert the removed waste toner box.
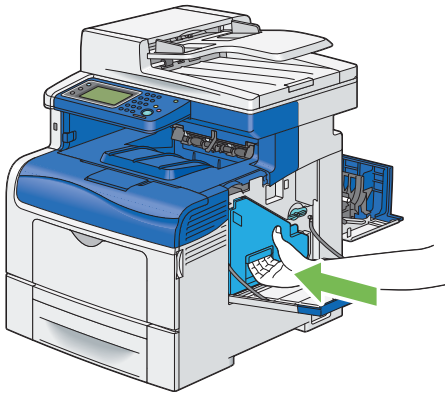
NOTE:
• If the waste toner box does not fit into place properly, make sure that the belt unit is fully inserted.

7 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees clockwise to lock the waste toner box.
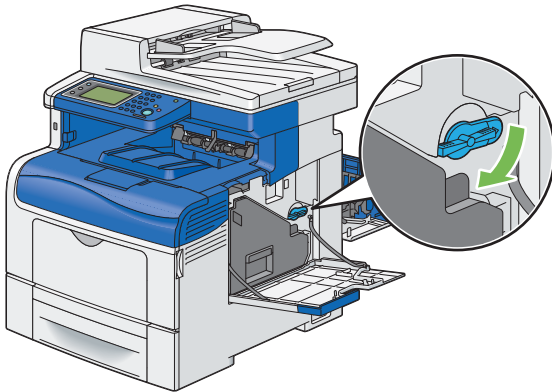
8 Close the side cover.
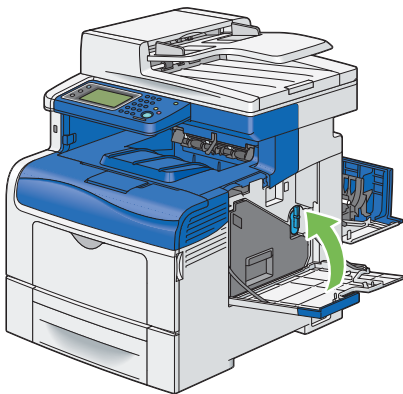
NOTE:
• After replacing the belt unit, be sure to initialize its life counter. For details, see "Reset Transfer Unit" on page 315.

Removing the 2nd BTR

1 Pinching the tabs on both sides of the 2nd BTR, lift it out of the printer.
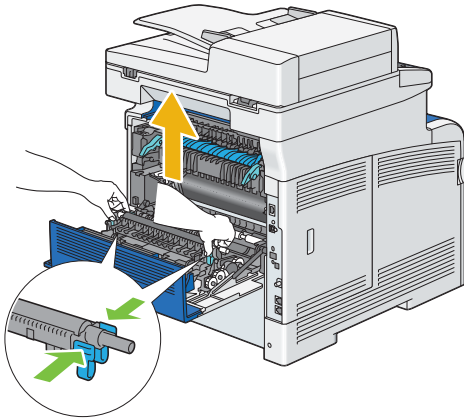
Installing a 2nd BTR

1 Unpack a new 2nd BTR.

2 Hold the 2nd BTR by its both ends.
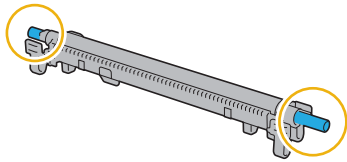
3 Make sure that the arrow marks on the 2nd BTR and the printer face each other, and then press down the 2nd BTR until it clicks.
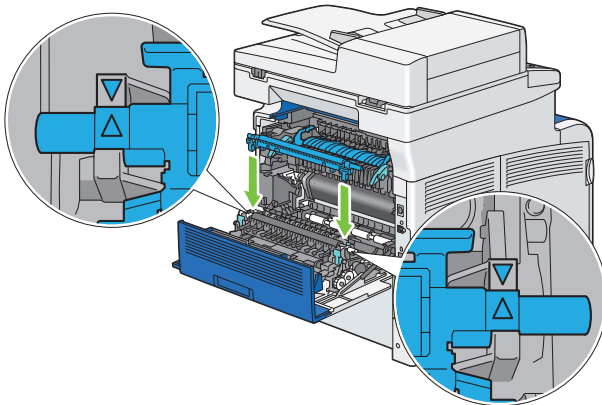
4 Close the rear cover.
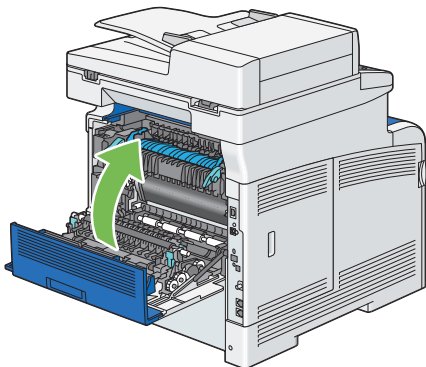
Removing the Retard Roller Unit in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray

1 Hold the standard 550 sheet tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.
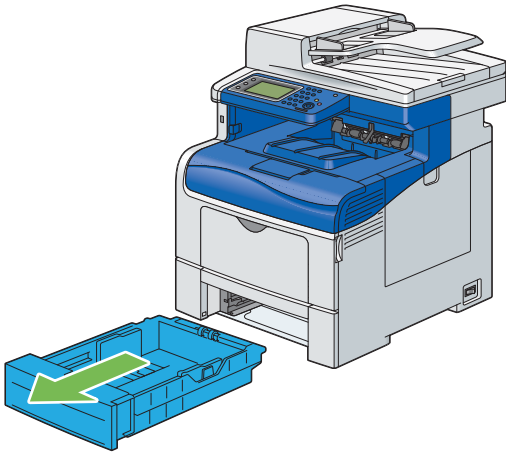
NOTE:
- Ensure that you remove all the paper from the standard 550 sheet tray before removing the retard roller unit.

2 Slightly pressing down the lock lever on the standard 550 sheet tray to the right with one hand, raise the retard roller with the other hand.
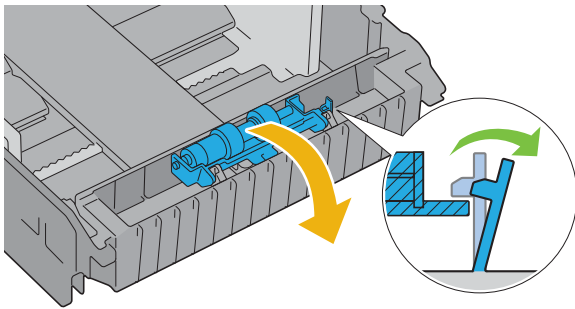
3 Slide the retard roller to the left to remove it from the standard 550 sheet tray.
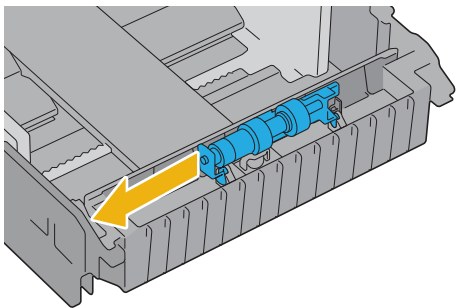
Installing a Retard Roller in the Standard 550 Sheet Tray

1 Slide the two axles of the retard roller into the holes on the standard 550 sheet tray.
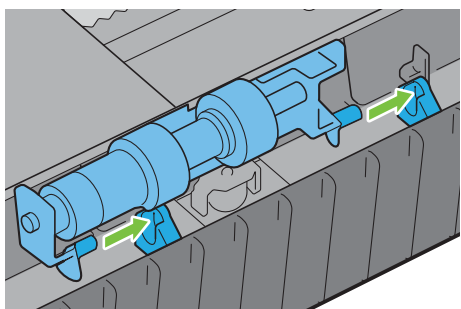
2 Press down the retard roller until it snaps.
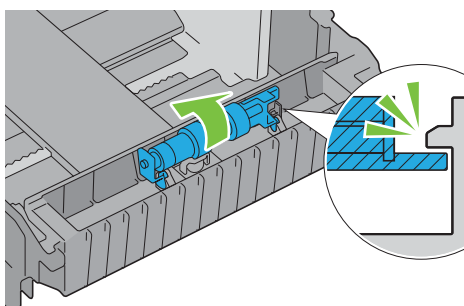
3 Load paper in the standard 550 sheet tray, and then insert the tray into the printer and push until it stops.
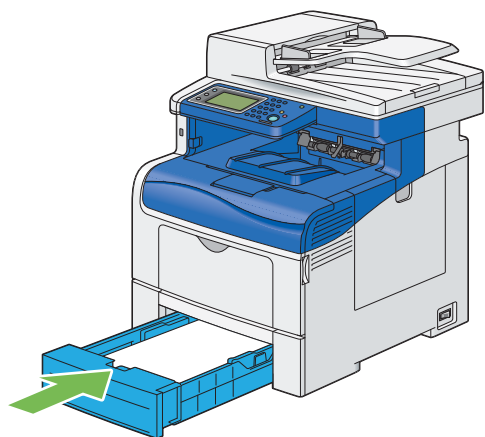
IMPORTANT:
- Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or the inside of the printer.

■ Replacing the Waste Toner Box

IMPORTANT:

• Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in "Safety Notes" on page 15.

Overview

When a waste toner box reaches its usable life-span, the following messages appear on the LCD panel.

Message	Remaining Page Yield	Printer Status and Action
Order Waste Toner Box	3,000 pages	The waste toner box has become low. Prepare a new one.
Waste Toner Box Life Over Open the Right Side Door. Then, replace the Waste Toner Box.	-	The waste toner box has become empty. Replace the old waste toner box with a new one.

Removing the Waste Toner Box

1 Open the side cover.
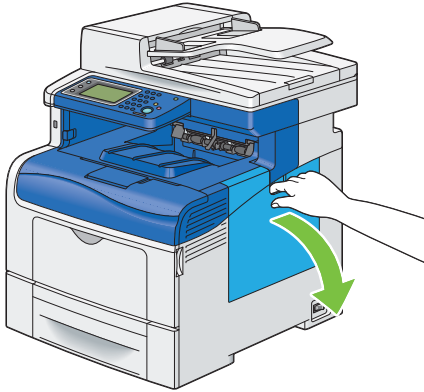
2 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees counterclockwise to unlock the waste toner box.
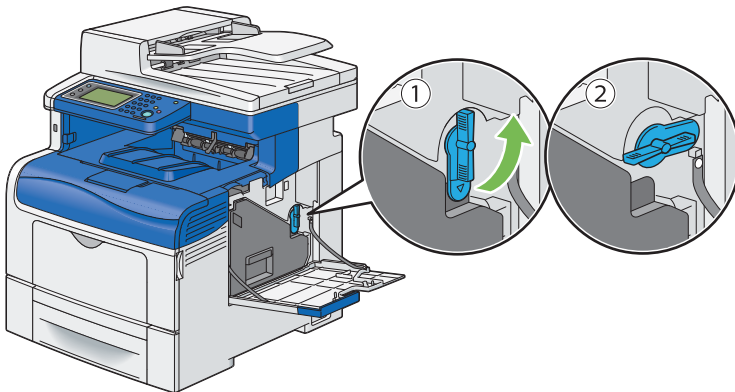
3 Grasp the handle on the waste toner box and pull it out making sure to hold it upright so that the waste toner does not spill out.
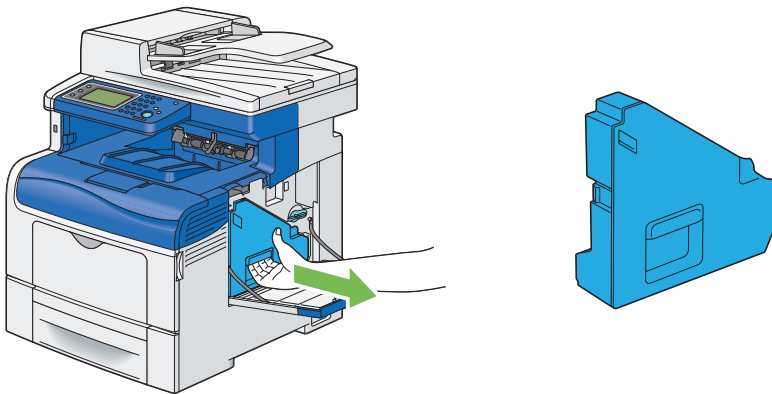
NOTE:

- Take care not to drop the waste toner box while you are removing it.
- After removing the waste toner box, do not touch the parts shown in the illustration. Toner can dirty or stain your hands.
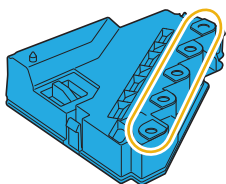
4 Insert the used waste toner box into the plastic bag that came with the new waste toner box and seal the bag.

Installing a Waste Toner Box

1 Unpack a new waste toner box.

2 Insert the waste toner box.
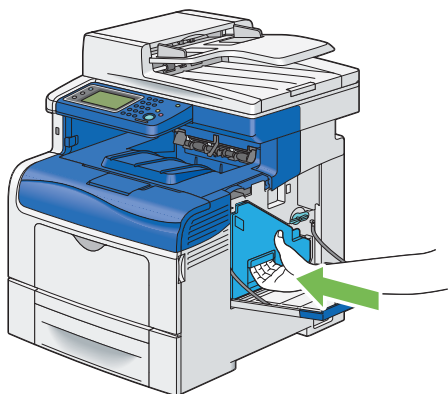
NOTE:
- If the waste toner box does not fit into place properly, make sure that the belt unit is fully inserted.

3 Turn the waste toner box lock lever 90-degrees clockwise to lock the waste toner box.
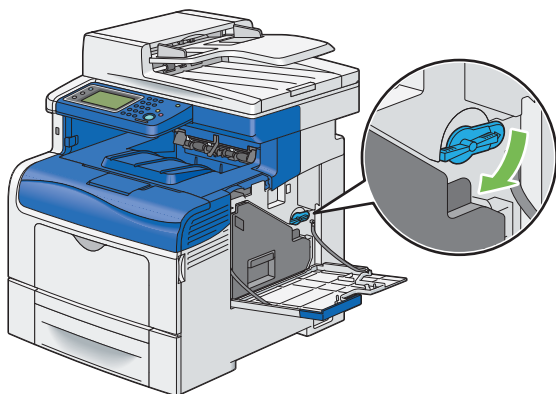
4 Close the side cover.
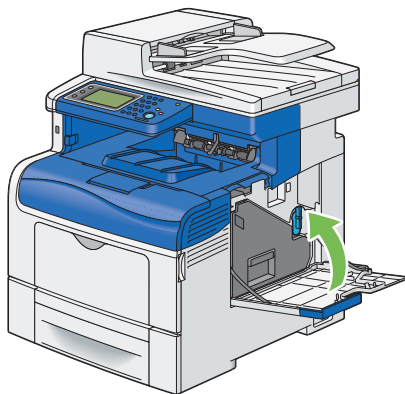
Ordering Supplies

This section includes:

Certain consumables and routine maintenance items need to be ordered occasionally. Each supply includes installation instructions on the box.

■ Consumables

IMPORTANT:

- Use of consumables/periodical replacement parts not recommended by Fuji Xerox can impair machine quality and performance. Use only consumables/periodical replacement parts recommended by Fuji Xerox.

Product Name	Product Code	Printable number of pages
Toner Cartridge Std (K)	CT202018	7,000 pages
Toner Cartridge Std (C)	CT202019	5,000 pages
Toner Cartridge Std (M)	CT202020	5,000 pages
Toner Cartridge Std (Y)	CT202021	5,000 pages
Toner Cartridge Hi (K)	CT202033	11,000 pages
Toner Cartridge Hi (C)	CT202034	11,000 pages
Toner Cartridge Hi (M)	CT202035	11,000 pages
Toner Cartridge Hi (Y)	CT202036	11,000 pages
Drum Cartridge kit	CT350983	60,000 pages
Fusing Unit (220V)	EL500270	100,000 pages
Fusing Unit (110V)	EL500269	100,000 pages
100K Maintenance Kit	EL500267	100,000 pages
Waste Toner Cartridge	EL500268	30,000 pages

IMPORTANT:

- Toner

  Reference values are measured based on ISO/IEC19798. Actual replacement cycles depend on printing conditions, output contents, paper size and type, and environment.

- Drum

  The number of printed pages is a reference value based on A4-size one-sided printing of an average of three continuous sheets per print job. The actual number of printable pages depends on the conditions defined above, in addition to the number of continuous prints, paper size, paper type, paper feed direction, paper tray and output tray settings, monochrome/color auto selection[*], other mode selections, the initialization operation performed when the printer power is turned on or off, adjustments to maintain print quality, and other operating environment conditions. Certain conditions may result in actual values that are half those shown in the table. The values presented here are for reference only.

  * When [Color] is selected on the printer, certain data may use the color drum even when printing a monochrome page.

- The life of the fusing unit is affected greatly by the length of time the printer is turned on. If you set a longer time until entering the energy saver mode, the power on time of the printer is increased, and the fusing unit may need to be replaced sooner. For details, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative.

■ When to Order Supplies

The LCD panel displays a warning when the supply nears its replacement time. Verify that you have replacements on hand. It is important to order these supplies when the messages first appear to avoid interruptions to your printing. The LCD panel displays an error message when the supply must be replaced.

For details on error message about replacing the toner cartridge, drum cartridge, fusing unit, belt unit, or waste toner box, see "Replacing Consumables" on page 422.

To order supplies, contact the Fuji Xerox local representative office or an authorised dealer.

IMPORTANT:
- This printer is designed to provide the most stable performance and print quality when used with the recommended consumables. Not using consumables recommended for this machine degrades the performance and printing quality of the printer. You could also incur charges if the machine breaks down. To receive customer support and achieve the optimum performance of the printer, be sure to use recommended consumables.

■ Recycling Supplies

- For environmental protection and efficient use of resources, Fuji Xerox reuses returned toner cartridges and drums (photoreceptors) to make recycle parts, recycle materials or energy recovery.

- Proper disposal is required for toner cartridges and drums (photoreceptors) no longer needed. Do not open toner cartridges and drums (photoreceptors). Return them to your local Fuji Xerox representative.

Storing Print Media

To avoid potential paper feeding problems and uneven print quality, there are several things you can do:

- To achieve the best possible print quality, store print media in an environment where the temperature is approximately 70 °F/21 °C and the relative humidity is 40%.
- Store cartons of print media on a pallet or shelf, rather than directly on the floor.
- If you store individual packages of print media out of the original carton, ensure that they rest on a flat surface so the edges do not buckle or curl.
- Do not place anything on top of the print media packages.

Storing Consumables

Store consumables in their original packaging until you need to use them. Do not store consumables in:

- Temperatures greater than 104 °F/40 °C.
- An environment with extreme changes in humidity or temperature.
- Direct sunlight.
- Dusty places.
- A car for a long period of time.
- An environment where corrosive gases are present.
- A humid environment.

Managing the Printer

This section includes:

- "Checking or Managing the Printer with CentreWare Internet Services" on page 451
- "Checking Printer Status with SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)" on page 451
- "Checking Printer Status Through E-mail" on page 452

■ Checking or Managing the Printer with CentreWare Internet Services

When the printer is installed in a TCP/IP environment, you can use CentreWare Internet Services to check the printer status, the remaining volume of consumables, and the paper loaded in this printer. You can also use CentreWare Internet Services to configure printer settings.

NOTE:

- When using the printer as a local printer, you cannot use CentreWare Internet Services. For details about checking the status of a local printer, refer to "Checking Printer Status with SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)" on page 451.

Starting CentreWare Internet Services

Use the following procedure to start CentreWare Internet Services.

1 Launch your web browser.

2 Enter the IP address in the browser's address field, and then press the **Enter** key.

The CentreWare Internet Services screen appears.

• Using Online Help

For details regarding the items that can be set in each CentreWare Internet Services screen, click the **Help** button to display the online Help.

■ Checking Printer Status with SimpleMonitor (Windows Only)

SimpleMonitor is a tool that is installed with your Fuji Xerox print driver. It automatically checks the printer status when you send a print job. SimpleMonitor can also check the status of the tray and remaining amount of consumables, such as the toner cartridge.

Starting SimpleMonitor

Double-click the SimpleMonitor icon on the taskbar or right-click the icon and select **Select Printer**.

If the SimpleMonitor icon is not displayed on the taskbar, open SimpleMonitor from the **Start** menu:

The following procedure uses Microsoft® Windows® 7 as an example.

1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Fuji Xerox** → **SimpleMonitor for Asia-Pacific** → **Activate SimpleMonitor**.

The **Select Printer** window appears.

2 Click the name of the desired printer from the list.

3 The **Status Monitor** window appears.

For details about the functions of SimpleMonitor, refer to the online Help.

■ Checking Printer Status Through E-mail

When connected in a network environment where sending and receiving of e-mail is possible, the printer can send an e-mail report to specified e-mail addresses containing the following information:

- The network settings and the printer status
- The error status which has occurred on the printer

Setting the E-mail Environment

Activate CentreWare Internet Services. On the **Properties** tab, configure the following settings according to your e-mail environment. After configuring the settings on each screen, always click **Apply** and then turn off/on the printer to reboot. For details about each item, refer to the online help for CentreWare Internet Services.

Item	Item to be configured	Description
StatusMessenger	Recipient's E-mail Address	Set the e-mail address to which notices about changes in printer status or errors are sent.
	Notification Items	Set the contents of the notices to send in the e-mail.
Port Status	StatusMessenger	Select **Enabled**.
Protocol Settings > E-mail	Machine's E-mail Address, SMTP Server Address, SMTP Server Port Number, E-mail Send Authentication, Login Name, Password, SMTP Server Connection Status, POP3 Server Address, POP3 Server Port Number, Login Name, Password, POP3 Server Check Interval, APOP Settings, POP3 Server Connection Status	Select appropriate settings for sending and receiving e-mail.
	Permitted E-mail Address	When setting the permission for checking information and changing the settings for an e-mail address, enter the e-mail address that is permitted to receive the e-mail. If no address is entered here, the printer receives e-mails from all users.
	StatusMessenger Password	When setting the password for access to the printer (both read only and read/write), enter the password in the **Password** field.

Checking the Printer Status with E-mail

This section describes cautions when sending e-mail to the printer to check the printer status.

- You can specify any title for the e-mail when checking the printer status or changing the printer settings.
- Use the commands described in the next section to create the text of the e-mail.

• Commands That Can Be Used in E-mail Text

Use each command according to the following rules:

- Prefix all commands with "#", and specify the #Password command at the top of the e-mail.
- Command lines without "#" are ignored.
- Write one command on each line and separate each command and parameter with a space or a tab.

When the same command is written two or more times in one e-mail, the second and subsequent commands are ignored.

Command	Parameter	Description
#Password	Password	Use this command at the top of the e-mail when a password for read only is set. You can omit this command when the password is not set.
#NetworkInfo		Set this when you want to check information on the network settings list.
#Status		Set this when you want to check the printer status.

• Example of Commands

- When the read only password is "ronly", and to check the printer status:

#Password ronly

#Status

#NetworkInfo

Conserving Supplies

You can change several settings in your print driver to conserve toner cartridge and paper.

The following descriptions use the PCL 6 driver as an example.

Supply	Setting	Function
Toner cartridge	**Toner Saver** in the **Image Options** tab	This check box allows the users to select a print mode that uses less toner. The image quality will be lower when this feature is used.
Print media	**Pages Per Sheet (N-Up)** in the **Layout/Watermark** tab	The printer prints two or more pages on one side of a sheet. Values for **Pages Per Sheet (N-Up)** are **1-Up**, **2-Up**, **4-Up**, **8-Up**, **16-Up**, **32-Up**. Combined with the duplex setting, **Pages Per Sheet (N-Up)** allows you to print up to 64 pages on one sheet of paper. (32 images on the front and 32 on the back)

Checking Page Counts

The total number of printed pages can be checked on the operator panel. Four meters are available: `Meter1`, `Meter2`, `Meter3`, and `Meter4`.

The `Billing Meters` counts the number of pages printed properly. Single side color print (including Pages Per Sheet (N-Up)) is counted as one job, and 2-sided print (including Pages Per Sheet (N-Up)) is counted as two. During 2-sided printing, if an error occurs after one side is printed properly, it is counted as one.

When printing color data, which has been converted by using ICC profile on an application, with the Color (Auto) setting, the data is printed by color even if it seems to be black and white data on the monitor. In that case, `Meter1` and `Meter4` are increased.

When doing 2-sided printing, a blank page may be inserted automatically depending on the settings of the application. In this case, the blank page is counted as one page.

For information about the individual meter, see "Billing Meters" on page 282.

Use the following procedure to check a meter:

1 Press the ⒤ (**System**) button.

2 Select `Billing Meters`.

3 Check the number of pages.

Moving the Printer

This section describes how to move the printer.

NOTE:

- If the optional 550 sheet feeder has been installed, uninstall the optional 550 sheet feeder before moving the printer. If the optional 550 sheet feeder is not fixed securely to the printer, it may fall to the ground and cause injuries. For details on how to uninstall the optional 550 sheet feeder, see "Removing the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder (without the Cabinet)" on page 465.

1 Turn off the printer and disconnect the power cord, interface cable, and any other cables.

IMPORTANT:

- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

2 Remove any paper in the document output tray and slide the document stopper inside the DADF.
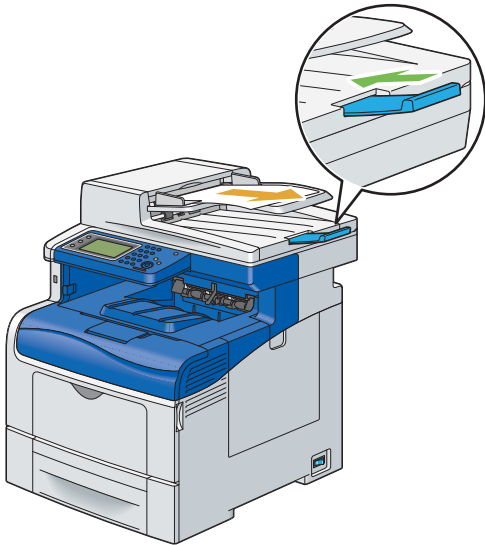
3 Remove any paper in the output tray and return the output tray extension.
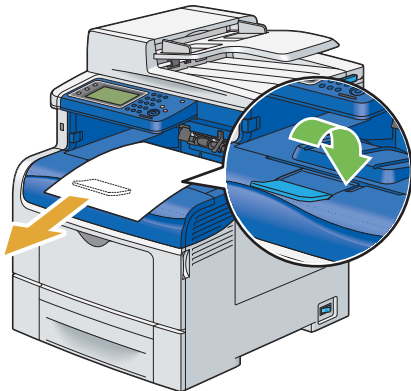
4 Lift the printer and move it gently.

IMPORTANT:

- When lifting the machine, make sure to follow the precautions stated in "Machine Installation" on page 18.

NOTE:

- If you move the printer over a long distance, remove the toner cartridges from the printer to prevent toner from spilling, and pack the printer inside a box.
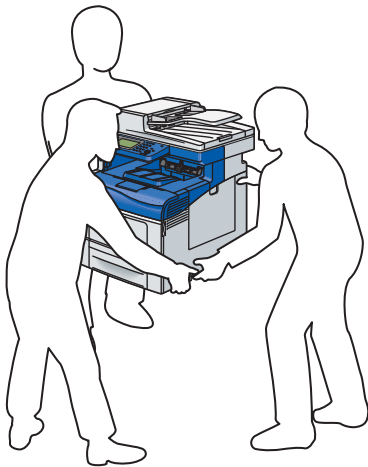
5 Adjust the color registration before using your printer.

See also:

- "Adjusting Color Registration" on page 388

Removing Options

If the printer location needs to be changed or the printer and print media handling options need to be shipped to a new location, all print media handling options must be removed from the printer. For shipping, pack the printer and print media handling options securely to avoid damage.

This section includes:

■ Removing the Optional 512MB Memory

IMPORTANT:
- When you remove the optional 512MB memory, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power code, and disconnect all cables from the rear of the printer before starting these tasks.

1 Turn off the printer.

IMPORTANT:
- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

2 Turn the screw on the control board cover counterclockwise.

NOTE:
- Loosen the screw. You do not need to remove the screw.

3 Slide the control board cover towards the rear of the printer.
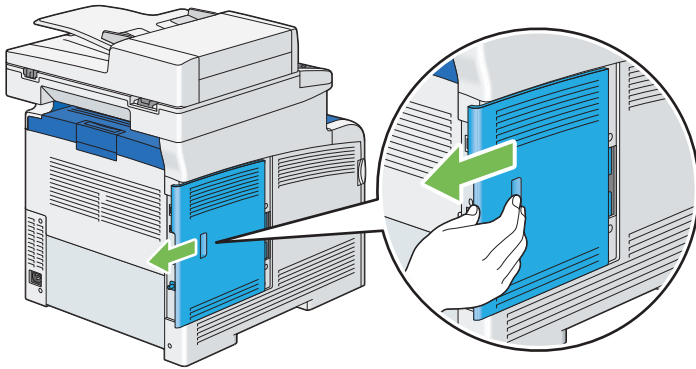
4 Open the control board cover completely.
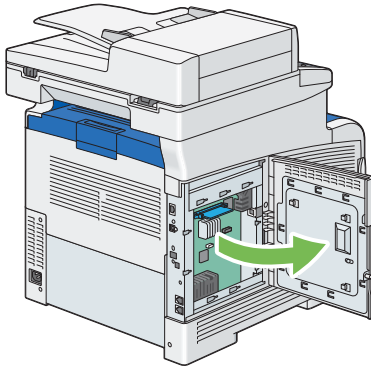
5 Push the clips on both sides of the slot outward to raise the optional 512MB memory up.
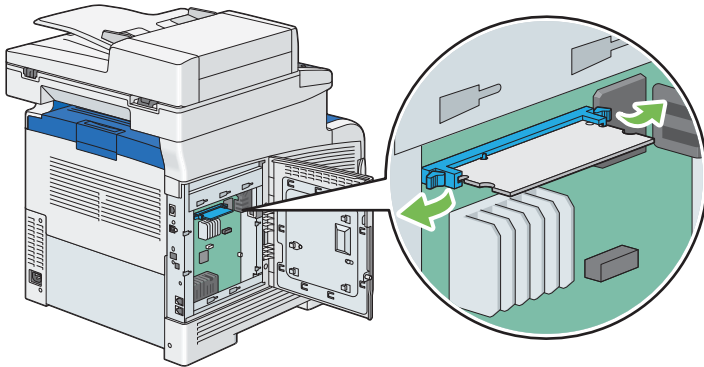
6 Hold the optional 512MB memory and pull it straight out.
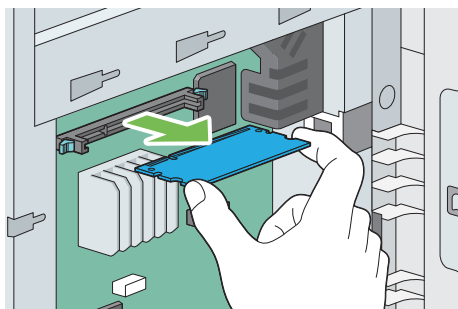
7 Close the control board cover, and slide it towards the front of the printer.
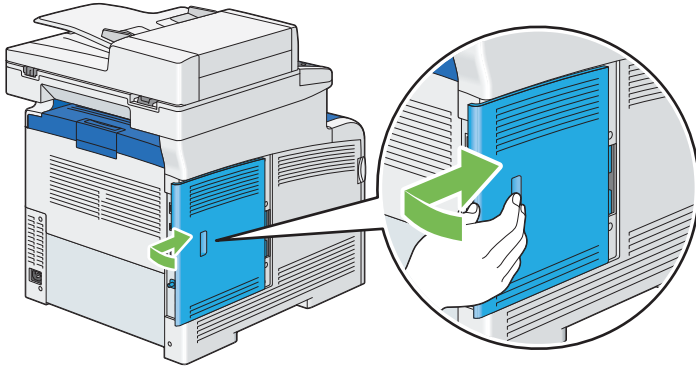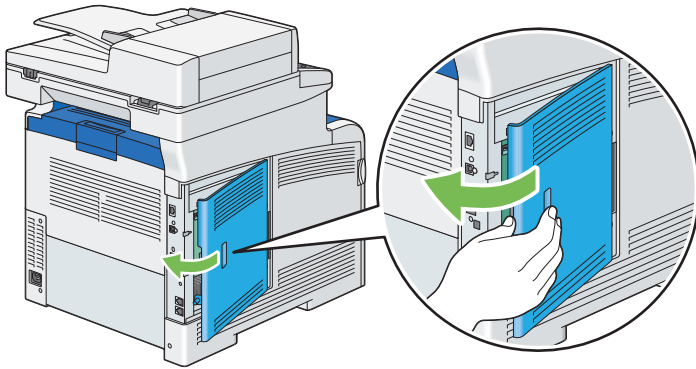
8 Turn the screw clockwise.
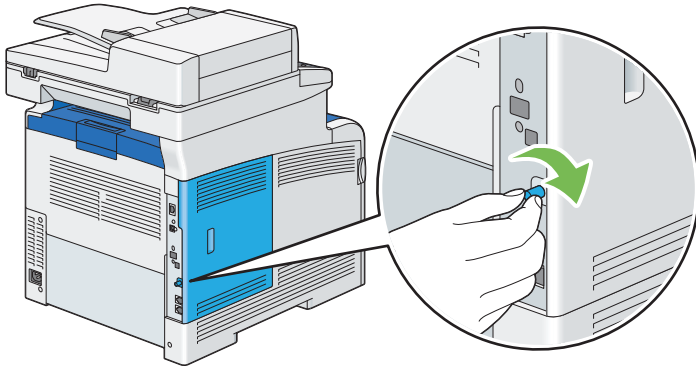
9 Turn on the printer.

■ Removing the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder and the Cabinet

IMPORTANT:
- If you remove the optional 550 sheet feeder and the cabinet, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and disconnect all cables from the rear of the printer before removing the feeder and the cabinet.

1 Turn off the printer.
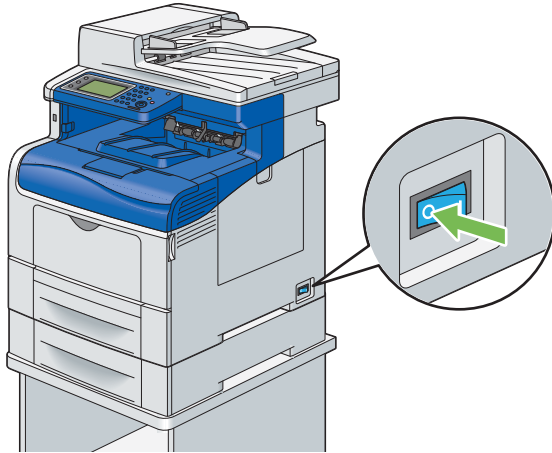
IMPORTANT:
- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

2 Disconnect the power cord from the power source.

3 Unhook the power cord from the cable hook.
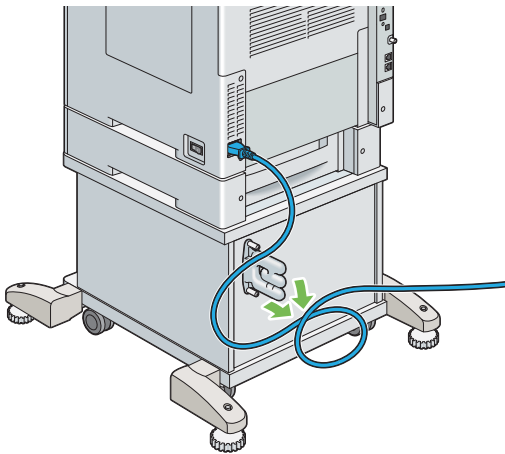
4 Disconnect the power cord and all other cables from the rear of the printer.
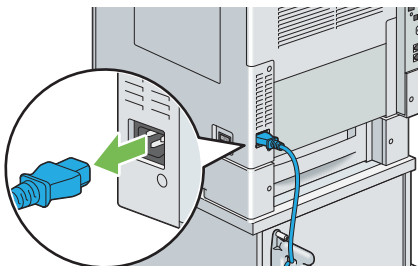
5 Loosen the two screws holding the cable hook, and remove the hook from the cabinet.
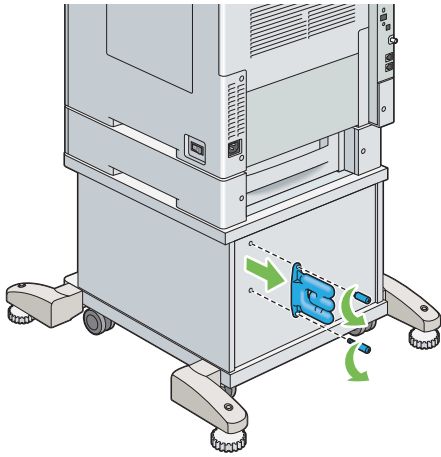
6 Pull the standard 550 sheet tray out of the printer about 200 mm. Hold the standard 550 sheet tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.
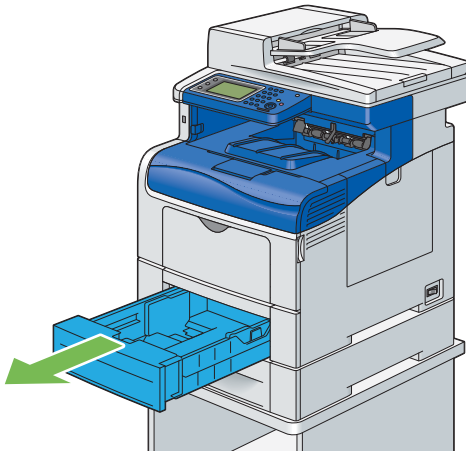
7 Remove the two screws joining the printer and the optional 550 sheet feeder by unscrewing them with a coin or similar object.
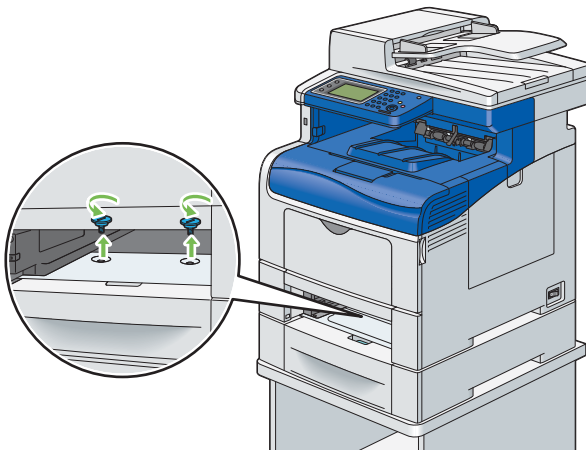
NOTE:

• The screw is located in 216 mm recess from the front of the printer.

8 Gently lift the printer off the optional 550 sheet feeder, and place it on a level surface.

IMPORTANT:

• When lifting the machine, make sure to follow the precautions stated in "Machine Installation" on page 18
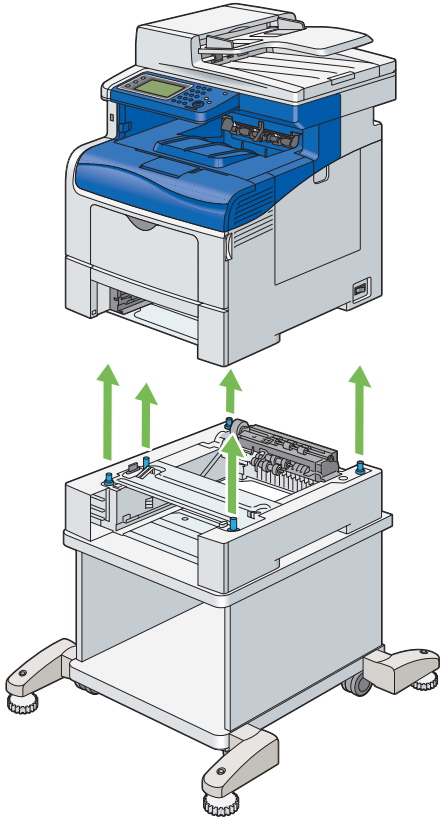
9 Insert the standard 550 sheet tray into the printer, and push until it stops.
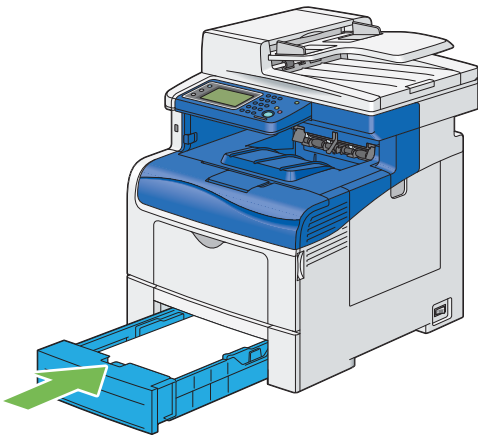
IMPORTANT:

• Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or inside of the printer.

10 Pull the tray out of the optional 550 sheet feeder about 200 mm. Hold the tray with both hands, and remove it from the feeder.
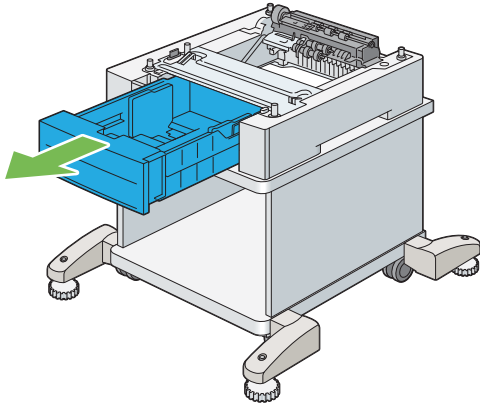
11 Remove the two screws joining the optional 550 sheet feeder and the cabinet by unscrewing them with a coin or similar object.
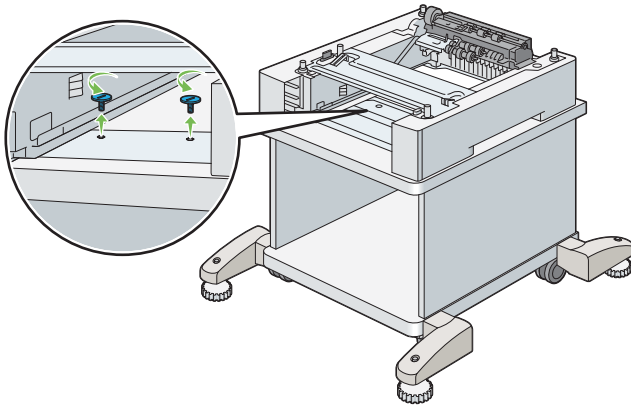
12 Gently lift the optional 550 sheet feeder off the cabinet, and place it on a level surface.
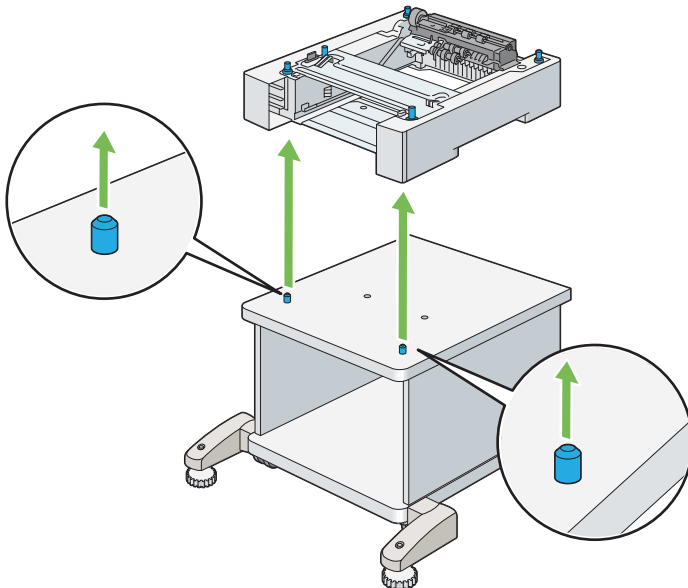
13 Insert the tray into the optional 550 sheet feeder, and push until it stops.
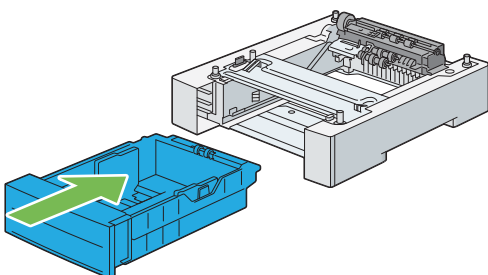
■ Removing the Optional 550 Sheet Feeder (without the Cabinet)

IMPORTANT:
- When you remove the optional 550 sheet feeder (Tray2), be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power code, and disconnect all cables from the back of the printer before starting these tasks.
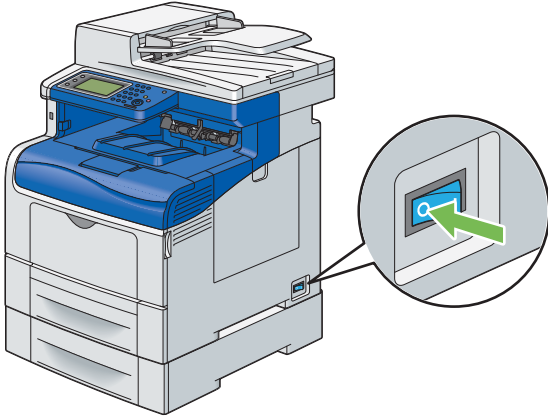
1 Turn off the printer.

IMPORTANT:
- If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

2 Disconnect the power cord from the power connector on the rear of the printer.
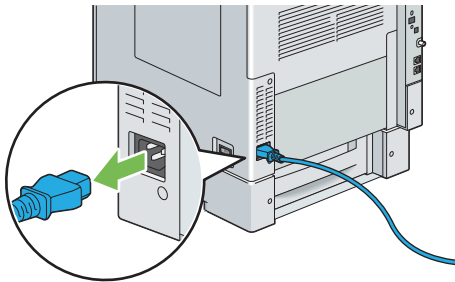
3 Pull the standard 550 sheet tray out of the printer about 200 mm. Hold the standard 550 sheet tray with both hands, and remove it from the printer.
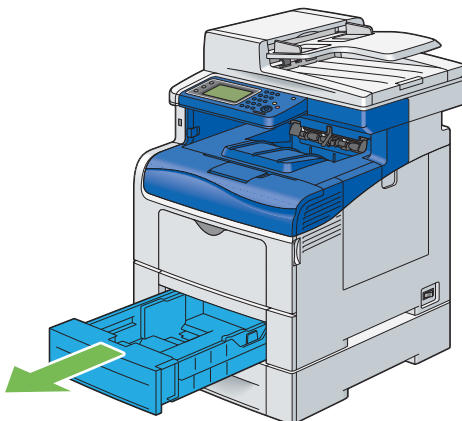
4 Remove the two screws joining the printer and the optional 550 sheet feeder by unscrewing them with a coin or similar object.
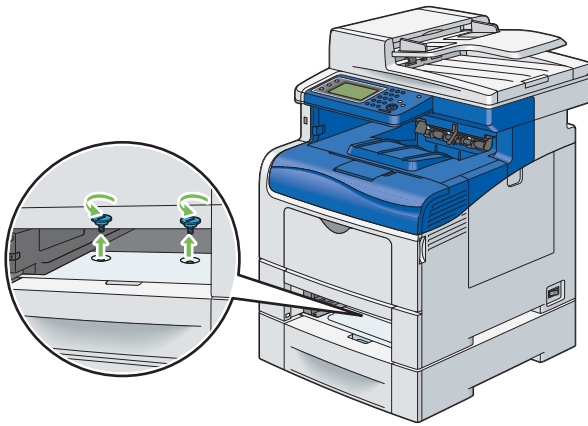
NOTE:
- The screw hole is located in 216 mm recess from the front of the printer.

5 Gently lift the printer off the optional 550 sheet feeder, and place it on a level surface.

IMPORTANT:
- When lifting the machine, make sure to follow the precautions stated in "Machine Installation" on page 18
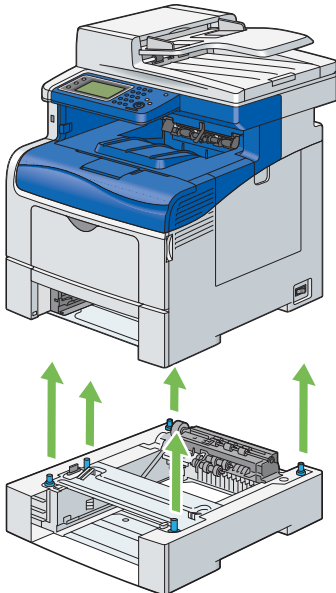
6 Insert the standard 550 sheet tray into the printer, and push until it stops.
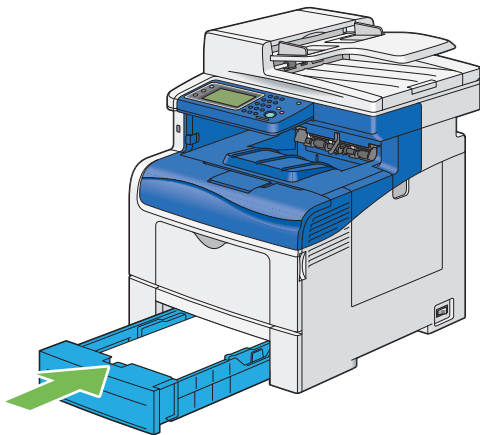
IMPORTANT:
- Do not use excessive force on the tray. Doing so could damage the tray or the inside of the printer.

7 Reconnect all cables into the rear of the printer and turn on the printer.

■ Removing the Optional Wireless Printer Adapter

IMPORTANT:

- If you remove the optional wireless printer adapter, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and disconnect all cables from the rear of the printer before removing the adapter.

1 Turn off the printer.
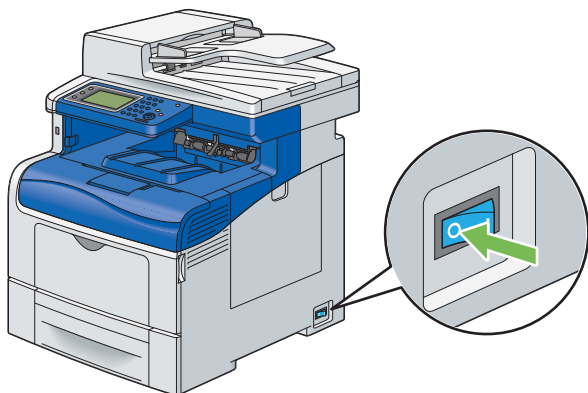
    IMPORTANT:

    - If the optional hard disk unit is not installed on your printer, note that the data in the memory are cleared when the printer is turned off.

2 Disconnect all cables from the rear of the printer.
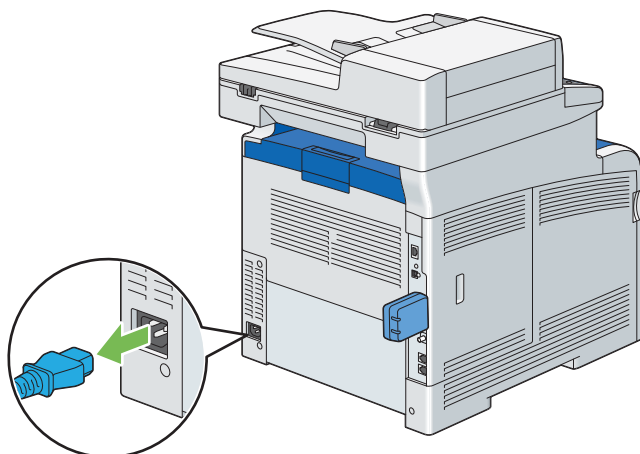
3 Turn the screw on the control board cover counterclockwise.
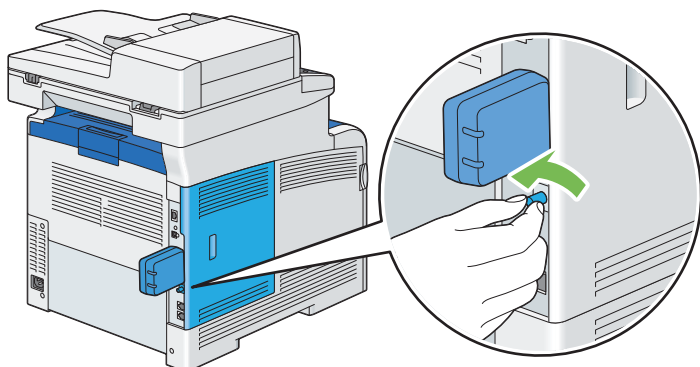
4 Slide the control board cover towards the rear of the printer.
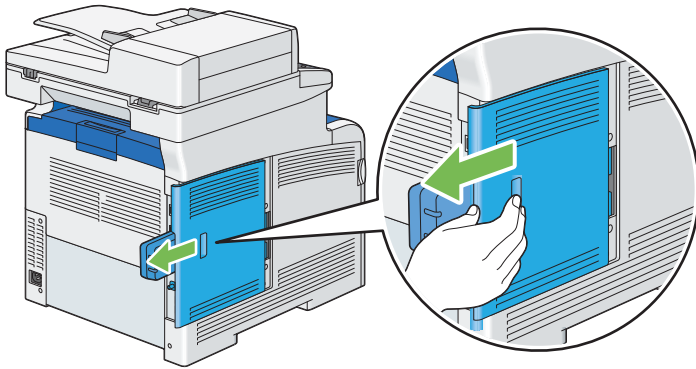
5 Open the control board cover completely.
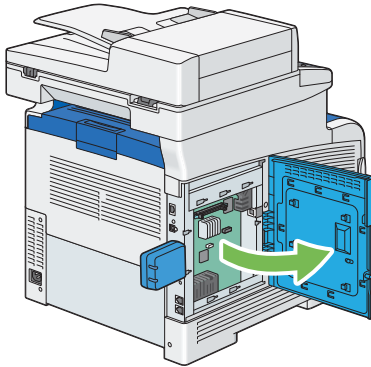
6 Remove the wireless printer adapter from the printer by releasing the adapter's hook while pushing the wireless printer adapter towards the front of the printer.
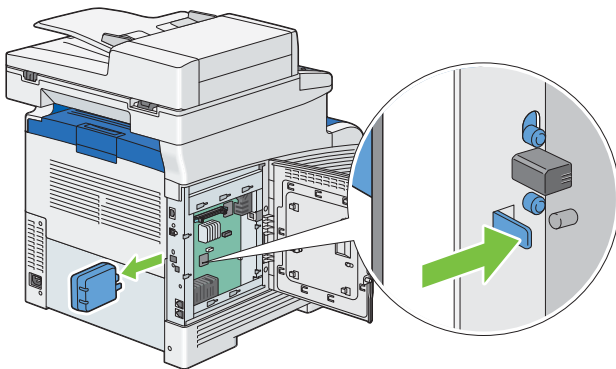
7 Close the control board cover, and then slide it towards the front of the printer.
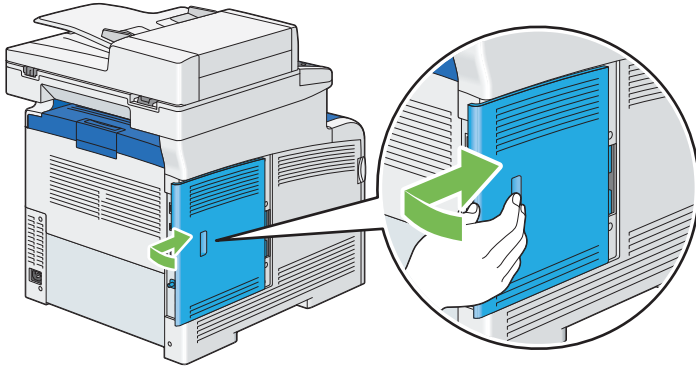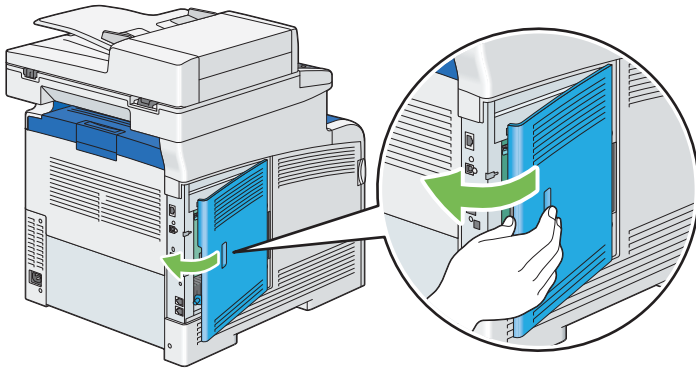
8 Turn the screw clockwise.
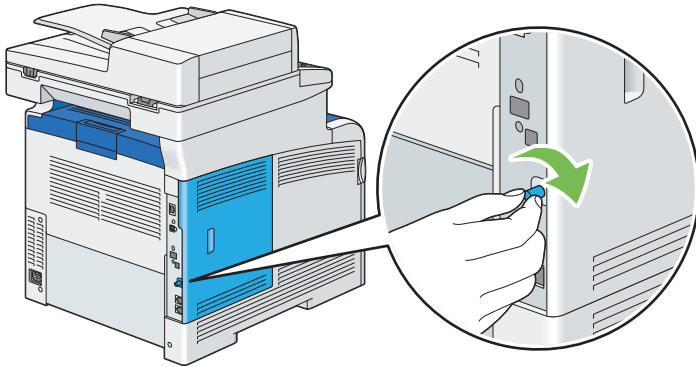
9 Turn on the printer.

■ Removing the Optional Hard Disk Unit

IMPORTANT:

- If you remove the optional hard disk unit, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and disconnect all cables from the rear of the printer before removing the hard disk unit.

1   Turn off the printer.
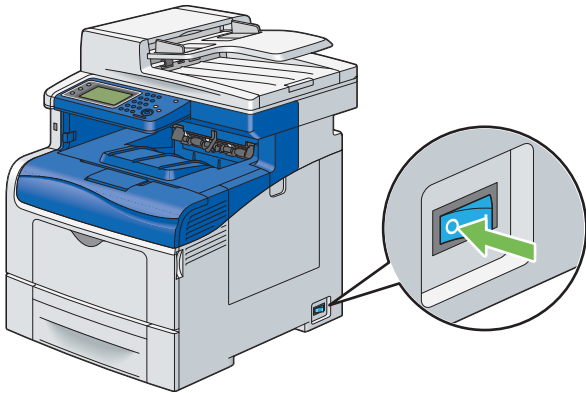
2   Disconnect the power cord from the power source.
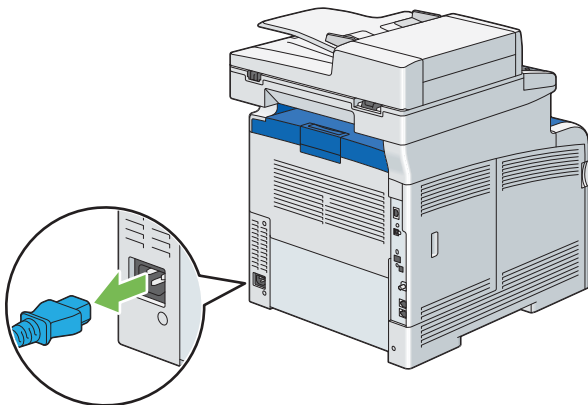
3   Turn the screw on the control board counterclockwise.
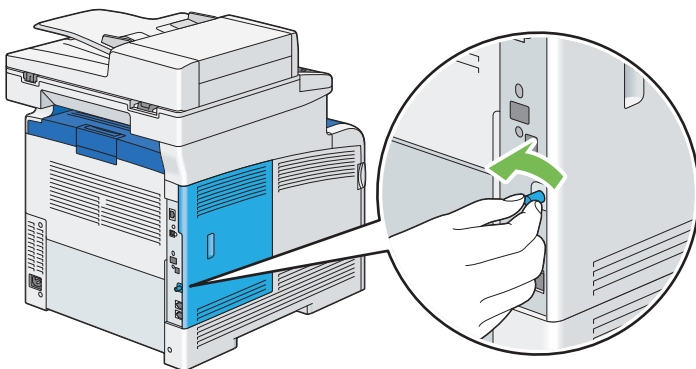
4 Slide the control board cover towards the rear of the printer.
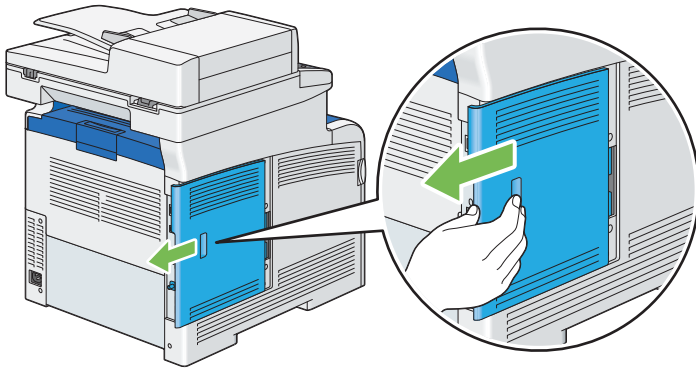
5 Open the control board cover completely.
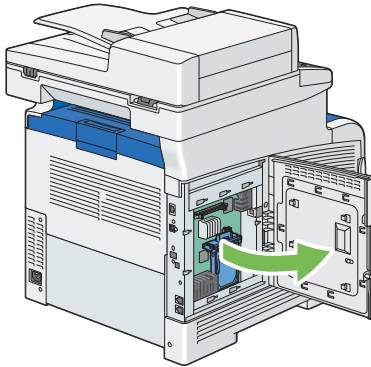
6 Remove the hard disk unit from the printer by releasing the hook of hard disk unit.
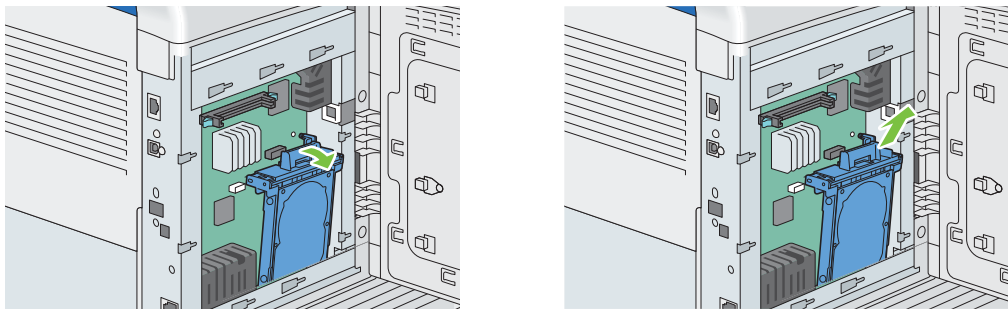
7 Close the control board cover, and then slide it towards the front of the printer.
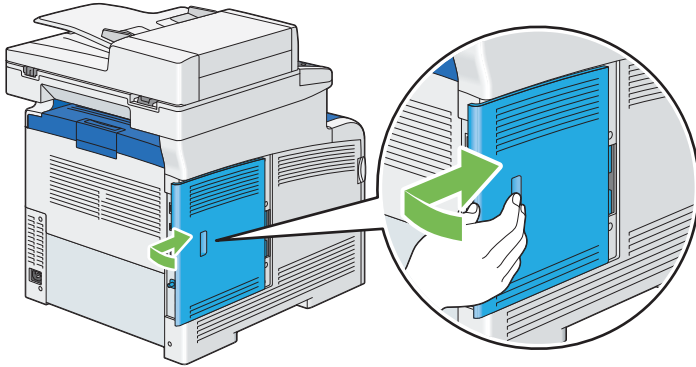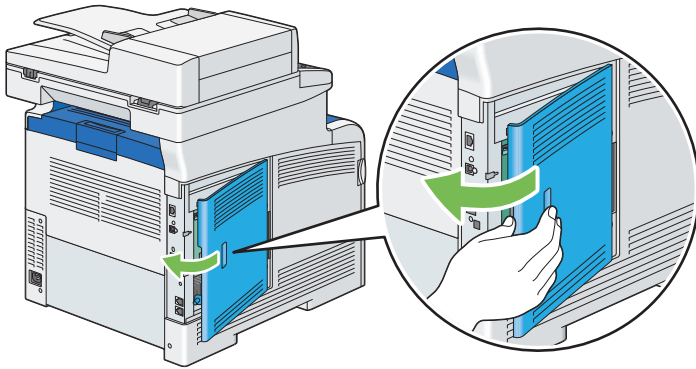
8 Turn the screw clockwise.
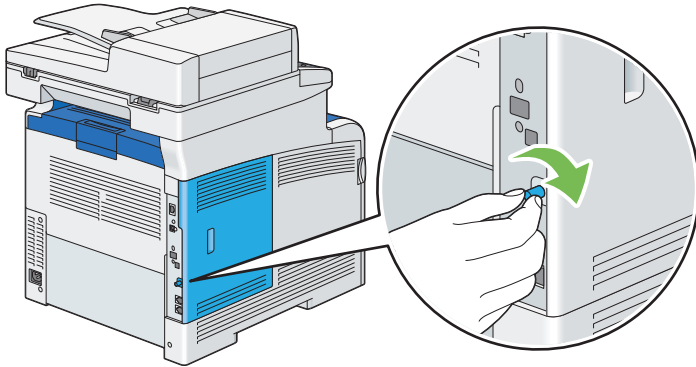
9 Turn on the printer.

Contacting Fuji Xerox

This chapter includes:

Technical Support

Fuji Xerox recommends the Customer first utilize support materials shipped with the product, product diagnostics, information contained on the Web, and email support. If unsuccessful, to obtain service under product warranty the Customer must notify Fuji Xerox Telephone Support or its authorized service representative of the defect before the expiration of the warranty period. Customer will provide appropriate assistance to Telephone Support personnel to resolve issues, such as restoration of the operating system, software program and drivers to their default configuration and settings, verification of functionality of Fuji Xerox supplied products, replacement of customer replaceable units, clearing paper misfeeds and cleaning the unit and other prescribed routine and preventative maintenance.

If the Customer's product contains features that enable Fuji Xerox or its authorised service representative to diagnose and repair problems with the product remotely, Fuji Xerox may request that the Customer allow such remote access to the product.

Online Services

You can find detail Product and Consumable warranty information and activate your warranty by registering your details on our website at http://www.fujixerox.com/support/docuprint/

Fuji Xerox Online Support Assistant provides instructions and troubleshooting guides to resolve your printer problems. It is an easy-to-use, searchable online help. To find out more, please visit our online support at http://www.fujixerox.com/support/docuprint/

Index

Numerics

A

B

C

DocuPrint CM405 df User Guide